



# **DRAFT INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

## **2015-2016**





# GOVERNMENT NEWS

Together we move South Africa forward



## PROVINCES ORDERED TO PICK UP PACE OF NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN DELIVERY

- President Jacob Zuma says the country's provinces and municipalities must do much more to implement the National Development Plan (NDP).
- "We are pleased with the speed of implementation of the NDP by provinces and municipalities but feel that more still needs to be done and at a greater speed," said President Zuma.
- This emerged at the President's Coordinating Council (PCC) meeting, which was convened at the Union Buildings on Friday (06 March). The NDP is the country's blueprint for ending poverty and reducing inequality by 2030.
- The PCC is the President's coordinating structure where he meets Premiers and the South African Local Government Association representing Mayors.
- The meeting focused on improving the performance of local government and the Back to Basics campaign.
- "We have had very fruitful discussions as different spheres of government meeting in this council to discuss various programmes aimed at improving service delivery at the local and most immediate level of governance for our people," said President Zuma.
- For the full article kindly visit: <http://sanews.gov.za/south-africa/provinces-ordered-pick-pace-ndp-delivery>



communications

Department:  
Communications



## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>Chapter</b>	<b>Topic</b>	<b>Sub Topic</b>	<b>Page No</b>
	PREFACE		2
	Abbreviations		5-6
	Foreword: Mayor		7-8
	Foreword: Municipal Manager		9-10
	Executive Summary		11-14
1.	Introduction and Background		15-31
2.	Situational Analysis		32-233
3.	Develepmental Strategies and Objectives		234-253
4.	Sector Plans	7.1. SDF 7.2. Internal Audit Charter 7.3. Communication Strategy 7.4. Electricity Master Plan 7.5. Sanitation Master Plan 7.6. Solid Waste Master Plan 7.7. Road & Storm Water Master Plan 7.8. Water Master Plan 7.9. Water Safety Plan 7.10. HR Strategy 7.11. PMS Framework 7.12. Employment Equity 7.13. Public Participation Plan/Policy 7.14. Workplace Skill Plan 7.15. Financial Plan	254-257

		7.16. Disaster Management Plan 7.17. Fraud Prevention Plan 7.18. LED Strategy. 7.19. National Tourism Sector Strategy	
5.	The Financial Plan		258-280
6.	Developmental Strategies, Programmes and Projects (CAPEX)		281-295
7.	Programmes and Projects of other spheres		296-297
8.	Annual Operational Plan		298-368
9.	Multi Year Unfunded Projects		369-388
10.	PMS		389-405
11.	SDF		406-636
12.	MEC Comments		637-726



## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ACFO	Acting Chief Financial Officer
ADCOS	Acting Director Community Officer
AQMP	Air Quality Management Plan
BBBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
BSC	Balanced Scorecard
CDW	Community Development Workers
CFO	Chief Financial Officer
CIDB	Construction Industry Development Board
COGTA	Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
CPF	Community Policing Forums
CPIX	Consumer Price Index
CWP	Community Works Programme
DBSA	Development Bank of South Africa
DCS	Director Community Services
DCOS	Director Corporate Services
DEDP	Director: Economic Development and Planning
DESTEA	Department of Small business, Economics, Tourism and Economic Development
DoE	Department of Energy
DoRA	Division of Revenue Act
DRM	Disaster Risk Management
DTS	Director: Technical Services
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESKOM	Electricity Supply Commission
FSPGNC	Free State Provincial Geographical Name Committee
GAC	Governance and Administration Cluster
GIS	Geographical Information Systems
GRAP	Generally Recognised Accounting Practices
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
HRD	Human Resources Development
HRDS	Human Resources Development Strategy
ICT	Information Communication and Technology
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IGR	Intergovernmental Relations
KPA	Key Performance Areas
KPI	Key Performance Indicators
LED	Local Economic Development
LGSETA	Local Government Sector Education and Training Authority
MEC	Member of the Executive Council
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MISA	Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency

ML/d	Mega Litre per Day
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
MPRA	Municipal Property Rates Act
MSA	Municipal Systems Act
MSIG	Municipal Systems Improvement Grant
MTAS	Municipal Turnaround Strategy
MTREF	Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
NERSA	National Electricity Regulator of South Africa
NKPI	National Key Performance Indicators
NLM	Ngwathe Local Municipality
NT	National Treasury
OHSA	Occupational Health and Safety Act
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PHC	Primary Health Care
PIF	Premier's Inter-governmental Forum
PM	Performance Management
PMS	Performance Management System
PPP	Public Private Partnership
PWD	People Living With Disability
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RED	Regional Electricity Distributor
SALGA	South African Local Government Association
SALGBC	South African Local Government Bargaining Council
SAPS	South African Police Service
SARS	South African Revenue Service
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SETA	Sector Education and Training Authority
SGB	School Governing Body
SLA	Service Level Agreement
SMME	Small, Medium and Micro Enterprise
SPCD	Social Protection and Community Development Cluster
SPLUMA	Spatial Land Use Management Act
UIF	Unemployment Insurance Fund
WWTW	Waste Water Treatment Works

## FOREWORD BY THE MAYOR



2015 marks the 60<sup>th</sup> year since the adoption of the Freedom Charter by the African National Congress and its Congress Alliance at the Congress of the people held in Kliptown. In his State of the Nation Address, president of the Republic of South Africa, honourable Jacob Zuma declared this year, a year of Freedom Charter.

In his State of the Province Address, ANC Chairperson and Premier of our Province, Ntate Ace Magashule gave life to this, by ensuring that all Pillars of the Charter are to be implemented in all programs that will be rolled-out by different provincial departments and municipalities in this current financial year.

As indicated from the National and Provincial Government commitments above, our municipality will not be exceptional in working towards the achievements of these strategic goals. We will work hard in ensuring that we improve the quality of basic services we offer you, communities within our municipality. We will continuously give financial support to students to register with institutions of higher learning. We will work with SAPS and all relevant institution to combat crime. We will continuously and legally give land to our people so that they start their own businesses, and we shall continue to build free houses for our people, in order to ensure that Freedom Charter's Goals are achieved.

We also like to thank responsible citizens who are continuously committed in paying their services, and also encourage those who are not paying to do so, because together we can take South Africa forward. We also like to make a humble request to our communities to attend meetings when they are invited by Councillors, because these are platforms where communities should raise issues affecting their well-being and services offered by Government.

As Ngwathe we take pride in the fact that ward meetings are convened regularly and in terms of Back to Basics every ward Councillor and ward Committee will need to further up their games and consult communities monthly.

Bomme le boNtate, in November 2011 president established National Planning Commission that introduced the **National Development Plan (NDP)**, a plan that gives vision on how South Africa should look like in the year 2030. Amongst others, this plan intends to focus on:

- ❖ fighting poverty and on expanding a robust entrepreneurial and innovative economy;

- ❖ enable the communities to become their own engines of developments;
- ❖ to invigorate and expand the economic opportunity through investment in infrastructure, more innovation, private investment and entrepreneurship;
- ❖ enable young people to acquire capabilities and confidence to grasp opportunities for a brighter future;
- ❖ to develop people's capabilities to be able to improve their lives through education and skills development.

In an attempt to give effect to the **NDP**, government re introduced the **MTSF** 2014-19 as a vehicle to drive the **NDP**.

The 2014-2019 electoral mandates focus on the following priorities:

- ☐ Radical economic transformation, rapid economic growth and job creation
- ☐ Rural development, land and agrarian reform and food security
- ☐ Ensuring access to adequate human settlements and quality basic services
- ☐ Improving the quality of and expanding access to education and training
- ☐ Ensuring quality health care and social security for all citizens
- ☐ Fighting corruption and crime
- ☐ Contributing to a better Africa and a better world
- ☐ Social cohesion and nation building.

The Free State Government in strengthening the above documents introduced the **Free State Growth and Development Strategy (FSGDS)** comprising of 6 Pillars and 15 Drivers which contain Long term programmes and strategies.

We wish to acknowledge the municipality's shortcomings in the provision of basic services in areas such as electricity, water, waste management including Eskom's load shedding.

We like to reaffirm and recommit that through Back to basics, we will work hard with all role players, National and Provincial governments to ensure that our communities receives their basic services without interruption.

Compatriots, as the municipality we are committed to make these commitments a reality.

As declared by the President in his State of the Nation Address, that together we take South Africa Forward, Ngwathe Municipality has joined that journey; together we are taking South Africa Forward.

We are working,

Re a sebetsa,

Siyasebenza,

Re a shoma,

Ons werk,



## FOREWORD BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER



The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996 commits to the following local government objects:

- To provide democratic and accountable government for local communities;
- To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner;
- To promote social and economic development;
- To promote a safe and healthy environment; and
- To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government.

This five year Integrated Development Plan (IDP) sets the strategic and budget priorities for purposes of fulfilling our aforementioned constitutional obligations. It further more aligns the resources and capacity of our municipality to our overall developmental aims and it helps us to set our budget priorities.

The Eskom Electricity crisis is having a negative impact also on our municipality and we are therefore making a clarion call to all community members to help save electricity as much as possible. As the municipality we are working very hard to reduce our debt with Eskom, and also requesting communities to assist us in fighting crime against electricity and cable theft.

Linked to electricity challenges are water challenges, scarcity of water particularly in Parys, Koppies and Edenville and high water losses through all our towns.

The main challenge now is maintaining the necessary balance between income, expenditure and growth, this IDP should enable us to make the best of our scarce resources in our endeavour to turn around the lives of our people.

This IDP is furthermore a plan for all our communities and not just for specific areas. It should remind us, when we draw up our plans and programmes for service delivery and development, that we must always have our communities in mind and that our plans must be based on the real needs of our communities, we therefore dare not impose our thoughts on our people but rather hold one another's hand and carry our elephant.

A very important matter, facing our institution is the creation of more job opportunities. This will create an environment where investors and entrepreneurs grow within our space. For this purpose a well thought through IDP, aligned to the NDP, the MTSF and the FSGDS such as this one, is inevitable.

On the State of the Nation and Province Address, State President and Premier of our Province declared 2015 a year of Freedom Charter. As the municipality we need to be seen actualising this Goal, by ensuring that scarce resources are directed where there are real societal needs.

Lastly I wish to convey my sincere appreciation to the Mayor and all Councillors, colleagues and members of the public who positively contributed to the compilation of this document.

I therefore pledge myself and the entire staff of Ngwathe to putting all hands on deck in delivering the required standard of services.

LESAONA DAVID KAMOLANE:

NGWATHE MUNICIPAL MANAGER

March 2015

## **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

### **Introduction**

According to the Constitution of the RSA: Act no 108 of 2006 (sections 152 and 153), local government is in charge of the development processes and planning in municipal spaces. This constitutional mandate is expressed through the following local government objectives :

- Ensure sustainable provision of services;
- Promote social and economic development;
- Promote a safe and healthy environment;
- Give priority to the basic needs of communities; and
- Encourage involvement of communities.

In accordance with this new intergovernmental development planning ethos, local government is the main/frontline planning arm of government, provinces would support and monitor this activity, and national government would create the framework of norms and standards in which these developmental actions would take place. Collectively, and with each sphere fulfilling its specific mandate, the actions of the three spheres would dovetail into a joint intergovernmental effort aimed at achieving its key developmental objectives.

The IDP is informed by National and Provincial priorities, policies and strategies of national and provincial importance which include amongst others:

- ❖ National Development Plan – Vision 2030 (2011),
- ❖ Free State Provincial Growth and Developmental Strategy,
- ❖ Medium Term Strategic Framework (2014-19)
- ❖ The New Growth Path (2010),
- ❖ Green Paper on Improving Government Performance (2009),
- ❖ Spatial land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) Act 16 of 2013,
- ❖ Free State Provincial Spatial Development Framework (FSPSDF),
- ❖ Generic Batho Pele Service Standards and Implementation Framework for Local Government,
- ❖ Policy Framework for the Government-wide Monitoring and Evaluation System.

What is a legally compliant IDP?

Legally compliant IDP refers to the Municipal IDP document that has been developed in line and in accordance with the legislative framework namely the constitution Act 108 of 1996, MSA 32 of 2000, MFMA Act 56 of 2003 Municipal structures Act 177 of 1998, etc that governs, regulate and guide the municipality on the development and coordination of the municipal IDPs

Ideally, an IDP should meet all the legislative framework guidelines in terms of the process, procedures, timeline as well as all necessary stakeholder and public and community participation activities.

The fundamentals of a Legally Compliant IDP

- IDP Process Plan

- Core components of the IDP MSA section 26(a-i)
- Community Participation Process
- Timelines adherence
- “Portfolio of Evidence” for example, processes contents, meeting minimum standard Procedures”.

The above assertion, clearly categorizes IDP within three dimensions viz,

- IDP as a process (PROCESS/Steps),
- IDP as a product (CONTENTS) and
- the PROCEDURES to be followed

The following is an over view of the chapters within this IDP document:

#### Chapter 1: Introduction and Background

Provides the definition to the IDP and all related processes, the legislation and powers of the municipality are espoused.

#### Chapter 2: Situational Analysis

Looks at geographical context of the municipality, and an assessment of the municipal institution as well as the demographics of the NLM and all the other social services relevant within the municipal space.

#### Chapter 3: Developmental Strategies and Objectives

Reflects on the national and provincial policy priorities such as the NDP (Vision 2030), MTSF, the Free State PGDS. Back to Basics It includes the Vision and Mission of NLM.

#### Chapter 4: Sector Plans

Analysis of the status quo in terms of the plans and plan to develop or review others.

#### Chapter 5: The Financial Plan

Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework (MTREF) of the municipality and outlines of the municipality’s financial strategy, revenue and expenditure framework for the next three years.

#### Chapter 6: Development Strategies , Programmes and Projects

Strategic Objectives and Strategies structured into 5 KPAs. Identified programmes and projects must clearly link with the priority issues identified in the situational analysis.

#### Chapter 7: Annual Operational Plans



One Year Detailed Operational Plan developed per directorate, implementation of all strategies, programmes and projects is accounted for monthly, quarterly, biannual and annual reporting templates must contain the same indicators contained in the IDP and the SDBIP

#### Chapter 8: Programmes and Projects of other spheres

An account of sector departments development within the local space.

#### Chapter 9: Multi Year Unfunded Projects

Unfunded multi year projects that intended for the outside world to assist the municipality.

#### Chapter 10: PMS

A strategic approach to management, which equips leaders, managers, employees and stakeholders at various levels, with a set of tools and techniques to regularly plan, continuously monitor, periodically measure and review performance of the municipality in terms of indicators and targets for efficiency, effectiveness and impact. The PMS framework and guidelines see the development of IDPs and PMS as a seamless process.

#### Chapter 11: SDF

The SDF is a master development plan that provides the overall long term development vision of the municipality, it is a long term plan that forms the basis for the development of the 5 year IDP. It further provides strategic direction for the development of all sector specific plans that will contribute to the achievement of that vision, particularly with regard to spatial restructuring and integration of settlements to promote social cohesion and economic development.

#### Chapter 12: MEC Comments

One of the core components of the IDP in terms of section 26 of MSA 32:2000 to guide forward planning.



## **CHAPTER ONE (1):**

### **INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND**

#### **What is IDP?**

Integrated development planning (IDP) is a process through which municipalities prepare a strategic plan containing short, medium and long-term development objectives, strategies and programmes for the municipal area. The IDP is a principal instrument that guides and informs budgeting, management and decision-making related to service delivery and development in a municipality.

The IDP process enables municipalities to work together with communities and other stakeholders to find innovative and cost effective ways of eradicating poverty and growing the local economy.

The reviewed IDP for 2015-16 flows from the IDP 2012-17 adopted by NLM in 2012,

#### **Benefits of the IDP?**

The following are some of the benefits of the IDP for different stakeholders:

##### Municipal Council:

- Provide clear and accountable leadership and development direction;
- Develop cooperative relationships with stakeholders and communities;
- Obtain access to development resources and external support;
- Monitor the performance of municipal officials.

##### Councillors:

- Provides councillors with a mechanism of communicating with their constituencies;
- Enables councillors to represent their constituencies effectively by making informed decisions;
- Enables councillors to measure their own performance.

### Municipal Officials:

- Guides business unit planning within the municipal administration;
- Provides municipal officials with a mechanism to communicate with councillors;
- Enables officials to contribute to the municipality's vision;
- Enables officials to be part of the decision-making process.

### Communities and other Stakeholders:

- Gives them an opportunity to inform the municipal council what their development needs are;
- Gives them an opportunity to determine the municipality's development direction;
- Provides a mechanism through which to communicate with their councillors and the governing body;
- Provides a mechanism through which they can measure the performance of the councillors and the municipality as a whole.

### National and Provincial Sector Departments:

- The availability of the IDP provides guidance to the departments as to where their services are required and hence where to allocate their resources;
- Allows departments to coordinate their service delivery and development programmes in a municipal area based on local conditions and requirements.

### Private Sector

The IDP serves as a guide to the private sector in making decisions with regard to areas and sectors to invest in.



## **Powers and Functions of Ngwathe Local Municipality**

Local government is assigned specific powers and functions that are unique and appropriate to the lower sphere of government. Similar to the position on national and provincial spheres, local government powers and functions are constitutionally entrenched and protected and cannot be unilaterally taken away by another sphere of government. Albeit constitutionally protected, the powers and functions of municipalities are not absolute and are subject to both constitutional and national legislative requirements.

Chapter 3 of Municipal Systems Act, 2000 states that a municipality has all the functions and powers assigned to it in terms of the Constitution, and must exercise them subject to Chapter 5 of the Municipal Structures Act, 1998. Furthermore, a municipality is empowered by legislation to do anything reasonably necessary for, or incidental to, the effective performance of its functions and the exercise of its powers.

<b>Function</b>	<b>Definition of function</b>	<b>MDB Prioritization</b>
Municipal Roads	Construction, maintenance and control of a road used by members of the public, including streets in built up areas.	1
Electricity reticulation	Bulk supply of electricity, which includes for the purpose of such, the supply, the transmission, distribution, and where applicable the generation of electricity.  Regulation, control and maintenance of the electricity reticulation network.  Provision and maintenance of public lighting which includes street lights, high mast lights, etc.  Tariff policies, monitoring of the operation of the facilities for adherence to standards.	1
Water	Establishment or procurement, operation, management, and regulation of a potable water system, including the services and	1

(Potable)	infrastructure required for the regulation of water conservation, purification, reticulation and distribution	
Sanitation	Establishment or procurement, where appropriate, provision, operation, management, maintenance and regulation of a system, including infrastructure for the collection, removal and disposal or purification of human excreta and domestic waste-water.	1
,Cemeteries and crematoria	The establishments conduct and control of facilities for the purpose of disposing of human and animal remains. This includes , funeral parlours and crematoria.	1
Refuse Removal, refuse dumps and solid Waste	Removal of any household or other waste and the disposal of such waste in an area, space or facility established for such a purpose. It further includes the provision, maintenance and control of any infrastructure or facility to ensure a clean and healthy environment.	1
Storm water	Management of systems to deal with storm water in built-up areas	1
Firefighting	Fighting and extinguishing fires, the rescue and protection of any person, animal or property in emergency situations not covered by other legislations or powers and functions	1
Traffic	Management and regulation of traffic and parking, which includes control over speeding of vehicles on municipal roads.	1
Municipal Planning	Compilation of IDPs, preparation of the SDFs as a sectoral plan, development and implementation of a town planning	1

	scheme or land-use management scheme	
Local Sport and recreation facilities	Provision and maintenance of sports and recreational facilities	3

### **The IDP Processes**

Ngwathe Local Municipal Process Plan was adopted 30<sup>th</sup> September 2014

The IDP process Plan process is a process through which the municipalities prepare strategic development plans for a five year period reviewed annually.

In order to ensure certain minimum quality standards of the IDP Review process and proper coordination between and within spheres of government, municipalities need to prepare IDP review process plan and formulate budget to implement the IDP. The IDP and Budget Process Plan has to include the following:

- A programme specifying the timeframes for the different planning steps;
- Appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures for consultation and participation
- of local communities, organs of state, traditional authorities and other role players in
- the IDP review and budget formulation processes;
- Cost estimates for the review process.
- The preparation of IDP process plan is in essence the formulation of the IDP and Budget
- Processes set out in writing and require the adoption by Council.

This Plan therefore aims at achieving the above;

## **The purpose of the process plan**

Ngwathe Local Municipality needs to plan, direct and manage its capacity and resources to support the successful implementation of its integrated development plan and the budget. The reality of limited capacity and resources in Ngwathe Local Municipality necessitates innovation and the need for greater intergovernmental cooperation amongst various spheres of government.

The Ngwathe Local Municipality process plan should be seen as a document that describes how the municipality develops and implement the integrated development plan within its area of jurisdiction, it is thus similar to business plan.

The Process Plan focusses on:

- outline the planning process to be followed;
- propose institutional arrangements;
- Estimate time frames attached to various phases; and
- Illustrate the alignment of the IDP, PMS and SDBIP.

## **Phases of the IDP**

<b>PHASES</b>		<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
1	<b>Preparation:</b>	The preparation of the process plan for the review of the IDP and setting up or confirmation of the required institutional arrangements.
2	<b>Analysis:</b>	A detailed reconciliation of the community needs which have not yet been attended to, Directorates will further be requested to prioritize such needs in their project list.
3	<b>Strategies:</b>	To ensure that clear objectives, strategies, indicators and targets are developed and that the IDP will be the guiding documents with regard to the development of the Budget and the SDBIP.
4	<b>Projects:</b>	A list of Municipal Projects is compiled and budgets are clearly indicated
5	<b>Integration:</b>	Ensuring the IDP is aligned to all the necessary strategic documents such as the National Development Plan, Free State Growth and Development Provincial Strategy etc.
6	<b>Approval:</b>	Council approves the IDP



## **Roles and responsibilities**

In order to give effect to the implementation of the process plan, the following internal key role players as presented hereunder, were identified and were distributed various roles and responsibilities in order to ensure efficient and effective management of the IDP drafting process. This table formed part of the process plan that was tabled to council for adoption.

## Internal Role-Players

ROLE-PLAYER	ROLES/RESPONSIBILITIES
Municipal Council	<p>As the Final Decision-making body it performs the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval, adoption of the IDP,</li> <li>• Adopts PMS Framework,</li> <li>• Monitoring,</li> <li>• Implementation,</li> <li>• Delegates IDP &amp; PMS to the Municipal Manager.</li> </ul>
The Mayor	<p>As the head of governance the Mayor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decides on planning process: nominate persons in charge: monitor implementation of planning process,</li> <li>• Overall management and co-ordination responsibility (to make sure that all relevant actors are involved),</li> <li>• Ensure that the IDP, Budget &amp; related policies are mutually consistent &amp; credible,</li> <li>• Submit IDP &amp; Budget to Council for adoption,</li> <li>• Chairs both Steering committee &amp; Rep forum.</li> </ul>
Executive Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide political and strategic guidance and direction,</li> <li>• Serve in the steering committee.</li> </ul>
Ward Councilors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Serve as the major link between council and communities,</li> <li>• Organizing public participation,</li> <li>• Linking IDP process to their constituencies,</li> <li>• Ensure communities understand the processes of IDP, Budget and PMS.</li> </ul>
Finance and Budget Portfolio Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist the Mayor and the Executive Committee in their oversight role,</li> <li>• Summarizing /and processing of inputs from the participation process,</li> <li>• Commenting on inputs from other specialists.</li> </ul>

Municipal Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide guidance to the process,</li> <li>• Ensure that administration actively participates and support the processes.</li> </ul>
IDP Manager/ IDP Unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Day to day management of the IDP processes on behalf of the Municipal Manager,</li> <li>• Ensure that the review process is participatory,</li> <li>• Link the IDP &amp; SDBIP,</li> <li>• Ensure the IDP, Budget &amp; PMS are aligned with Provincial &amp; National departments' s strategies.</li> </ul>
Chief Financial Officer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the municipal budget is linked to the IDP,</li> <li>• Coordinating budget implementation as per IDP,</li> <li>• Development of the 5-year Municipal Integrated Financial Plan.</li> </ul>
IDP Steering Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Elaboration/ discussion of contents of the reviewed IDP</li> <li>• Providing inputs related to the various planning steps,</li> <li>• Summarizing / digesting /processing inputs from the participation process,</li> <li>• Discussion / commenting on inputs from consultant or other specialist</li> <li>• Overall leaders of the processes.,</li> </ul>
Municipal Officials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide technical / sector expertise and information</li> <li>• Preparing draft project proposal</li> </ul>
IDP Representative Forum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forms the interface for community participation in the affairs of the Council</li> <li>• Participates in the annual IDP review process.,.</li> </ul>
Ward committees and CDW's	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Serve as the major link between council and communities,</li> <li>• Organizing public participation,</li> </ul>

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Linking IDP process to their constituencies.</li></ul> |
|--|--|

DRAFT

## External Role Players

ROLE-PLAYER	ROLES/RESPONSIBILITIES
District Municipality:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Support and contributing knowledge and ideas</li></ul>
Provincial and National Government Departments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Support and contributing knowledge and ideas</li></ul>
Civil Society:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Representing interests and contributing knowledge and ideas</li></ul>
Neighboring Municipalities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Collaborative planning</li></ul>
Corporate Service Providers:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Representing interests and contributing knowledge and ideas</li></ul>
AGSA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auditing function</li></ul>

## Action Programmes with Time Frames

STEP	PHASE	TARGET DATE	ACTIONS FOR THE IDP REVIEW PROCESS	RESPONSIBILITY
1	Preparation Phase	July – August 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1<sup>st</sup> Process Plan Planning Session.</li> <li>General Notice.</li> <li>2<sup>nd</sup> Process Plan Planning Session,</li> <li>Approval of Process Plan/</li> <li>Rep Forum</li> <li>Submission of Process Plan to Fezile Dabi District Municipality &amp; COGTA.</li> <li>Allocates responsibility to drive the process, plans the way and develops council commitment to the climate change response approach</li> <li>Development of Sector Plans</li> </ul>	SESM & CFO
2	Analysis Phase	August – November 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Detailed status quo analysis,</li> <li>IDP needs analysis.</li> <li>Compilation of Ward Profiles.</li> <li>Development of <b>Climate Change Analysis Report</b> for inclusion in the IDP Situational Analysis (Status Quo Report)</li> </ul>	SESM, SPEAKER'S OFFICE, WARD COUNCILLORS.
3	Strategic Phase	November – January 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Development of Objectives, Strategies, projects &amp; Programmes. (Mayoral Strategic Workshop).</li> <li>Supports a participatory planning exercise to develop a <b>municipal climate response vision and objectives</b>, for <b>inclusion within the IDP Strategic Focus Areas</b> and alignment of Sector Plans with these.</li> </ul>	MM

4	Project Phase	January – February 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Formulation of project proposals,</li> <li>Screen, adjust, consolidate and agree on projects.</li> <li>Takes the <b>new climate priorities into detailed project development plans</b>, and identifies capacity, resources and performance management systems to integrate this into the Municipal operational systems.</li> </ul>	STEERING COMMITTEE, SEC 56 MANAGERS
5	Integration Phase	Early March	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alignment session with the District. Ensures that climate response work is <b>visible throughout the IDP</b> and related development plans.</li> </ul>	SESM
6	Approval	March - May 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Table Draft Reviewed IDP to Council,</li> <li>Submission of the draft Reviewed IDP to FDDM &amp; COGTA,</li> <li>Advertisement for comments on Draft reviewed IDP,</li> <li>Final Adoption of the IDP &amp; Budget by the municipal Council.</li> <li>Adoption of the SDBIP by council</li> </ul> <p><b>Communicating what</b> the municipality is doing about climate change to its citizens and residents, and establish important learning networks..</p>	MAYOR, MM, SEC 56 MANAGERS & SESM
7	Submission	June 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Final IDP, SDF &amp; Budget submitted to COGTA and Treasury.</li> <li>Publishing the IDP, SDF and Budget on the</li> </ul>	SESM & CFO

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>website. Print the IDP and distribute.</li> </ul>	
<b>8</b>	<b>Implementation</b>	<b>July 2015 - June 2016</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implementation of the IDP 2014-15</li> <li>Conduct M &amp; E</li> </ul>	ALL

DRAFT



## **Public Participation**

One of the main features of the IDP planning process is the involvement of community and stakeholder organizations in the process, such an involvement ensures an IDP that is informed by REAL and ACTUAL ISSUES DIRECTLY EXPERIENCED BY COMMUNITIES. It is therefore crucial for the Municipality to adopt an appropriate mechanism and also put in place appropriate structures to ensure effective participation. Ngwathe Public Participation Policy is the guiding document in this regard, this policy takes cue from the **Provincial Community Based Planning Model (CBP)**.

### **Ward Committees**

The main drivers of the public Participation is the Ward Committee, their functionality will therefore come in handy for the success of Municipal Planning and Development and help reduce service delivery protests.

### **Functional/ Effective Ward Committees:**

- Hold regular meetings, starting on time and good attendance,
- Collective implementation of decisions,
- Constructive communication with municipality,
- Regular engagement with communities,
- Ensures that community issues are discussed in Council.

### **Principles of Public Participation:**

- Collaborative Planning.
- Citizen Participation.
- Cooperation.
- Team Work.
- Public Education.
- Common Vision.
- Collective Ownership.

### **Structured Participation:**

A structured public participation process will be followed.

- Ward councilors and Ward Committees will in most cases lead the proceedings
- Ward based approach is the key to reach as vast and many members of our communities.
- Existing public participation structures will be used.
- Door to door will also be used to address the principle of inclusivity.
- Appropriate forms of media will be utilized in order to reach as many people as possible.
- All relevant community and stakeholder organizations will be invited to register as members of the IDP Representative Forum.

- An appropriate language and accessible venues will be used to allow all stakeholders to freely participate.
- The IDP Representative Forum meetings will be scheduled to accommodate the majority of the members.
- Copies of the IDP documents will be made available for all communities and stakeholders and adequate time provided for comments.

#### Diversity:

- The way public participation is structured provides sufficient room for diversity within the Municipal area in terms of different cultures, gender, and language and education levels.
- Participants will therefore be made aware that it is in their own interest to be involved in the planning process and it is not a task they have to be paid/pay for.
- Participants are responsible and expected to give report back to the structures that they represent.

#### Ward Profiles:

NLM has undertaken the process of developing the ward profiles for all the 20 wards. the purpose of these ward profiles is to enable NLM planning to zoom into specific ward issues and respond directly to such and where possible be able to elevate some of the social issues to the relevant sector departments.

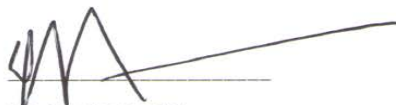
The development of such plans is the responsibility of all relevant role players within the respective wards and is led mainly by the ward councilors. All the ward profiles are expected to be completed by end of April 2015.



### PUBLIC PARTICIPATION NOTICE: IDP & BUDGET

The Mayor of Ngwathe Local Municipality, Cllr Joey Mochela wishes to extend an invite to members of Ngwathe community in terms of the provisions of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000: Chapters 4, 5 & 6 to the 2015-16 IDP review meetings to be held according to the following schedule:

Date	Town	Ward	Venue	Time	Ward Councillors	Responsible Managers
28/10/2014 Tuesday	PARYS	6 8	Boitlamo	16:30	Cllr N Ndlovu Cllr D Vandisi,	Mateis Pule C
29/10/2014 Wednesday		9	Ntshwephepha	16:30	Cllr M Mbele,	Mateis Moseme
30/10/2014 Thursday		10	Tambo ZCC sport ground	16:30	Cllr M Mofokeng.	Mateis Hlongwane
03/11/2014 Monday		11	Botjhabatsatsi	16:30	Cllr N Mopedi	Mateis Mkhuma
04/11/2014 Tuesday		12	Mosepele Hall	16:30	Cllr D Modiko,	Mtimkulu Kgotlagomang
05/11/2014 Wednesday		13 18	Parys Town Hall	16:00	Cllr S Vermaak Cllr J Roos	Dlamini Coetzer
06/11/2014 Thursday		14	Schonkenville Hall	16:30	Cllr V De Beers	Mateis Manzi
10/11/2014 Monday	VREDEFORT	20	Montoele Hall	16:30	Cll M Ranthako	Pietersen Mpindo
11/11/2014 Tuesday		15	King's motel	16:30	Cllr L Mehlo	Pietersen Marumo
12/11/2014 Wednesday		16	SS Paki	16:30	Cllr K Khumalo	Pietersen Mpindo
13/11/2014 Thursday	HEILBRON	1	Sandersville Hall	16:30	Cllr S Bocibo	Moeketsi Jaers
17/11/2014 Monday		3	Phiritona Hall	16:30	Cllr P Ndayi	Moeketsi Jaers
18/11/2014 Tuesday		4	Rearabetswe	16:30	Cllr M Mofokeng	Moeketsi Jaers
19/11/2014 Wednesday		5	Piano ground	16:30	Cllr M Radebe	Moeketsi Jaers
20/11/2014 Thursday		7	Greenfield	16:30	Cllr S Mvulane	Moeketsi Jaers
24/11/2014 Monday	EDENVILLE	19	?????	16:30	Cllr M Kamabitsa	Knoase Majivolo
25/11/2014 Tuesday	KOPPIES	2	Kwakwatsi Hall	16:30	Cllr M Masooa	Mosala Mpindo
26/11/2014 Wednesday		17	Ipatleleng	16:30	Cllr P Choni	Mosala Shabalala

  
LD KAMOLANE  
Municipal Manager

Enquiries can be directed to:

Pule Tsekedi : SESM  
Email: [tsekedi@ngwathe.co.za](mailto:tsekedi@ngwathe.co.za)  
Tel: 056 816 2700

## **CHAPTER TWO (2);**

### **SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS**

#### **Introduction**

Section 26 of the MSA dictates that an IDP must reflect amongst others an assessment of the existing level of development in the municipality. This section will also assess existing and envisaged backlogs, services and their delivery, the critical institutional capacity constraints of the municipality will be outlined. Issues of spatial development will be attended to in this chapter as well.

Since the Analysis Section provides an overview of the area, the municipality and the organisation's capability, it would be the base for all plans that emanate in the following sections, including sector plans.

#### Overview of Ngwathe Local Municipality

Ngwathe Local Municipality is situated in the northern part of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality previously known as the Northern Free State, it is one of the four Local municipality within the district, the other three (3) being Mqohaka, Metsimaholo and Mafube.

The geographical area of the municipality is 7055.0277 square kilometers and It comprises of five towns which are:

Parys/ Tumahole

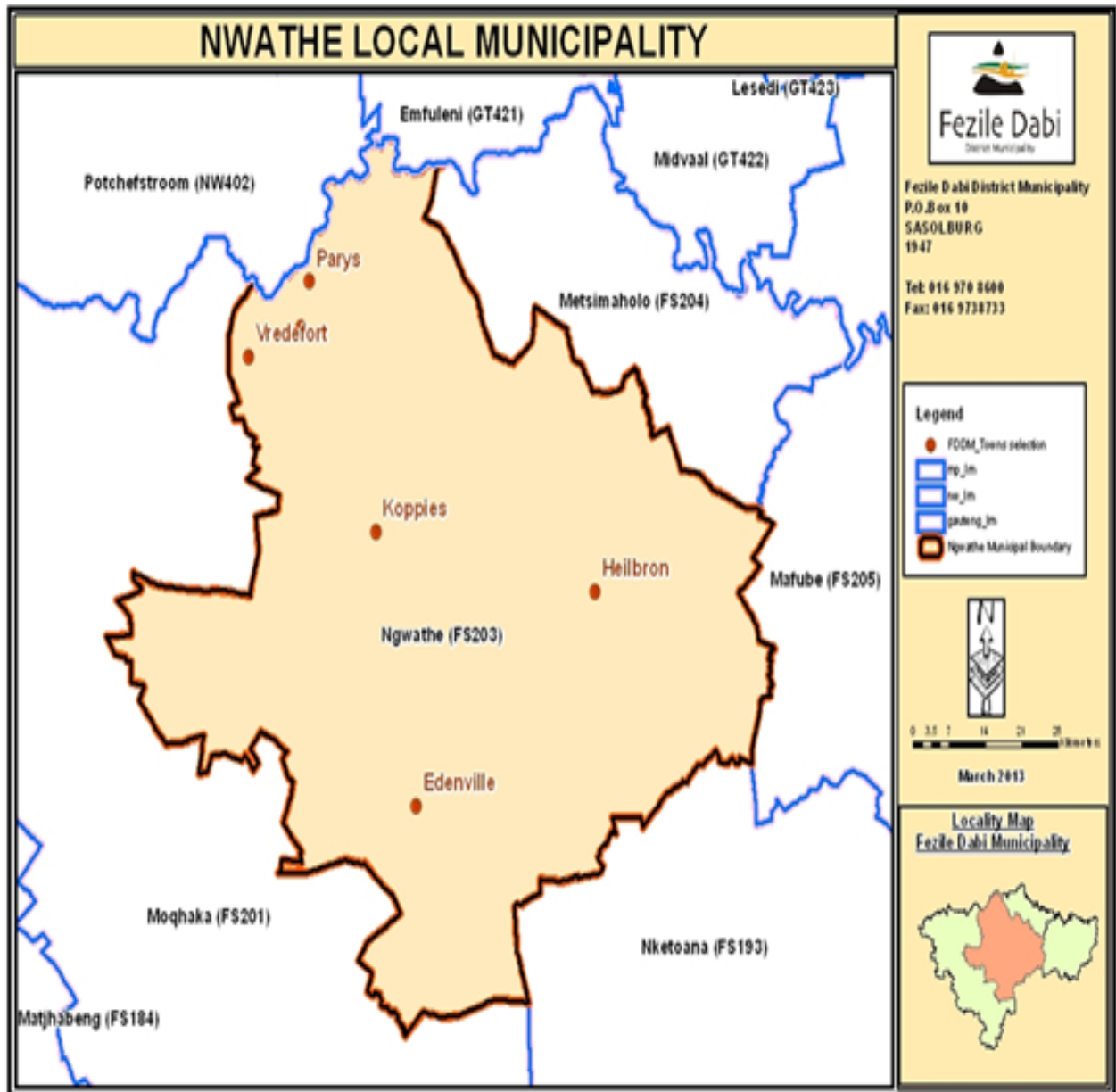
Heilbron/ Phiritona

Koppies/ Kwakwatsi

Vredefort/ Mokwallo and

Edenville/ Ngwathe

## Ngwathe Map



Overview of Neighbourhoods within Ngwathe Local Municipality		
Settlement Type	Households	Population
<b>Towns</b>		
Parys	5 675	8071
Heilbron	3 316	1 143
Vredefort	1 031	786
Koppies	764	723
Edenville	1 166	433
Sub-Total	11 962	11 156
<b>Townships</b>		
Tumahole	10 695	37 675
Phiritona	8 513	5 482
Mokwallo	4 545	4 323
Kwakwatsi	3 133	3 703
Ngwathe	1 524	5 861
Sub-Total	28 410	57044
<b>Rural/Farms settlements</b>		
Parys	620	
Heilbron	1 604	
Vredefort	153	
Koppies	1 468	
Edenville	571	
Sub-Total	<b>4 416</b>	
<b>Informal settlements</b>		
Edenville / Ngwathe :	1003	
Heilbron/Phiritona:	2368	
Koppies Kwakwasi	1918	
Parys/Schonkenville	561	
Parys/Tumahole:	4356	
Vredefort/Vredeshoop:	41	
Vredefort/Mokwallo:	1592	

## NLM Wards and Ward Councillors

Town	Ward	Ward Councillor	PR Councillors
Heilbron	1	Cllr Bocibo C	Cllr Serathi M
	3	Cllr Ndayi P	Cllr Swart A
	4	Cllr Mofokeng M	Cllr Van der Merwe P
	5	Cllr Radebe M	Cllr Seabi M
	7	Cllr Mvulane S	Cllr De Jager C
Koppies	2	Cllr Masooa M	Cllr Serfontein C
	17	Cllr Choni P	Cllr Molaphene P Cllr Hlapane L
Parys	6	Cllr Ndlovu N	Cllr Mochela J
	8	Cllr Vandisi D	Cllr Mopeli N
	9	Cllr Mbele M	Cllr Schoonwinkel A
	10	Cllr Mofokeng M	Cllr Sehume AN
	11	Cllr Sothoane C	Cllr Scholtz F
	12	Cllr Modiko D	Cllr Mandelstam G
	13	Cllr Vermaak S	Cllr Oliphant M
	14	Cllr De Beer V	Cllr Molotsane R
	18	Cllr Roos J	
Vredefort	15	Cllr Mehlo R	Cllr Mofokeng M
	16	Cllr Khumalo K	Cllr Tlali L
	20	Cllr Ranthako	Cllr Motsumi M
Edenville	19	Cllr Ramabitsa M	

## Political Governance

The composition of the municipal council is:

- ANC = 28
- DA = 09
- FFP = 01
- COPE = 01
- **Total = 39**

## Political Leadership:

The municipality is headed by the Mayor and Speaker who are the two full time Councillors



**The Mayor Cllr MJ Mochela**



**The Speaker: Cllr P Ndayi**

### Responsibilities of the Municipal Council

Section 151 of the Constitution, 1996 states that the executive and legislative authority of a municipality is vested in its municipal council

The municipality has all the powers assigned to it in terms of the Constitution as well as national and provincial legislation. The municipality has the right to do anything reasonably necessary for or incidental to the effective exercising of its powers.

The executive and legislative authority of the municipality vest in the Council, and the Council takes all the decisions of the municipality except -

- (a) decisions on those matters that have been delegated;
- (b) decisions on those matters that have by law been assigned to a political structure, political, office bearer or employee of the Council;

### Decision Making

There are various decision making structures within Council which include the following:



- Municipal Council;
- Executive Committee;
- Portfolio Committees,
- Officials with delegated powers.

### EXCO

The Executive Committee (EXCO) which is chaired by the Mayor and draws membership from the chairs of the following Municipal Portfolio Committees (Section 79/80 committees):


<b>COMMITTEE</b>	<b>CHAIR</b>
INFRASTRUCTURE & LED	Cllr TL Vandisi
FINANCE & BUDGET	Cllr GP Mandelstam
URBAN, RURAL, PLANNING & HOUSING	Cllr N Mopedi
CORPORATE SERVICES	Cllr M Serathi
SOCIAL & COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT	Cllr C Serfontein
PUBLIC SAFETY & TRANSPORT	Cllr A Schoonwinkel

### **SECTION 80 COMMITTEES:**

<b>INFRASTRUCTURE &amp; LED COMMITTEE:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Vandisi Cllr Modiko Cllr Malaphane Cllr MD Mofokeng Cllr Khumalo Cllr Bocibo Cllr Roos	<b>FINANCE &amp; BUDGET:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Mandelstam Cllr Sothoane Cllr De beer Cllr Ranthako Cllr Schoonwinkel Cllr Van Der Merwe
<b>CORPORATE SERVICES:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Serathi Cllr Vermaak Cllr Tladi Cllr Radebe Cllr Ramabitsa	<b>URBAN, RURAL, PLANNING &amp; HOUSING:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Mopedi Cllr Ndlovu Cllr Masooa Cllr Mofokeng MM

Cllr Seabi	
<b>SOCIAL &amp; COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Serfontein Cllr Mehlo Cllr Hlapane Cllr Oliphant Cllr Mofokeng ML Cllr Choni	<b>PUBLIC SAFETY &amp; TRANSPORT:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Schoonwinkel Cllr LS Mvulane Cllr AP Swart Cllr C De Jager Cllr AM Mbele
<b>LOCAL LABOUR FORUM:</b> <b>Chairperson:</b> Cllr Serathi Cllr Mandelstam Cllr Van Der Merwe	

### Arrangement of functions

INCUMBENT	FUNCTIONS
 <p>The Mayor: Cllr Joey Mochela</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ IDP.</li> <li>✓ Executive Committee</li> <li>✓ Portfolio Committees.</li> <li>✓ Poverty alleviation.</li> <li>✓ Youth Development.</li> <li>✓ Gender Promotion.</li> <li>✓ HIV&amp; AIDS.</li> <li>✓ Bursaries.</li> <li>✓ Communications.</li> <li>✓ Disability.</li> <li>✓ Pauper Burials.</li> </ul>



The Speaker: Cllr Phillemon Ndayi

- ✓ Council.
- ✓ Councillors.
- ✓ Public Participation.
- ✓ Ward Committees.
- ✓ PPO's.
- ✓ CDW's.
- ✓ CWP.



Cllr M Serathi

Chair: Corporate Services Committee



Cllr TL Vandisi

Chair: Infrastructure and LED Committee



Cllr GP Mandelstam

Chair: Finance and Budget Committee




Cllr N Mopedi

Chair: Urban, Rural Planning and Housing Committee



Chair: Public Safety and Transport Committee

Cllr A Schoonwinkel	
 <p>Cllr C Serfontein (Koppies)</p>	Chair: Social & Community Development

### **Administrative governance**

The administrative wing of the municipality is responsible for the day to day operations and serves as the structure directly responsible for delivering services. This is headed by the Municipal Manager.

The Municipal Manager is appointed in terms of Section 54A of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended.

The municipal Manager is assisted by the team of managers accountable to him and appointed in terms of Section 56 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended.



Section 56 at Ngwathe are four according to the following directorates as per the organogram,

<b>Post</b>	<b>Status</b>
Municipal Manager,	Filled
Financial Services,	Vacant
Technical Services,	Filled
Community Services &	Filled

Corporate Services.	Vacant
---------------------	--------

### **Administrative Wing**

The following table is a depiction of the administrative arrangement in terms of programmes:

<b>Title</b>	<b>Incumbent</b>	<b>functions</b>
Municipal Manager	 Mr. LD Kamolane	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Employees.</li> <li>✓ Policies.</li> <li>✓ Risk &amp; Compliances.</li> <li>✓ Directorates.</li> <li>✓ Regions.</li> <li>✓ Strategic Planning.</li> <li>✓ PMS.</li> <li>✓ IGR.</li> <li>✓ Provision of Services.</li> <li>✓ Stakeholder Relations.</li> <li>✓ IDP.</li> <li>✓ Website.</li> <li>✓ Reporting.</li> </ul>
Director Community Services	 Mr. B Netshivhozha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ LED.</li> <li>✓ Housing and Development.</li> <li>✓ Traffic.</li> <li>✓ Disaster Management.</li> <li>✓ Fire.</li> <li>✓ Land.</li> <li>✓ Commonages.</li> <li>✓ Refuse Removal.</li> <li>✓ Land fill Sites.</li> <li>✓ Building Plans.</li> <li>✓ Parks &amp; Recreation.</li> <li>✓ Mimosa.</li> <li>✓ Library Services.</li> <li>✓ Environmental Health.</li> <li>✓ ECD.</li> </ul>

<p>Acting Chief Financial Officer</p>	 <p>Me. T Mkhuma</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Budgeting.</li> <li>✓ Revenue.</li> <li>✓ Financial Statements.</li> <li>✓ Supply Chain.</li> <li>✓ Assets Management.</li> <li>✓ Accounts &amp; Billing.</li> <li>✓ Fleet Management.</li> <li>✓ Metering.</li> </ul>
<p>Director Technical Services</p>	 <p>Mr. N Tshabalala</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Water.</li> <li>✓ Sanitation.</li> <li>✓ Storm Water.</li> <li>✓ PMU.</li> <li>✓ Roads.</li> <li>✓ Infrastructure Projects.</li> <li>✓ Electricity</li> </ul>
<p>Acting Director Corporate Services</p>	 <p>Mr. ZJ Majivolo</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Human Resource</li> <li>✓ Admin &amp; Legal</li> <li>✓ Work Place Skills Plan.</li> <li>✓ Learnerships &amp;/ Internships.</li> <li>✓ Council Agenda &amp; Minutes.</li> <li>✓ Building Maintenance.</li> <li>✓ Recruitment &amp; Placements.</li> <li>✓ Labour.</li> <li>✓ Employment Equity.</li> </ul>



## Staff Establishment

Description	2013-14 financial year			
	Approved Posts No.	Employees No.	Vacancies No.	Vacancies %
Water	88	39	49	56 %
Waste Water (Sanitation)	90	40	50	56 %
Electricity	57	48	9	%
Waste Management (Refuse)	139	80	59	%
Housing/Planning	17	2	15	%
Roads	111	36	75	%
Local Economic Development	10	4	6	49 %
Community & Social Services	45	30	15	33 %
Finance	122	83	39	32 %
Traffic	9	9	0	0 %
Sport and Recreation/Mimosa		30		%
Executive Council	17	50	33	%
Corporate Services	31	28	3	10%
ICT	6	5	1	17%
Legal/Risk/Procurement	14	13	1	8%

## Municipal Offices, contacts and working hours

TOWN	ADDRESS	TEL NUMBERS	FAX NUMBERS	Working Hours	Customer Care Hours
1.PARYS ( Head Office)	Liebenbergstrek Parys	056 811 2131	056 8176343	08h00 – 16h30	08h00 – 15h00
2. HEILBRON	Cnr Ringer & Macht Heilbron	058 852 2014	058 852 1764		
3. VREDEFORT	Cnr Free & Church	056 931 0012	056 931 0082		
4. KOPPIES	Cnr Third & Church	056 777 1819	056 777 2745		



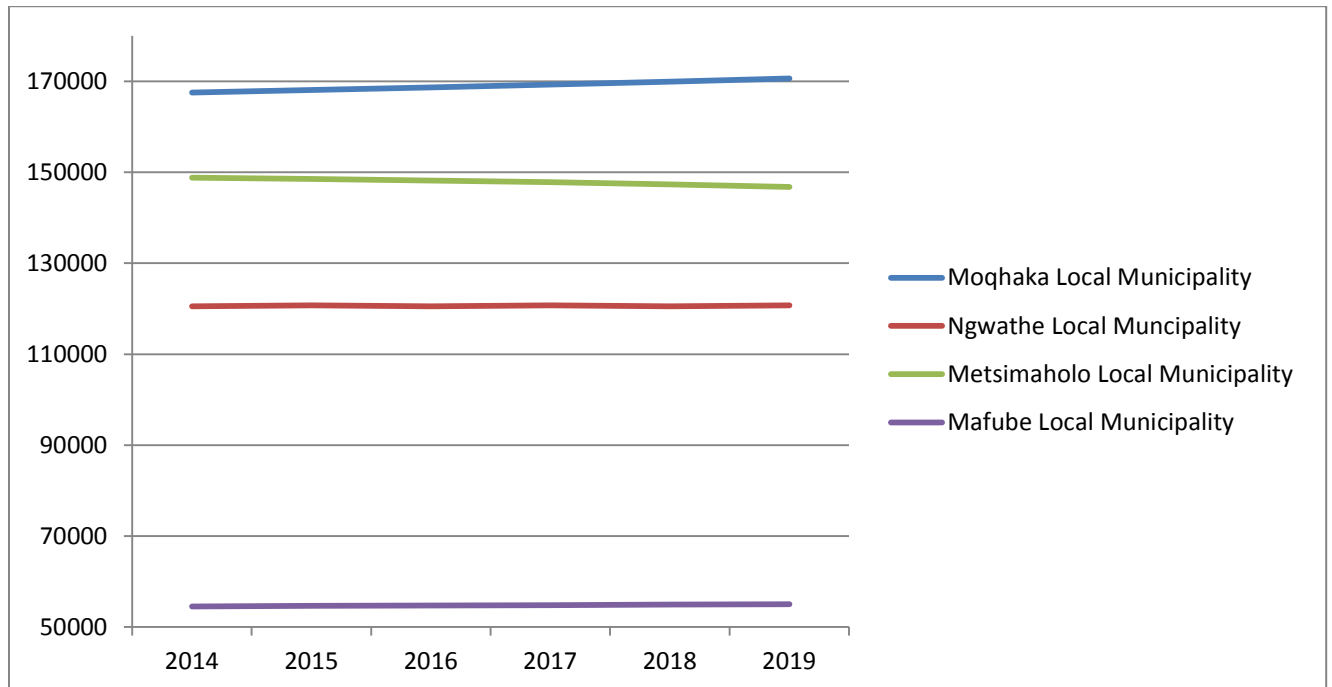
5. EDENVILLE	6 Cnr Mentz & Jordaan	056 631 0015	056 631 0019		
-----------------	--------------------------	-----------------	-----------------	--	--

### Population Analysis

Social Status						
Year	Total population	Total Households	Average size of households	Unemployment Rate	Population Growth	Dependency Ratio
FDD M	488 036	127 389	3.83	33.9	0.61	54.02
NLM	120 520	36 474	3.73	35.2	0.14	60.2

( Source: Census 2011)

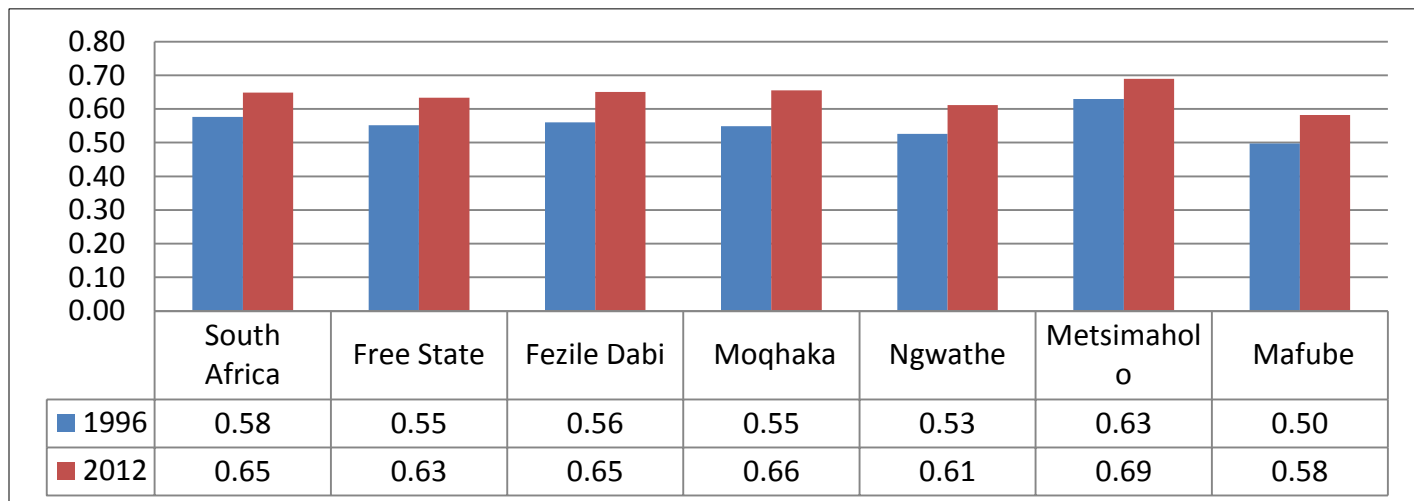
### Ngwathe Projected Population Growth



(Source Census 2011)

**The population of NLM is expected to be beyond 150 000 by 2019**

## Human Development Index



Source: Global Insight

- The Free State Province has also improved from 0.55 to 0.63 during the same period, though it remains below the national average.
- Fezile Dabi's HDI increased from 0.56 in 1996 to 0.65 in 2012, which takes it above the provincial HDI.
- The municipality with the highest HDI in Fezile Dabi District is Metsimaholo (0.69), while Mafube (0.58) has the lowest development level.
- Ngwathe is at 0.61 just above Mafube.

### Some Key Statistics

According to Census 2011, Ngwathe Local Municipality had a total population of 120 520 people, of which:

86,5% are black African,

10,3% are white people and

other population groups making up the remaining 3,2%.

Ranking by population size: 92

<b>Young (0-14)</b>	<b>30,1%</b>
<b>Working Age (15-64)</b>	<b>62,4%</b>
<b>Elderly (65+)</b>	<b>7,5%</b>
<b>Dependency ratio</b>	<b>60,2</b>
<b>Sex ratio</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Growth rate</b>	<b>0,14% (2001-2011)</b>
<b>Population density</b>	<b>17 persons/km2</b>
<b>Unemployment rate</b>	<b>35,2%</b>
<b>Youth unemployment rate</b>	<b>45,1%</b>
<b>No schooling aged 20+</b>	<b>8,5%</b>
<b>Higher education aged 20+</b>	<b>6,4%</b>
<b>Matric aged 20+</b>	<b>25,8%</b>
<b>Number of households</b>	<b>37,102</b>
<b>Number of Agricultural households</b>	<b>8,908</b>
<b>Average household size</b>	<b>3,2</b>
<b>Female headed households</b>	<b>41,8%</b>
<b>Formal dwellings</b>	<b>81,3%</b>

<b>Housing owned/paying off</b>	<b>66,3%</b>
<b>Flush toilet connected to sewerage</b>	<b>74,5%</b>
<b>Weekly refuse removal</b>	<b>81,9%</b>
<b>Piped water inside dwelling</b>	<b>44,7%</b>
<b>Electricity for lighting</b>	<b>92%</b>

## BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY

**Strategic Objective:** Eradicate backlogs in order to improve access to services and ensure proper operations and maintenance.

**Intended Outcome:** Sustainable delivery of improved services to all households.

### Free Basic Services (FBS)

	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16
<b>Free water:</b>			
- all residents including indigents	6kl	6kl	6kl
<b>Free Electricity:</b>			
- all residents	50kWh	50kWh	50kWh
-Non Indigents	10kWh	5kWh	0
-			
<b>Sewerage</b>			
Additional sewerage - indigents			Indigent only
<b>Free Refuse removal - indigents</b>			Indigent only
<b>Indigent subsidy (property rates)</b>			Category A – 100% Category B – 40% Category C – 15%
<b>Indigents threshold per household per month</b>	R 1990 per month	R 2040 per month	R 2820 per month
<b>Total number of indigents</b>		9221	

## Water

### Water Sector Plans

NLM Has the following Water Sector Plans:

- Water Master Plan, adopted by Council
- Water Safety Plan, adopted by Council

### Sources of water per town

<b>Parys/ Tumahole</b>	<b>Heilbron/ Phiritona</b>	<b>Vredefort/ Mokwallo</b>	<b>Koppies/ Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Edenville/ Ngwathe</b>
Parys receives its water from the Vaal River, from where it gravitates to the water treatment works (WTW) via an inlet channel. It is a conventional treatment works which has two phases grouped into major treatment processes, namely flocculation, sedimentation, filtration and disinfection. Thereafter water is pumped to a series of four reservoirs (2 x 4.5Ml, 1 x 8.1Ml and 1 x 10Ml) and one 160kl pressure tower before	Heilbron receives purified water from Rand Water via one bulk pipeline, from where the supply is pumped through a series of four reservoirs (1 X 2Ml, 1 X 6Ml, 1 X 1.8Ml and 1 X 1.2Ml) and one 500kl pressure tower. There is no WTW.	Vredefort's water is pumped from the Vaal River via a pipeline to the WTW 15 km's from Vredefort. It is a conventional treatment process similar to that of Parys as described above. From there it is pumped to two reservoirs (1 X 2Ml and 1 X 4.5Ml) and gravitates further into the town. Mokwallo has its own reservoir and pressure tower but experiences pressure	The Renoster River supplies Koppies with water. It is a conventional treatment process similar to that of Parys as described above. Water is first pumped to the WTW, then pumped to two reservoirs (1 X 1.4Ml and 1 X 4Ml), after which it is pumped to a pressure tower that supplies the town.	Edenville relies on a series of 18 boreholes (of which only 16 are operational) for its water supply. The boreholes are approximately 60m deep and frequently run dry, necessitating supply augmentation via a water tanker operating from Heilbron. All water is pumped into four reservoirs (1 X 2.5Ml, 1 X 4.5Ml, 1 X 8Ml and 1 X 1.8Ml) which feed the town. There is no WTW, although

gravitating to the town. Demand exceeds supply, and water is pumped continuously with the reservoirs unable to be filled; some areas also experience shortages and pressure problems at certain times. There is not enough water to cater for future developments. The WTW is currently being refurbished.		problems because the pressure tower is currently out of commission due to theft of the pumps and transformer equipment.		chlorine is dosed at the receiving reservoir.
--	--	---	--	---

### Blue Drop

Town	Rating	Compliance
Parys	4.38%	No
Vredefort:	4.38%	No
Koppies	4.38%	No
Heilbron	64.22%	Yes
Edenville	7.88%	No
<b>Ngwathe's Blue Drop score is only 20.5%.</b>		

Blue Drop Team has been established

## Operations and Maintenance

Maintenance on the treatment plants is inadequate due to a lack of funds, shortage of operators and frequent electricity shutdowns. Water quality will remain poor until these matters have been addressed.

Ngwathe is in the process of investigating the feasibility of establishing its own laboratory.

## Current Bulk Supply and Future Demand

	<b>Current Supply ML/d</b>	<b>Future Demand ML/d</b>	<b>Shortfall ML/d</b>
<b>Parys</b>	15	30	15
<b>Vredefort</b>	5	15	10
<b>Koppies</b>	3,5	15	11,5
<b>Heilbron</b>	7,2 Decommissioned municipal reservoir ( Rand Water supplier)	20	12,2
<b>Edenville</b>	2,02	10	7.02



## Access to Water

Ward	Name of settlement	Number of households	Service Level			Intervention required
			Above RDP	Below RDP	No service at all	
1	• Sandersville	375	374		01	Connection at stand 210 to be done through Rapid Bucket Eradication
	• S Section	537	537			None
2	• Old Location	663	663			None
	• New Location	793	793			Increase Pressure from Pipes& Valves.
3	• Heilbron Town	457	457			None
	• Mapetla Sec	151	151			None
	• Marantha Sec.	343	343			None
	• Zondi Sec.	124	124			None
	• Maponya Section	246	246			None
	• Mooi Dorpie	41	41			None

<b>4</b>	• Thekiso Sec.	375	375			None
	• Phahameng Sec.	186	186			None
	• Metampelong Sec.	60	60			None
	• Phumasebethane Sec.	201	201			None
<b>5</b>	• Marantha Sec.	148	148			
	• Naledi Sec. (Mapetla)	264	264			
	• 2000 Sec.	192	192			
	• Lahlumlenze Section	94	94			
	• Masakaneng	143	143			
	• Dikerekeng (churches)	152	152			
	• Sunshine	238	238			
<b>6</b>	• Mandela Sec.	303	303			
	• Mbeki Sec.	197	197			
<b>7</b>	• Airport	588		588	588	Use of Communal Taps
	• Moherepa	416	416			Water be tanks supplied when Reservoir runs below 60% at

						ext. 6
	• Greenfield	352	04	348	348	Households Connections (without taps) been done from February 2015
	• Metampelong	233	233			None
	• Moutainview	163	163			None
	• Bombas	105	105			None
<b>8</b>	• Mandela Sec.	1080	1080			
	• Mbeki Sec.	694	694			
	• Tambo Sec.	989	989			
<b>9</b>	• Lusaka Sec.	1753	1753			Water pressure be increased from reservoir
	• Vuka Sec.	1352	1352			
	• Metampelong	257	257			
<b>10</b>	• Tokoloho Sec.	667	667			
	• Skotiphola	694	694			
	• Zuma Sec.	369	369			
	• Winnie Sec.	440	440			
<b>11</b>	• Sisulu Sec.	827	827			
	• Ghana	890	890			

	• Phelandaba	637	637			
<b>12</b>	• Old Location	739	739			
	• B- Section					
	• Zone 6	458	458			
	• Majugadra					
<b>13</b>	• Hospital View	1217	1217			
	• Golf Estate	106	106			
<b>14</b>	• Schonkenville	1219	1219			
	• Zone 6					
	• Sisulu Sec.					
<b>15</b>	• Mandela Sec.	741	741			None
	• Metampelong	44	44			
	• Thola Sec.	197	197			None
	• Old Location	415				
<b>16</b>	• Chris Hani	160	160			None
	• Phahameng Sec.	218	218			None
	• Mapetla Sec.	1118	1118			None
	• Tambo Sec.	602	602			None
	• Old Locaton	246	246			None

<b>17</b>	• Ward 17	1751	1751			None
<b>18</b>	• Vaal Parys	2164	2164			
<b>19</b>	• Chris Hani	241	241			
	• Mandela Section	383	383			
	• Phahameng	241	241			
	• Old Location	221	221			
	• Moipone Nketu	355	355			
	• New Stands	67	67			
	• Extension 4 •	195		195		
	• Edenville	521	521			
<b>20</b>	• Vredeshoop	102	102			None
	• Vredefort	646	646			None

## WATER CHALLENGES

### Parys

CHALLENGES	EFFECTS	SOLUTION	VALUE ADDED
Organized Crime Challenge -Vandalism of Valves and Pump Design Challenge -No screens at the abstraction point -The leaves of the trees blocks the screen at the inlet -The River inlet gravitation channel is blocked with lots of sludge	-When the valves are broken causes the shortage of water supply to the plant -High turbidity during rainy season -Decrease the supply of water coming into the plant -Quality of water	-Install fencing for the Valves -Design and install screen and atb abstraction point -All trees must be cut at the inlet work -Refurbishment of the channel	-Better Quality of Water at the inlet -Better Quality of water at the inlet
<b>PLANT</b> -Bad colour taste and odour of water -We are loosing lots of effective chemical through backwashing process -The plants capacity is small in terms of generate the expected demand -No electricity supply to the plant -No standby blower pump -The existing pump do not	-Quality of water -High Chemical Cost -Non compliance of blue Drop -We don't comply with Blue Drop, since we always have a shortage of water -If there's electricity cut off the plant cannot operate -If blower is broken ,we can not backwash the filters -Does not supply sufficient Water to the reservoir	-The constructed (PAC)powder attracted carbon unit must be connected and commissioned -Design the recycling pump station from the retention ponds to inlet works -Upgrade the plant -Install electrical a ring supply from Tumahole ring supply -Provide 800KV standby generator -Install a standby blower	-Taste and odour will be eliminated -Save on chemicals -Improve Water Service Delivery

pump enough water to the reservoir		pump -Upgrade the capacity of the pump (uplift)	
<b>NETWORK</b> -Frequent Pipe burst -Pump inlet the reseivors are bursting frequently	-Shortage of supply -Inconsistent water supply to the community and losing clean Water -Non compliance to Blue drop	-Replace the air release valves -Replace broken air release valves and put more air release Valves -Embaric asbestos replacement program me with UPVC -Replacement of all broken valves in the network	-Reduce unplanned maintenance activities and maintenance cost -Consistent water service supply -Improve blue drop status -Reduction of water losses
<b>RESERVOIRS</b> -No flow meters at inlet and out let of the reservoir Security Challenge -No Security fence for reseivor 1,2	-We cannot determine the water losses -Non Compliance to Blue Drop -Vandalism of the pumpstation	-Install flow meter at the inlet and out let of all reservoir -Install the fence in the reservoir one and two	
Inconsistent electricity supply -Inconsistent electricity supply	-It damages the pumps -Causes the shortage of water	-Put standby generator reservoirs 2,3 and 4	
<b>NETWORK</b> -All Town pipeline old township in Tumahole has asbestos pipes -Inconsistent pumping of water to the community -No zonal meters -The distribution valve in town	-We cannot determine water loses in the system -Shortage of water -measuring apparatus	-Embark on asbestos replacement program me -Pumping for longer times to the community -Install zonal meter	

they are not opening and closing properly			
---	--	--	--

### **Vredefort**

<b>Challenges</b>	<b>Effects</b>	<b>Solution</b>	<b>Value Add</b>
Regular Electricity supply ,Eskom network is overloaded in this area	Every 2 <sup>nd</sup> week we can't pump water to the plant	500 VA generator needed (standby) -When there are interruption the will always be pumping of the Source	
Designs issues The designs are old need to be upgraded	-Sand gets pumped in to the plant -The pumps is always braking and being hit by lighting	Investigate alternative designs and supply methods on the plant -Improving the designs on the plant- -Reviving the current boreholes that are not utilized (37 Holes) -cost benefit analysis	



Data Collection -Calibration issues and instrumentation have not been consumption VS distribution	-We cannot determine the water lost -We cannot determine water theft -This will also address the irregularities from the past	-Investigate alternative designs and supply methods on the plant -Improving the designs on the plant -Reviwing the current boreholes that are not utilized (37 Boreholes) -Cost benefit Analysis	-Will assist in addressing Revenue issues
--	---	---	---

Challenges	Effect	Solution	Value Add
Two Clarifiers ( sedimentation Tanks systems -Disludge system of the clarifiers needs to be upgraded	-Current system affects the water quality and block the filters as a result we lose is a lot of water is wasted in a backwash process thus less water is distributed -There is a compromised efficiency on the plant	-Add Estuater Valve for disludging -Add a Bush drive	-Improving water Quality -Eliminating inefficiency at the plants system at that points e.g. Blockages on filters -Increase efficiency of the Water Supply at the plant
<b>filtration</b> -Currently there are no standby blowers and backwash pumps and nozzles	-If one blower breaks there isn't enough purified water, the problems take 1-2 days to resolve	Installation of standby blowers	Sufficient Purified Water and short turn around time in resolving any shocks
<b>Sumps</b> -Capacity of sump is smaller	-Regularly over flowing and lot of clean water is throw away(wastage era)	-Double the capacity of the sump	-Eliminate Waste e.g Clean water

<b>Pump Sets</b> -55 KW standby pump with a soft starter panel -One soft starter is mechanical and one starter is electrical	-High rate of wear Tear -High maintenance costs and unplanned pending -Hence is a contrast on the system	Reconciliation of the systems	Efficiency maximization and reliability creation of the asset Better service delivery
<b>Data Collection</b> -Absences of water meters for clean water	-unable to measure amount of water pumped to reservoir	-Installation of new water meters	
Security & Fencing	-The plants are vulnerable and are constantly being vandalized -Pumps get stolen - Electricity cables get stolen -Operator are exposed to risk	-Adequate fencing at plant -Electric fencing if possible	

#### VREDEFORT DISTRIBUTION NETWORK

Status: 100% of the network in all the towns is asbestos  
50% the network is asbestos in Vredefort this is estimated on all towns of Ngwathe.

Challenges	Effects	Solution	Value Added
-Asbestos pipes are bursting on a daily basis -The infrastructure is at an already aged state	-constant bursting of the pipes -Constant water loss -High network maintenance costs -Unplanned maintenance and shocks	-To replace asbestos pipe -Engage on asbestos pipe replacement programme	-Long-term Infrastructure Reliability - Long-term Efficiency elimination - Elimination of unnecessary water losses

-80% gate Valves are not functioning (Aged Infrastructure) -The Water Valves are also eroded Due to long-term exposure to the chemicals reaction	-The valves are contributing in to the Water loss as they are not closing -This also affects the distribution customers -This also affects the distribution and affects the customers -Affects our Blue Drop Compliance -Water is also lost through the fire hydrants	-Replace all Valves	-Network reliability
-Lack of zonal meters	-There are no zone meters -Affects blue Drop Compliance -leaking of control -We are unable to know the quantities of water per township/statement -Affects Service Delivery Planning	Installation of Zonal meters	- Collection of data - Forward Planning based on reliable data

#### STATUS QUO:

- There are currently ± 37 Boreholes in the Vredefort
- The network of the borehole still exists but its old, (Made of steel pipe)
- We need to conduct a feasibility study on the current network, the yielding and the boreholes status
- We will also need to conduct a cost benefit analysis on the boreholes VS Plant Expansion
- However : We can't throw away the boreholes as they are important Water assets.

Challenges	Effects	Solution Proposed	Value Add
Broken meters and Inaccurate Meters	-Hence readings can't be determine and we collect revenue -Also affect revenue collection	-Replace the meters -Automated meter systems move away from manual readings	-Increase the revenue collection -Monitoring of water loss at house hold level

## **Heilbron**

<b>CHALLENGES</b>	<b>EFFECT</b>	<b>PROPOSED SOLUTION</b>	<b>VALUE ADDED</b>
No flow meters to check the supply from Rand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Water losses</li><li>• Cannot measure the water we pay for from Rand Water</li></ul>	Install flow mete to check the Rand Water consumption	Determine leaks in the network
No zonal meter to check inflow to reservoir & outflow to the community	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Non-compliance to Blue Drop</li></ul>	Install zonal meters to check municipal consumption	Assist with revenue collection
50% of all asbestos distribution pipes are redundant	The pipes burst regularly, therefore there is no supply of water to the community	Replace all asbestos pipes with uPVC pipes	Comply with Blue Drop
The valves are not functioning properly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The pipes burst regularly, therefore there is no supply of water to the community</li></ul>	Replace the valves that are not working	Reduce the loss of water intended for supply

<b>CHALLENGES</b>	<b>EFFECT</b>	<b>PROPOSED SOLUTION</b>	<b>VALUE ADDED</b>

The municipality pays a high purchase price of water from Rand Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the municipality loses money from purchasing water rather than producing its own</li> </ul>	Re-commissioning of our own treatment plant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revenue savings</li> <li>Long term Financial Sustainability</li> </ul>
The higher lying areas of Phiritona township have a pressure problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not enough water supply because of low pressure</li> </ul>	Supply the area with its own direct connection	Improve the pressure in the higher lying areas of Phiritona
200 Unmetered households	Revenue collection loss	Install 200 water meters	Improve revenue income

### **Edenville**

- Currently there are 23 bore holes - only 17 of them are functioning; 6 of them have dried up
- We have already run out of water 3 times this year because the boreholes could not yield water. Fixing it takes 3 to 5 days at a time, implying a loss of 15 days on our water production and service delivery
- Sometimes electricity runs out because of cable theft, affecting the distribution of water and causing shortage. This disturbance causes serious distress on the already strained resources of the municipality, as the restoration process is very expensive.

The following solutions will assist Ngwathe:

1. Installing a stand by generator to intervene during occasions of disruption
2. Replacement of 400 Water meters that are currently broken
3. Putting in place a borehole management system
4. Installation of data collection instrumentation measuring apparatus

There currently exists a water line in Koppies which can be utilized for supply water to Edenville, as Edenville is not a water rich area, largely dependent on a borehole system.

### **Koppies**

- The water purification plant requires needs to be upgraded to cater for the growing population;
- Ageing infrastructure – old asbestos pipes, pumps that needs to be replaced, meters that require replacement;
- Zonal meters to be installed to assist with the water balancing;
- No inlet and outlet pipes at the reservoirs;
- Water losses in excess of 30% due to leaks, pipe burst and ageing infrastructure;
- Leaking pressure tower at the entrance of town.

## **Sanitation**

### Sanitation Sector Plans

NLM Has the following Sanitation Sector Plans:

- Sanitation Master Plan, adopted by Council
- Water Services Development Plan is available, it was adopted by council needs review.

Sanitation refers to the principles and practices relating to the collection, removal or disposal of human excreta, household waste water and refuse as they impact upon people and their environment. Good sanitation includes appropriate health and hygiene awareness and behaviour as well as acceptable, affordable and sustainable sanitation services. And no doubt that sanitation is affected by and affects water resource availability, and therefore it needs to be incorporated when developing water reconciliation strategies.



Figure: Example of the new toilets being built in response to buckets eradication programme.

## Types of sanitation per town

Area	Waterborne system	VIP's	Buckets	Septic Tanks
Parys, Tumahole: Wards 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 & 18	15215	-	-	-
Heilbron, Phiritona: Wards 1, 3, 4, 5 & 7	4639	58	1695	-
Koppies, Kwakwatsi: Wards 2 & 17	4416	-	-	-
Vredefort, Mokwallo: Wards 15, 16 & 20	4603		10	-
Edenville, Ngwathe: Ward 19	-	1660	195	460

## WWTW

<b>Parys/ Tumahole</b>	<b>Heilbron/ Phiritona</b>	<b>Vredefort/ Mokwallo</b>	<b>Koppies/ Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Edenville/ Ngwathe</b>
The Parys WWTW receives effluent from Parys and Tumahole, as well as from various holiday resorts. It is fed from three major pump stations, which are all in need of replacement, refurbishment or capacity upgrading. The infrastructure has some of the older and	The effluent that is treated at the WWTW originates from the CBD, the formal housing sector and the industrial zone. This area also includes an informal housing settlement that is served by pit toilets. There are also still	This plant was constructed in the 1990s mainly for the industrial area and CBD to replace the oxidation ponds that were in use until then, while the small informal housing settlements were generally served with pit toilets. Much of the area has now been	This plant serves Koppies and Kwakwatsi. It is currently organically overloaded, but is being refurbished. However, as with Parys, further development or densification of the area is curtailed due to capacity problems of some of the older sewers. The informal	Oxidation ponds are used for disposal of septic tank effluent from Edenville and VIP toilet sludge from Ngwathe. The design capacity is 0.5Ml/d. It is registered as Class E plant.



<p>most overloaded sewers in the municipality. These sewers are generally at the limit of their hydraulic carrying capacity and have long outlived their design life. This places limitations on future developments within the catchment. The design capacity of the plant is 7.4Ml/d. It is registered as a Class C plant. The technology used is a biofilter and sludge drying beds. The plant is currently being upgraded to a capacity of 13Ml/d by the addition of a new inlet works and activated sludge system.</p>	<p>some bucket toilets in existence that have not been eradicated yet. The design capacity of the plant is 7.0Ml/d. It is registered as a Class C plant. The technology used is anaerobic and aerobic contactors.</p>	<p>reticulated, however. The plant is operating satisfactorily; about half of its capacity is supplemented by oxidation ponds. It is registered as a Class D plant. The design capacity of the plant is 5.5Ml/d. The Department of Water Affairs is currently engaged with a refurbishment programme.</p>	<p>settlement is served by only one communal tap and there are no proper toilets – those residents that do not have their own unimproved pit toilets make use of the veld for open defecation. The design capacity of the plant is 3Ml/d. It is registered as a Class C plant. The technology used is activated sludge and sludge lagoons.</p>	
---	---	---	--	--

**Currently, Ngwathe's Green Drop score is only 48%**

A Green Drop Improvement Plan has been prepared for the Municipality, and if the recommendations contained therein are implemented then much progress can be made in this regard.

**Operations and Maintenance**

Maintenance on the treatment plants is inadequate due to a lack of funds, shortage of operators and frequent electricity shutdowns.

## Access to Sanitation

Ward	Name of settlement	Number of households	Service Level			Intervention required
			Above RDP	Below RDP	No service at all	
1	• Sandersville	375	374		01	Connection at stand 210 to be done through Rapid Bucket Eradication
	• S Section	537	537			None
2	• Old Location	663	663			None
	• New Location	793	793			Connection at stand 210 to be done through Rapid Bucket Eradication
3	• Heilbron Town	457	457			None
	• Mapetla Sec	151	151			None
	• Marantha Sec.	343	343			None
	• Zondi Sec.	124	124			
	• Maponya Section	246	246			
	• Mooi Dorpie	41	41			
4	• Thekiso Sec.	375	375			
	• Phahameng Sec.	186	186			None
	• Metampelong Sec.	60	60			Connections currently done

						under Bucket Eradication Programme
	• Phumasebethane Sec.	201	201			None
<b>5</b>	• Marantha Sec.	148	148			None
	• Naledi Sec. (Mapetla)	264	264			
	• 2000 Sec.	192	192			
	• Lahlumlenze Section	94	94			
	• Masakaneng	143	143			
	• Dikerekeng (churches)	152	152			None
	• Sunshine	238	238			None
<b>6</b>	• Mandela Sec.	303	303			
	• Mbeki Sec.	197	197			Rapid Bucket Eradication Contractor project on-going
<b>7</b>	• Airport	588		588	588	59 Households using VIP Toilets which are serviced twice a year
	• Moherepa	416	416			Pipe Infrastructure in ext 5 in place but not fully completed
	• Greenfield	352	04	348	348	Connections currently done through Bucket Eradication Project
	• Metampelong	233	233			None

	• Moutainview	163	163			None
	• Bombas	105	105			None
<b>8</b>	• Mandela Sec.	1080	1080			
	• Mbeki Sec.	694	694			
	• Tambo Sec.	989	989			
<b>9</b>	• Lusaka Sec.	1753	1753			None
	• Vuka Sec.	1352	1352			None
	• Metampelong	257	257			None
<b>10</b>	• Tokoloho Sec.	667	667			
	• Skotiphola	694	694			
	• Zuma Sec.	369	369			
	• Winnie Sec.	440	440			
<b>11</b>	• Sisulu Sec.	827	827			
	• Ghana	890	890			
	• Phelandaba	637	637			
<b>12</b>	• Old Location	739	739			
	• B- Section					
	• Zone 6	458	458			
	• Majugadra					
<b>13</b>	• Hospital View	1217	1217			
	• Golf Estate	106	106			
<b>14</b>	• Schonkenville	1219	1219			

	• Zone 6					
	• Sisulu Sec.					
<b>15</b>	• Mandela Sec.	741	741			None
	• Metampelong	44	44			
	• Thola Sec.	197	197			None
	• Old Location	415				
<b>16</b>	• Chris Hani	160	160			None
	• Phahameng Sec.	218	218			None
	• Mapetla Sec.	1118	1118			None
	• Tambo Sec.	602	602			None
	• Old Locaton	246	246			None
<b>17</b>	• Ward 17	1751	1751			None
<b>18</b>	• Vaal Parys	2164	2164			
<b>19</b>	• Chris Hani	241	241			
	• Mandela Section	383	383			
	• Phahameng	241	241			
	• Old Location	221	221			
	• Moipone Nketu	355	355			
	• New Stands	67	67			
	• Extension 4	195		195		

	• Edenville	521	521			
<b>20</b>	• Vredeshoop	102	102			None
	• Vredefort	646	646			None

## SANITATION CHALLENGES

### Parys

CHALLENGE	EFFECTS	SOLUTION PROPOSED	
<b>Network Design</b> -At Mbeki Section there's pipeline that is blocked regularly ,it cause spillage --The pipeline that is blocked regularly it causes spillage	-It environmental health issue -Noncompliance to green drop -It's environment health issue -Noncompliance to green drop	-Re construct the new pipe lines -Reconstruct the new pipeline -Implementation of Ngwathe Local Municipality Bi-laws	
<b>Pump stations Design</b> -No flow meter inflow and out flow at the pump station -No standby pumps -Inconsistent electricity supply Security issues -No fence at ouderverf park pump station -The submersible pump is always broken because it operates under water Plant -The plant is overloaded	-cannot determine the water coming in the pump station -When one pump is broken the sewer over flows to the river/stream -The spillage of sewer -Damage the pump -Blockage in the sewer network -Vandalism -It operates under water -It causes the spillage ,overflowing To the river It cannot accommodate influent	-Install flow meter -Install a standby pump -Install standby generator -Fence the pump station -Install ourmen rub pump -Upgrade the treatment plant. -The plant being refurbishment.	



**Vredefort**

CHALLENGES	EFFECT	PROPOSED SOLUTION	VALUE ADDED
Asbestos pipes in town & parts of Mokwallo old & some collapsed	Pipe leaks · blockages · spillages	Replacement programme from asbestos pipe to uPVC pipes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Removal of inefficiencies</li><li>- Infrastructure Revitalization</li></ul>
Effluent from abattoir blocks river & causes plant down time	Spillages · damage to pumps · affects wastewater treatment process	Pre-treat waste at abattoir – Municipality to implement by-laws	Removal of inefficiencies in system - Revenue enhancement
Outfall sewer line from Grobler to Eerstelaan Streets that is above ground has collapsed	Environmental sewer spillage	Replacement of sewer pipe from 110 dia asbestos to 250 dia uPVC to accommodate future expansion	-Removal of spillages - Reduction of water losses
The main outfall sewer line from Thula, Vredeshoop to treatment works is leaking	Raw sewer flows to Lesothospruit	Replacement of sewer pipe from 250 dia asbestos to 250 dia uPVC to accommodate future expansion	- Reduction of water losses
Irregular electricity supply - Volt drop at pumpstation	Burns out electrical motor & panel · courses spillages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Electrical network at scrapyard pumpstation to be re-routed &amp; be supplied with its own transformer</li><li>• Larger pumpstation at Vredeshoop for increased supply</li><li>• All pumpstations to be provided with 100kVa generator for stand-by</li></ul>	-Elimination of inefficiencies from the system - Better service delivery

CHALLENGES	EFFECT	PROPOSED SOLUTION	VALUE ADDED
The plant capacity (5.5Ml) is insufficient	Overloading the plant	Upgrade to 10Ml	Increased supply and sufficiency enhancement
When the power is off, plant stops running	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spillages &amp; blockages at plant</li> <li>• Non-compliance with Green Drop</li> </ul>	Install 500kVa generator as stand-by	Removal of all inefficiencies
Drying beds for sludge are leaking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environmental compliance issue</li> <li>• Housekeeping issue</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-construct new drying beds with sufficient drainage</li> </ul>	-Environmental compliance - Elimination of environmental health Risks - Elimination of Sewerage Water losses
Channel at the inlet works too narrow & hampers cleaning of grit	Causes blockages & damage to pumps	Reconstruct the channels wider	Removal of blockages from the system
The oxidation ponds are not lined	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It affects/pollutes underground water</li> </ul>	All 9 ponds to be lined	Environmental Compliance and safety

## **Koppies**

### SYSTEM SYNOPSIS

- Koppies uses an activated sludge system plant
- The outfall sewer line from the town ship reduces from 300 to 250 mm asbestos pipes and it causes blockages which will also causes spillages in that area
- This is a design related problem which was inherited
- Electricity network supporting the plant have dilapidated and are causing very high running costs
- There are seven pump station (Four in the Township and 3 in Town)

CHALLENGES	EFFECTS	SOLUTIONS	VALUE ADDED
<b>Pump station Design</b>	-When the power is off there is a lot of spillages	-Put in each pump station 100 KVA generator	-Removal of all Spillages -Eliminate health and Environmental risk
<b>Industry Activity</b> -Abattoirs are not complying to COD -They discharge their effluent before they treat it adequately	-It blocks the network -It damages other pumps -It affect chemical oxygen Demand	-To draft municipal bylaws -Introduce levies	-Revenue collection for maintenance fund -Reduction of pollution in the river -Environmental compliance
No Measuring Devices	-Cannot plan for future development -Capacity of the plant -Not be able to design for future planning -There 2018 new stands	-Install flow meter	-Reduce maintenance cost
-Sedimentation Tank blocks because its properly due to sludge -The terrain is very flat, it cause in let works to be filled with sand through manholes	-Reduces efficiency of the plant	-Need to install a disludging pump at the contract channel reading to the oxidation points	-Reduce Costs of Wear Tear

The final outflow does not comply with green drop	-Quality of water compliance -Quality of effluent does not comply causing by pollution in the river -The are no flow meter condition is also a non-compliance to Green Drop	-Install flow meter -Upgrade the existing Gas chlorine disinfection system, as the current design is outdated	-Increase efficiency of the overall system
---	---	--	--

## **Edenville**

### Overall Overview

- There is no sewer network system in Edenville. There are septic in town tanks, VIP toilets (in township)  
-This is because there is not enough water for waterborne system; they only get water from boreholes
- Emptying of septic tanks with section truck to the oxidation plant
- To improve the septic tank, VIP toilets system, we need more water
- There currently are 195 formalized stands and they have Buckets which remains as need to have VIP
- 195 has communal stand

### Required Solutions

- Increasing the value chain between the towns
- We will need to build water a pipeline from Koppies to Edenville in order to implement the water borne system
- We will need to upgrade the Koppies plant by 4 Mgl in order to accommodate both towns and their development
- Construction of a plant in Edenville
- We need extra 195 VIP toilets at formalized stands
- The households are currently using the buckets
- There are 143 in formal stand (Squatters)
- There are 195 households formalized with buckets

## **Heilbron**

- The waste water treatment plant has to be upgraded to cater for the expanding industries and population;
- Bucket eradication for 1,595 households;
- Upgrade the bulk line to the waste water treatment works;

## **Electricity**

### Electricity Sector Plans

NLM Has the following Electrical Sector Plans:

- Electricity Master Plan, adopted by Council

### Suppliers of Electricity

### Bulk Provision

<b>Parys/ Tumahole</b>	<b>Heilbron/ Phiritona</b>	<b>Vredefort/ Mokwallo</b>	<b>Koppies/ Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Edenvile/ Ngwathe</b>
The Bulk Supply point for both Parys and Tumahole townships is obtained from Eskom at the Eskom/Parys Municipal substation with a firm 20 MVA supply and an installed capacity of 2 x 20 MVA transformers	The Bulk Supply point for Heilbron is obtained from Eskom at the Eskom/Heilbron Municipal substation with a firm 10 MVA supply and an installed capacity of 2 x 10 MVA transformers at 6.6 kV	The Bulk Supply point for both Vredefort and Mokwallo townships is obtained from Eskom at the Eskom/Vredefort Municipal substation with a non-firm 10 MVA supply and an installed capacity of 1 x 10 MVA transformer	The Bulk Supply point for both Koppies and Kwakwatsi townships is obtained from Eskom at the Eskom/Koppies Municipal substation with a non-firm 5 MVA 88/6.6 kV supply and an installed capacity of 1 x 5 MVA transformer	The Bulk Supply point for Edenvile township is obtained from Eskom at the Eskom/Edenville Municipal switching station fed direct from the Eskom 11 kV overheadline

## Access to Electricity

Ward	Name of settlement	Number of households	Service Level			Intervention required
			Above RDP	Below RDP	No service at all	
1	• Sandersville	375	374			
	• S Section	537	537			
2	• Old Location	663	663			
	• New Location	793	793			
3	• Heilbron Town	457	457			
	• Mapetla Sec	151	151			
	• Marantha Sec.	343	343			
	• Zondi Sec.	124	124			
	• Maponya Section	246	246			
	• Mooi Dorpie	41	41			
4	• Thekiso Sec.	375	375			
	• Phahameng Sec.	186	186			
	• Metampelong Sec.	60	60			
	• Phumasebethane Sec.	201	201			
5	• Marantha Sec.	148	148			
	• Naledi Sec. (Mapetla)	264	264			

	• 2000 Sec.	192	192			
	• Lahlumlenze Section	94	94			
	• Masakaneng	143	143			
	• Dikerekeng (churches)	152	152			
	• Sunshine	238	238			
<b>6</b>	• Mandela Sec.	303	303			
	• Mbeki Sec.	197	197			
<b>7</b>	• Airport	588		588		
	• Moherepa	416	416			
	• Greenfield	352				
	• Metampelong	233	233			
	• Moutainview	163	163			
	• Bombas	105	105			
<b>8</b>	• Mandela Sec.	1080	1080			
	• Mbeki Sec.	694	694			
	• Tambo Sec.	989	989			
<b>9</b>	• Lusaka Sec.	1753	1753			
	• Vuka Sec.	1352	1352			
	• Metampelong	257	257			
<b>10</b>	• Tokoloho Sec.	667	667			
	• Skotiphola	694	694			

	• Zuma Sec.	369	369			
	• Winnie Sec.	440	440			
<b>11</b>	• Sisulu Sec.	827	827			
	• Ghana	890	890			
	• Phelandaba	637	637			
<b>12</b>	• Old Location	739	739			
	• B- Section					
	• Zone 6	458	458			
	• Majugadra					
<b>13</b>	• Hospital View	1217	1217			
	• Golf Estate	106	106			
<b>14</b>	• Schonkenville	1219	1219			
	• Zone 6					
	• Sisulu Sec.					
<b>15</b>	• Mandela Sec.	741	741			
	• Metampelong	44	44			
	• Thola Sec.	197	197			
	• Old Location	415				
<b>16</b>	• Chris Hani	160	160			
	• Phahameng Sec.	218	218			
	• Mapetla Sec.	1118	1118			
	• Tambo Sec.	602	602			
	• Old Locaton	246	246			
<b>17</b>	• Ward 17	1751	1751			



<b>18</b>	• Vaal Parys	2164	2164			
<b>19</b>	• Chris Hani	241	241			
	• Mandela Section	383	383			
	• Phahameng	241	241			
	• Old Location	221	221			
	• Moipone Nketu	355	355			
	• New Stands	67	67			
	• Extension 4	195	195			
	•					
<b>20</b>	• Edenville	521	521			
	• Vredeshoop	102	102			
	• Vredefort	646	646			

**This figure reflects the ESKOM line through the municipal area**



## Electricity Challenges and interventions needed

<b>Parys/Tumahole</b>	
1	Repair all 11kV cable faults in Parys and Tumahole
2	Replace existing 11 kV switchgear in substations with new 11 kV Vacuum switchgear
3	Replace existing 3 x 185mm sq 11 kV Main feeder cables
4	Service all existing switchgear and transformers
5	Impliment new load control system
6	New Parys/Tumahole Main switching station
7	Replace Industries area main feeder cable
8	Add additional transformers in Tumahole for load distribution
9	New feederlines and Switching stations as required in the Electrical Masterplan
10	<b>Totals</b>
<b>Vredefort/Mokwallo</b>	
1	Repairs to electrical infrastructure in Vredefort and Mokwallo
2	New Mapetla switching station (Electrical Masterplan)
3	New Mokwallo Switching station (Electrical Masterplan)
4	Upgrade Eskom Bulk supply point
5	Repair and upgrade existing switching stations
6	Add additional transformers in Mokwallo for load distribution
<b>Edenville/Ngwathe</b>	
1	Repairs to electrical infrastructure
2	New Eskom Bulk supply point
3	New main feederlines from Eskom supply points
4	New Electricity meters and pole boxes
<b>Heilbron/Phiritona</b>	

1	Replace switchgear in Heilbron Main substation
2	Refurbishment of existing electrical infrastructure
3	Replace redundant Load Control System
4	New Eskom Bulk Supply Point for Heilbron and Phiritona
5	New Eskom Bulk Supply Point for Heilbron and Phiritona
<b>Koppies/Kwakwatsi</b>	
1	Eskom new 88 kV Bulk supply point
2	New Kwakwatsi switching station
3	Upgrade of electrical infrastructure including Rural lines
4	Additional transformers in Kwakwatsi for load distribution
5	Electrification of 2060 stands

## **Waste Management**

### Waste Management Sector Plans

NLM Has the following Waste Management Sector Plans:

- The Master Plan for Solid Waste Management (MPSWM)
- Integrated Waste Management Plan, adopted by Council.

### Land Fill Sites

The municipality has the following 5 land fill sites

TOWN	STATUS	REGISTER NUMBER	RESPONSIBILITY
Parys	Unlicenced	Parys WML/EIA/06/2014	MISA
Vredefort		Vredefort WML/EIA/03/2014	
Koppies		Koppies WML/EIA/07/2014	
Edenville		Edenville WML/EIA/02/2014	
Heilbron			DESTEA

## **Refuse Removal**

1. Removal schedule is once a week for households and twice for businesses

The Municipality has the following:

- 3 old compact trucks (2 Parys & 1 Vredefort)
- 3 refuse tips (1 Heilbron, 1 Koppies & 1 Edenville)

Access to refuse removal

Ward	Name of settlement	Number of households	Service Level			Intervention required
			Above RDP	Below RDP	No service at all	
1	• Sandersville	375	375			
	• S Section	537	537			
2	• Old Location	663	663			
	• New Location	793	793			
3	• Heilbron Town	457	457			
	• Mapetla Sec	151	151			
	• Marantha Sec.	343	343			
	• Zondi Sec.	124	124			
	• Maponya Section	246	246			
	• Mooi Dorpie	41	41			
4	• Thekiso Sec.	375	375			
	• Phahameng Sec.	186	186			
	• Metampelong Sec.	60	60			
	• Phumasebethane Sec.	201	201			
5	• Marantha Sec.	148	148			

	• Naledi Sec. (Mapetla)	264	264			
	• 2000 Sec.	192	192			
	• Lahlumlenze Section	94	94			
	• Masakaneng	143	143			
	• Dikerekeng (churches)	152	152			
	• Sunshine	238	238			
<b>6</b>	• Mandela Sec.	303	303			
	• Mbeki Sec.	197	197			
<b>7</b>	• Airport	588		588		
	• Moherepa	416	416			
	• Greenfield	352				
	• Metampelong	233	233			
	• Moutainview	163	163			
	• Bombas	105	105			
<b>8</b>	• Mandela Sec.	1080	1080			
	• Mbeki Sec.	694	694			
	• Tambo Sec.	989	989			
<b>9</b>	• Lusaka Sec.	1753	1753			
	• Vuka Sec.	1352	1352			
	• Metampelong	257	257			
<b>10</b>	• Tokoloho Sec.	667	667			

	• Skotiphola	694	694			
	• Zuma Sec.	369	369			
	• Winnie Sec.	440	440			
<b>11</b>	• Sisulu Sec.	827	827			
	• Ghana	890	890			
	• Phelandaba	637	637			
<b>12</b>	• Old Location	739	739			
	• B- Section					
	• Zone 6	458	458			
	• Majugadra					
<b>13</b>	• Hospital View	1217	1217			
	• Golf Estate	106	106			
<b>14</b>	• Schonkenville	1219	1219			
	• Zone 6					
	• Sisulu Sec.					
<b>15</b>	• Mandela Sec.	741	741			
	• Metampelong	44	44			
	• Thola Sec.	197	197			
	• Old Location	415				
<b>16</b>	• Chris Hani	160	160			
	• Phahameng Sec.	218	218			
	• Mapetla Sec.	1118	1118			
	• Tambo Sec.	602	602			
	• Old Locaton	246	246			



<b>17</b>	• Ward 17	1751	1751			
<b>18</b>	• Vaal Parys	2164	2164			
<b>19</b>	• Chris Hani	241	241			
	• Mandela Section	383	383			
	• Phahameng	241	241			
	• Old Location	221	221			
	• Moipone Nketu	355	355			
	• New Stands	67	67			
	• Extension 4	195	195			
	• Edenville	521	521			
<b>20</b>	• Vredeshoop	102	102			
	• Vredefort	646	646			

### **Waste Challenges and interventions**

- **Unlicenced land fill sites in all towns;**
- Refurbishment/ Replacement of all old compact trucks and refuse tips (Tractor & Trailer)
- The refuse removal is not done effectively in sections like Wienie ,Zuma, Mbeki due to lack refuse bins.

## Roads

### Roads Sector Plans

NLM Has the following Roads Sector Plans:

- The Roads and Storm Master Plan is available and has been adopted by Council
- Integrated Transport Plan is unavailable.



Arterial/ Internal Roads distances per town

AREA	TOTAL NUMBER OF STREETS	TARRED/PAVED	GRAVELED
<b>Edenville</b>	97	2	95
<b>Heilbron</b>	213	92	121
<b>Vredefort</b>	207	40	167
<b>Parys</b>	417	51	366
<b>Koppies</b>	170	23	147

PARYS	HEILBRON	KOPPIES	VREDEFORT	EDENVILLE
<b>Major Roads:</b> The old N1	<b>Major Roads:</b> The primary	<b>Major Roads:</b> The primary	<b>Major Roads:</b> The old N1 national road	<b>Major Roads:</b> The primary road between

<p>road between Kroonstad and the Gauteng Province stretches through the town (Loop, Water and Breë Streets).</p> <p>The primary road from Potchefstroom links with this road via Van Coller Street.</p> <p>A secondary road to Koppies also links with the old N1 through route via Grens Street.</p>	<p>road between Sasol and Bethlem extends through the Heilbron. Another major road links with Frankfort.. A secondary road to Koppies/ Parys links to the Heilbron road to the South Western side.</p>	<p>road between Edenville and Vredefort stretches adjacent to the town to the west and the primary road between Sasolburg and Kroonstad links to this road to the north of the area. A secondary road to the southwest links Koppies with Heilbron.</p>	<p>between Kroonstad and the Gauteng Province stretches through the town . The secondary road from Potchefstroom also compasses through the town and links with the Kroonstad/ Parys road directly to the south of the Vredefort CBD .</p>	<p>Heilbron and Kroonstad extends through the Greater Edenville. A secondary road to Heuningspruit links to the Kroonstad/Heilbron road to the north of Ngwathe. Secondary roads from Petrus Steyn and Steynsrus, subsequently link directly to Edenville to the east and south respectively.</p>
<p><b>Access Roads:</b></p> <p>The Parys CBD and residential areas have proper access from the</p>	<p><b>Access Roads</b></p> <p>Heilbron is strategically placed as Gateway to KZN and the Eastern Free State</p>	<p><b>Access Roads:</b></p> <p>Two access roads to Koppies exist from the Kroonstad/ Sasolburg</p>	<p><b>Access Roads:</b></p> <p>The Vredefort CBD and industrial areas have proper and direct access from the</p>	<p><b>Access Roads:</b></p> <p>Only one access road exists to Ngwathe from the Kroonstad/Heilbron road.</p>

major road network mentioned above. Tumahole only has direct access from the Koppies road (Grens Street). The only other formal access is via Kruis Street to Parys CBD and to the provincial road network. Tumahole and the industrial areas are thus inaccessible.	including Lesotho.	road and one access from the Edenville/Vredefort road. Another access to Koppies exists to the southwest of Koppies from Heilbron (A4).  Kwakwatsi is linked to Koppies via one formal access road. No access roads exist that links Kwakwatsi with the major road network.	major road network mentioned above. Mokwallo and Vredeshoop only have one formal access from the main road through the town.	There are two access roads to Edenville from the Kroonstad/Heilbron road. One access road is across the Ngwathe access road and the other access across the Heuningspruit road. The above-mentioned secondary roads to Steynsrus and Petrus Steyn, directly link to Edenville.
<b>Public Transport and Collector Roads</b> All the collector roads in Parys are.	<b>Public Transport and Collector Roads</b> An urgent need exists to upgrade main and collector roads in Phiritona, especially in	<b>Public Transport and Collector Roads</b> The main roads in Koppies and all access roads to Koppies are tarred. Only the	<b>Public Transport and Collector Roads</b> The main roads in Vredefort and all access roads are tarred. Only the one access road	<b>Public Transport and Collector Roads</b> A prominent pick up point is situated at the Ngwathe town entrance.

	the newly planned areas. Due to the fact that the largest portion of the community utilises public transport, the timely upgrading of main and collector roads is imperative.	one access road to Kwakwatsi and an extension thereof are tarred. All other collector roads are gravel roads.	to Mokwallo and an extension thereof are tarred. All other collector roads are gravel. Collector roads in the most recent extension of Mokwallo are un-surfaced.	
<b>Commuting Nodes</b> The greater parys accommodated three taxi ranks, One formal long distance taxi terminals is situated adjacent to the existing business node at the upper end of Brown street and the other informal for short	<b>Commuting Nodes</b> The Greater Heilbron accommodates one taxi ranks; one located in Heilbron . .	<b>Commuting Nodes</b> The only proper taxi terminus is situated opposite the Paradys Hotel in Koppies.	<b>Commuting Nodes</b> An informal, undeveloped taxi embarking point is situated in Vredefort and is inadequate. An area is provided in Mokwallo that is strategically situated for a taxi terminus but is not developed at present .	<b>Commuting Nodes</b> Presently no provision is made for commuter facilities in Ngwathe..

distance opposite site Brown.  A third formal short distance taxi terminal is situated to the west of the Parys CBD (corner of Kruis and Kort Streets) that also functions optimally with limited expansion possibilitie s.				
---	--	--	--	--

### Operations and maintenance

Each town has a dedicated team working on the roads, their main function is pothole repairs and sealing, this function is carried out with the assistance of the DPRT.

## Roads Challenges

<u>Street Signage &amp; Naming</u>	Most of the street especially in the township do not have names and name boards. Signage is virtually amiss in most of the towns.
<u>Operation and Maintenance</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Aged roads repairing equipment. (Yellow Fleet)</li><li>➤ Lack of Integrated Transport plan &amp; Roads Register.</li><li>➤ More than 200 km's Untrafficable streets.</li><li>➤ Lack of funding to repair/upgrade the streets.</li></ul>

## Municipal Traffic



The municipality is offering the traffic services in all the five towns, however the offices are based in the following towns:

<b>Town</b>	<b>Office</b>	<b>Services</b>
Parys	1	Implementation of The traffic Management Act
Heilbron	1	
Koppies	1	



## **Storm Water Analysis:**

### **Storm Water Sector Plan**

- The Roads and Storm Master Plan is available and has been adopted by Council



Storm water canal erected by Fezile Dabi to control water from entering the low lying houses in B Section ward 11.

### **Challenges**

Most streets do not have storm water canals.



## Cemeteries

AREA	Ward	Cemetery sites
Parys	18	2
Tumahole	10	1
Schonkenville	14	1
Edenville	19	1
Ngwathe		3
Vredefort		1
Mokwallo		1
Vredeshoop		1
Heilbron		1
Phiritona		3
Sandersville	1	1
Koppies		1
Kwakwatsi		1
<b>Total</b>		17

## Realities

Parys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The regional cemetery has been integrated with the Schonkenville.</li> <li>- A number of smaller cemeteries, varying in age, are present in the Tumahole residential areas . Although these sites are fully occupied, they are in an undesirable condition and fencing and proper maintenance thereof should be considered as a high priority.</li> </ul>
Heilbron	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Old cemeteries in all three communities are fully occupied..</li> <li>- All cemeteries are water clogged, which poses additional problems and emphasise.</li> <li>- The recently developed cemetery is out of town and a challenge during rainy season.</li> </ul>
Koppies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The existing cemeteries in Koppies has an adequate capacity for the medium term and can be extended further.</li> <li>- Kwakwatsi cemetery on the other hand</li> </ul>

	is near capacity, efforts for an alternative site are under way.
Vredefort	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Vredefort cemetery has adequate capacity for the medium term.</li> <li>- The Mokwallo cemetery is optimally utilised and an additional site has been identified and established.</li> <li>- Old cemeteries in Mokwallo and Vredeshoop are fully occupied and continuous maintenance thereof is considered as a priority.</li> <li>- An old cemetery, that could possibly be considered as a heritage site, is located adjacent the Vredefort Parys Road.</li> </ul>
Edenville	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngwathe cemetery on the other hand is near capacity, efforts for an alternative site are under way.</li> <li>- Edenville cemetery has an adequate capacity for the medium term and can be extended further.</li> </ul>

#### Challenges and Intervention required

Challenges	Intervention
➤ Lack of ablution facilities in most cemeteries.	Provision, maintenance and security.
➤ Maintenance of the cemeteries.	
➤ Stray animals destroying tombstones.	Access control and fencing

## Public Amenities

Area	Community hall	Thusong Centre	Libraries
Parys	1		1
Tumahole	1		1
Schonkenville	1		1
Edenville			
Ngwathe	Burnt down		1
Vredefort	1		1
Mokwallo			
Vredeshoop	1		
Heilbron	1		1
Phiritona	1	1	1
Sandersville	1		
Koppies	1		1
Kwakwatsi	1		1
<b>Total</b>	11	1	9

## Sport, Arts Culture and Recreation



## Facilities

Area	Sportsfield	Tennis Court	Swimming pool	Parks
Parys				
Tumahole	1		1	1
Schonkenville	1			
Edenville				
Ngwathe				
Vredefort				
Mokwallo	1			
Vredeshoop				
Heilbron				
Phiritona	1	1		
Sandersville				
Koppies				
Kwakwatsi		1		2





Phiritona soccer pitch





Tennis Courts



People's park developed by CWP in Koppies

Activities initiated and supported by NLM

Activity	Location	Period
<p>1. Phakisa Power Boat Annual Competitions</p> 	Parys Vaal River	October
Armon Nteo Soccer Tournament	Heilbron	April
OR Tambo Games	District, Provincial and National levels	
<p>Mandela Day</p> 	All towns	18 July
Tumahole Day	Tumahole	June- July



Women Month	All towns	August
		

## **SOCIAL SERVICES ANALYSIS**

This sub section will focus on other sectors such as education, health and safety in relation their access to basic services.

## **HOUSING ANALYSIS**

### **Housing**

There is no specific Housing Sector plan

### **Households within NLM**

Settlement Type	Households
<b>Towns</b>	
Parys	5 675
Heilbron	3 316
Vredefort	1 031
Koppies	764
Edenville	1 166
Sub-Total	11 962
<b>Townships</b>	
Tumahole	10 695
Phiritona	8 513
Mokwallo	4 545
Kwakwatsi	3 133
Ngwathe	1 524
Sub-Total	28 410
<b>Rural/Farms settlements</b>	
Parys	620
Heilbron	1 604
Vredefort	153
Koppies	1 468
Edenville	571
Sub-Total	4 416



## Housing Demand Data Base

The municipality has conducted a need analysis in terms of housing per town and the following was established:

### Summary of Housing Needs in Ngwathe per Urban Area

(Source Municipality, 2014)

<u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u>	<u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u>	<u>ERF REQUIREMENTS (Determined by Council)</u>
Parys	2 376	667	3 043	None
Tumahole	10 263	1 863	12 238	None
Schonkenville	733	-	733	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>13 372</b>	<b>2 530</b>	<b>16 014</b>	<b>None</b>
Heilbron	806	25	831	None
Phiritona	6 091	2381	8 472	None
Sandersville	367	-	367	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>7 264</b>	<b>2 406</b>	<b>9 670</b>	<b>None</b>
Koppies	338	116	454	None
Kwakwatsi	3 019	2153	5 172	1000
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>3 357</b>	<b>2 269</b>	<b>5 626</b>	<b>1 000</b>
Vredefort	480	25	505	None
Mokwallo	4 400	806	5164	None
Vredeshoop	96	-	96	None

<b><u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u></b>	<b><u>ERF REQUIREMENTS (Determined by Council)</u></b>
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>4 976</b>	<b>831</b>	<b>5 765</b>	<b>None</b>
Edenville	250	60	310	None
Ngwathe	2223	491	2 714	500 erven in 2014/15
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>2 473</b>	<b>551</b>	<b>3 024</b>	<b>500</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>31442</b>	<b>8 587</b>	<b>40099</b>	<b>1500</b>
The rural area comprises 2332 farms (excluding the subdivisions of agricultural land adjacent the Vaal River). The current tendency is for most rural families to rather reside in the urban areas with only the labourer's residing on the farms during the week. A substantial migration occurred the past few years from the rural to the urban areas.				

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<b>Residential - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Funding for completion of the draft Land Use Management Scheme as high priority project</li> <li>▪ Densification relating to subdivision is restricted to the minimum erf sizes determined in the respective TPS</li> <li>▪ Except for areas proposed for infill planning and where a TPS is implemented, the minimum erf size is 900 m<sup>2</sup> and in high density precincts, 350 m<sup>2</sup></li> <li>▪ Densification by means of <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Townhouses (unless otherwise indicated i.e. existing scheme, only on erven larger than 1 850 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 30 du/ha)</li> <li>- Maisonettes (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 50 du/ha)</li> <li>- Flats (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 80 du/ha)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
▪ 1975	▪ 2406 erven in	▪ No erven	▪ 806 erven	▪ No erven in

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>erven in reserve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R1: limited long term infill planning opportunity will become available once the realigned Dover Road is constructed.</li> <li>▪ R2: Possible high income, holiday related housing associated with the adjoining Parys Golf and Country estate.</li> <li>▪ R3: Is proposed</li> </ul>	<p>reserve.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Heilbron further eastward towards Uniefees Dam</li> <li>▪ Sandersville at capacity</li> <li>▪ R1: Short term residential extension, northeast of Phiritona. Extension is not proposed further northwards on commonage land.</li> <li>▪ R3: Phiritona long-term extension will necessitate the purchasing of additional land namely: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Weltevreden 257</li> <li>- Mayville 960</li> <li>- Subdivision 1</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>in reserve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R1: Koppies limited extension southwards</li> <li>▪ Infill planning on old show grounds</li> <li>▪ R2: Land between Koppies and Kwakwatsi (mixed use area suited for inclusionary housing and commercial activity; especially adjoining 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue)</li> <li>▪ R4:</li> </ul>	<p>in reserve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Recent infill planning ensured integration between Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and Vredefort</li> <li>▪ R2: Vredefort limited extension north and northwest ward towards Viljoenskroon Road</li> <li>▪ R1: Mokwallo short-term options further eastward</li> <li>▪ R3: Long-term extension northwest</li> </ul>	<p>reserve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Environmentally “no go” area (colonies of Sun Gazer Lizards) not suitable for urban extension</li> <li>▪ R1: Long-term extension of Edenville, north and northeastward</li> <li>▪ Ngwathe, all developable land exhausted</li> <li>▪ R2: Remaining integration option, (short-term) eastward towards Edenville</li> <li>▪ R3: Long-term, northward</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>for a mixed use area, associated with the airport ("Fly In" estate), comprising limited commercial/ service industrial opportunities and high cost mixed density residential opportunities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R6: Schonkenville: south-eastward possible (sub 9 of the Farm Pistorius Rust 288 to be acquired)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Modderfontein 122</li> <li>▪ R2: Limited infill adjacent the Oranjeville Road, including formalisation of <i>Mooi Dorpie</i> settlement</li> <li>▪ Relocation of portions located on an old landfill site is deemed imminent</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary housing site identified in the newly planned extension of Phiritona</li> <li>▪ Integration successfully achieved</li> <li>▪ all possible infill opportunities since developed</li> </ul>	<p>Kwakwatsi medium to long-term, preferably northwards on several smallholdings and Goedverbl yf 1/208 (all to be acquired) <u>or:</u> R3: Commence with negotiations for the purchasing of Plot 1019 (as immediate priority) and Plots 1017 and 1018</p>	<p>beyond Viljoenskroon Road</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Existing oxidation ponds inhibit remaining integration option between Mokwallo and Vredefort (towards the Parys Road) – relocation should be considered, also releasing land for industrial developments</li> <li>▪ Elsewhere, integration was successfully achieved</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary</li> </ul>	<p>on Stilledal 1/53 commonage land</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R4: Densification and infill planning on existing vacant erven located west of Edenville</li> <li>▪ Integration will in future successfully be achieved</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary housing not identified</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Recent infill planning ensured integration between Schonkenville, Tumahole and Parys and formalisation of Abazimeli settlement - no other options exist</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary Housing identified in Parys (Old Commando Offices : erven 322-329)</li> </ul>			ry housing not identified	
<b>Central Business District (CBD) and Development Nodes - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Due to absence of TPS, CBDs of Koppies, Vredefort and Edenville are not delineated - LUMS to indicate delineation</li> <li>▪ Development in these CBDs is dispersed with open erven available for future business development/</li> </ul>				

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
densification				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The current linear ribbon<sup>1</sup> like phenomenon of the CBD must be prohibited and care must be taken to prevent continuous development thereof adjacent to the main road through town.</li> <li>▪ B1, B2 &amp; B3: Delineation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ B1: Extension of the CBD is proposed further south, not further than Voortrekker Street</li> <li>▪ Corridor development permissible for adjoining properties in Lang Markt Street</li> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ1: Entrance from Sasolburg Road (Lang Markt Street)</li> <li>- Δ2: Further down Lang Markt Street</li> <li>- Δ3: Centre of Phiritona</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ CBD is ill-defined and encroaches in residential areas</li> <li>▪ Main business activities adjacent Station, Dirkie Uys and 3<sup>rd</sup> Street (access to Kwakwatsi)</li> <li>▪ B1: Long-term business development is proposed eastward towards 1<sup>st</sup></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Corridor Development adjoining Plein Street (former N1) will continue</li> <li>▪ Similar development adjoining Oranje Street</li> <li>▪ A1: Business corridor (Oranje Street east) on route to Mokwallo/Vredeshoop must be enhanced</li> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- intersection</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ CBD is ill-defined, business development exceedingly latent</li> <li>▪ A2 &amp; A3 : Main business activities adjacent Haefele Street (also the main access to Ngwathe) and limited activities in Wessels and Mentz Street</li> <li>▪ Long-term extension of the CBD not proposed, infill in the existing business</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
proposed, not further west than Van Coller Street, parallel to Loop Street (mid-block) not further east than Paulsen Street, parallel to Breë Street, not further west than Grens Street, include area between existing school, sport fields, Philip Street, and light industrial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ4: north of Sandersville</li> <li>- Δ5: New Phiritona residential precinct (further east)</li> </ul>	<p>Avenue to coincide with a mixed use commercial zone and inclusionary housing between Koppies and Kwakwatsi</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adjacent to the Kwakwatsi clinic</li> <li>- Adjacent to the Kwakwatsi Secondary School</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>n of Viljoenskr oon/ Parys Road (land privately owned), north of Vredefort</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- centre of Mokwallo as convenient centre</li> <li>- Smaller future node between Thambo and Mapetla precincts</li> </ul>	<p>zone should occur and node development in Ngwathe</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ1: adjacent to the Haefele Street at</li> <li>- Ngwathe entrance</li> <li>- Δ2: in recent extension, west of Ngwathe</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
area ▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> - Aerodrome node (R3) - Δ1: Schonkenville entrance - Δ2: South of Father Barlink Street in Tumahole				
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>				
▪ Provision of sheltered embarking points along main collector roads and at prominent community facilities ▪ T4: Provision	▪ Provision of sheltered embarking points along main collector roads and at prominent community facilities ▪ T1: LDT rank located in Heilbron ▪ A7: Upgrading of the road is proposed for	▪ A need exists for a SDT rank in Kwakwatsi; especially considering the new extensions further north-westward ▪ T1: LDT	▪ T1: A proper LDT rank is required in the Vredefort CBD ▪ T2: Upgrading of the existing SDT rank in Mokwallo (covered	▪ A proper LDT rank is required ▪ I3: Possible utilisation of undeveloped testing centre for a proper LTD rank



<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>of a second node in the Tambo extension</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T2: Provision of an accessible LDT rank in Parys (Dwars Street possibility)</li> <li>▪ T5: Formalisation of informal taxi rank in Tumahole.</li> </ul>	<p>suitable configuration to allow for embarking and disembarking of passengers.</p>	<p>rank located in Koppies (opposite the Paradys Hotel)</p>	<p>areas and ablution facilities) is deemed a high priority</p>	

## **Eradication of informal settlements**

Department of HSS has appointed HDA to do informal settlement audit (Rapid Assessment Report for assessment, auditing and profiling of informal settlements in Ngwathe Loyal municipality) and recommendation on how to formalise those that can be formalised.

<b>Status Quo</b>	<b>Intervention</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ We have 12 informal settlements with 2319 informal structures</li><li>▪ Parys - Abazimeli, Zuma &amp; 1912 and Winnie</li><li>▪ Heilbron – Matoporong, Airport, Internal, Moherepa, Sizabantu</li><li>▪ Vredefort - Phahameng</li><li>▪ Edenville - Matlharantlheng and Ext 4</li><li>▪ Koppies – Baipehing</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ Pegging of 5300 erven to commence.</li><li>▪ Parys - 890</li><li>▪ Heilbron - 1 368</li><li>▪ Vredefort - 327</li><li>▪ Edenville - 513</li><li>▪ Koppies - 1 764</li></ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Township establishments have been completed and community consultation</li></ul>	Koppies 300 erven has already be pegged and occupied informally

has been done at Edenville  
and pegging will start  
soon.





### **Rental stocks**

The municipality has the following:

- Two hostel units in Tumahole and Phiritona,
- Flats in Vredefort and Parys.

The municipality intends to turn the above hostels into family units with the assistance from HSS.

**Budget to eradicate housing backlog is determined by provincial government**

**N.B.**

**Further housing issues are contained in the SDF.**

## EDUCATION ANALYSIS

### Education Centres

TOWN	ECD CENTRES	PRMARY	COMBINED	SECONDARY	ABET CENTRES
Parys	1.Midzi Creche, After Care/Pre 2.Ithabeleng 3.Eden Day Care 4.Eendjies Kleuter 5.Naledi 6.Kadoepi 7.Amohelang Day Care 8.Leseding 9.Bamble Tots 10.Busy Bee 11.ABC	1. Aha Setjhaba 2. Botjhabatsat si 3. Lembede 4. Selogilwe 5. Ntshwephepa 6. Lista Sikhosana 7. Schonkenvill e 8. HF Verwoerd 9. Sindekile 10. Mabat ho		1. Barnard Molokoane Comprehensive. 2.Boitlamo Secondary 3.Parys High 4.Phehellang Secondary 5.Yakhisizwe Secondary	1. Tumahole Abet Centre. 2. Bahlodi Banqhobi Abet Centre. 3.Modise Tlale Abet Centre.
Heilbron	1. Mpolokeng 2. Paballong 3. Thabo e kgolo 4. Itumeleng 5. Reikemisedit se 6. Leratong 7. Naledi 8. Phahameng 9. Thabang 10. Kgatho loha	1.Kearabetswe 2.Phirihadi 3.Phitsana 4.Bhekilanga 5.Boitumelo	1. Sandersville 2.School of Destiny	1.Phiritona Secondary 2.Sediba Thuto 3.Heilbron High School	1.Heilbron abet Centre 2.Nthakga Abet Centre

	11. Re a hola 12. Eben Ezer 13. Katleh o 14. Bokam oso				
Koppies	1.Phaphama Edu-care 2.Thabang Edu-care 3.Titima Edu-care 4.Rehauhetswe Edu-care 5.Rethabile Edu-care 6.Refengkhoto Edu-care 7.Kwakwatsi Edu-care 8.Thusanang Edu-care	1. Ipatleleng 2. Diba Seholo	1.Sarel celliers	1. Re Batla Thuto 2. Kwakwatsi	1.Mothebe Abet Centre
Vredefort	1.Motheo Thuto 2.Baby Care	1. Mokwallo Primary 2. Tataiso 3. Chris Van Niekerk primary 4. Vredefort Primary		1. Boiphilelo 2. SS Paki	1.Pheko Abet Centre
Edenvill	1.Letlotlo	1.SHS Mofube	1. Edenville	1.Ngwathe	1.Ngwathe

e	2.Ntataise 3.Lesedi 4.Sedibeng 5.Katleho 6.Tlholo 7.Itumeleng	Primary	High	Secondary	Adult Centre
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>8</b>

### Access to Services

Town	Water		Sanitation		Electricity		Refuse		Roads	
	with	without	with	without	with	without	with	without	Tar/Paved	Gravel
Parys	All			Yakhisizwe	All		All		10	Boitlamo, Barnard Molokoane, Yakhisizwe, Ntshwephepa, Aha Setjhaba
Heilbron	All			Sandersville Combined	All		All		10	Bhekilang
Koppies	All				All		All		3	Ipatleleng & Re batla thuto Secondary
Vredefort	All			SS Paki	All		All			SS Paki & SS Paki
Edenville	All				All		All		2	Edenvile High

**Top 10 Matric Performers**

<b>TOWN</b>	<b>SCHOOL</b>	<b>%</b>
Heilbron	1. Heilbron High	100
Koppies	2. Sarel Cilliers	96
Parys	3. Parys Hoer Skool	95
Heilbron	4. Sediba Thuto	94
Vredefort	5. Boiphihlelo	90.5
Edenville	6. Ngwathe Secondary	89
Parys	7. Phehellang Sec	87
Parys	8. Barnard Molokoane	86
Koppies	9. Re Batla Thuto	85
Heilbron	10. Phiritona Secondary	84

**Bottom 5 Poor Performers**

<b>TOWN</b>	<b>SCHOOL</b>	<b>%</b>
Parys	1. Yakhisizwe	82
Koppies	2. Kwakwatsi	81
Vredefort	3. SS Paki	75
Parys	4. Boitlamo	61
	5.	



## ACCESS TO HEALTH

### Health Centers

<b>Town</b>	<b>Clinic</b>	<b>Personnel</b>	<b>Community Health Centre</b>	<b>Personnel</b>	<b>Hospital</b>	<b>Personnel</b>	<b>Total</b>
<b>Parys</b>	1.Tumahole Clinic	11			1. Parys	108	
	2.Thusanong Clinic	07					
	3.Thabang Clinic	07					
	4.Schonkenville Clinic	05					
	6. Parys Town Clinic	08					
<b>Heilbron</b>	1.Heilbron Town Clinic	08			1.Tokollo	128	
	2.Relebohile Clinic	20					
	3. Sizabantu Clinic	03					
	4. Sanderville	04					
	5. Heilbron Mobile	02					
<b>Koppies</b>	1.Koppies Mobile clinic	02	1.Kganya CHC	14			
<b>Vredefort</b>	1.Relebohile	08	1.Kananelo CHC	10			
<b>Edenville</b>	1.Kgotso clinic	08					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>93</b>					
			<b>2</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>236</b>	<b>380</b>

## Access to Services

Town	Water		Sanitation		Electricity		Refuse		Roads	
	with	without	with	without	with	without	with	without	Tar/Paved	Gravel
Parys	All		All		All		All		All	
Heilbron	All		All		All		All		All	
Koppies	All		All		All		All		All	
Vredefort	All		All		All		All		All	
Edenville	All		All		All		All		All	

## **SAFETY AND SECURITY ANALYSIS**

### Facilities

<b>TOWN</b>	<b>POLICE STATION</b>	<b>CPF</b>	<b>PERSONNEL</b>	<b>CRIME TENDENCIES</b>	<b>MAGISTRATE COURT</b>
PARYS	1	8	77	Drugs, Assault, House Breaking	1
TUMAHOLE	1	10	82	Assault Burglaries Robberies Drugs Theft General	
HEILBRON	1	8	79	Assault Burglaries Theft General Stock Theft	1
VREDEFORT	1	13	52	Assault Burglaries Robberies Drugs Theft	1
KOPPIES	1	11	61	Burglaries Theft Rape	1
EDENVILLE	1	7	31	Assault Burglaries Drugs	1

### Access to Services

Town	Water		Sanitation		Electricity		Refuse		Roads	
	with	without	with	without	with	without	with	without	Tar/Paved	Gravel
Parys	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	
Heilbron	✓		✓		✓		✓			
Koppies	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	
Vredefort	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	
Edenville	✓		✓		✓		✓			✓
Tumahole	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	
<b>TOTAL</b>										

### **CORRECTIONAL SERVICE ANALYSIS**

TOWN	CORRECTIONAL SERVICE FACILITIES	TYPE/CATEGORY	CAPACITY
PARYS	1	Correctional Centre	87( over-crowded by 65 )
HEILBRON	1	Housing (Males Only)	
VREDEFORT	-		
KOPPIES	-		
EDENVILLE	-		

## Access to Services

Town	Water		Sanitation		Electricity		Refuse		Roads	
	with	without	with	without	with	without	with	without	Tar/Paved	Gravel
Parys	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	
Heilbron	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	

<b>Area</b>	<b>Social Worker</b>	<b>Social Development</b>	<b>Post Office</b>	<b>Labour</b>	<b>Home Affairs</b>	<b>Public Works</b>	<b>Agriculture</b>
Parys			1	1			1
Tumahole					1		
Schonkenville							
Edenville			1				
Ngwathe							
Vredefort			1				
Mokwallo							
Vredeshoop							
Heilbron			1		1	1	1
Phiritona		Services rendered on Monday only	1	Services rendered Fortnightly			
Sandersville							
Koppies			1				
Kwakwatsi							

## ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS

### Introduction

Climate Change, Pollution and other Environmental challenges are becoming common problems which are said to be undermining human rights, many countries including SA signed many international treaties and introduced local laws and regulations on environment protection.

South Africa subsequently introduced environmental rights within the Constitution Act 108 of 1996 (Chapter 2 Bill of Rights, Section 24) states:

“Everyone has the right –

- (a) to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and
- (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that –
  - (i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation;
  - (ii) promote conservation; and
  - (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.”

These rights were then effected through the following pieces of legislation/ Policies:

1. National Development Plan (NDP, Chapter 5)
2. The National Environmental Management Act(No 107 of 1998) NEMA,
3. National Climate Change Response Strategy,
4. Environmental Conservation Act ( No 73 of 1989),
5. National Strategy on Sustainable Development (NSSD),
6. Free State Green Economy Strategy,
7. Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP),
8. Green Economy Accord (COP17),
9. Green Economy Report (GER),
10. Free State Growth and Development Strategy (FSGDS),
11. Environmental Sustainability Plan (ESP) etc

SA government further identified environmental management as one of fourteen 2014-19 government outcomes (10):

### Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources”

Statutory obligations contained in the National Environmental Management Act expects the municipality to be responsive to issues of nature that will help improve the quality of lives.

The following applies:

#### ☐ **Objective**

- Ensure that pollution (air, water, and soil) are minimized to acceptable national standards in order to preserve the environment and natural resources.

#### ☐ **Strategies**

- *To Identify and implement measures to reduce existing air, water, soil and noise pollution incidents*

- *To Engage into discussions with the industries to reduce pollution incidents*
- *To Monitor the levels of pollution as agreed with the industries.*

## **Sustainable Development**

Development can be traced back to many centuries ago and it differed from generation to generation depending on each country's state of advancement. However the West has been in the forefront of the development agenda as evidenced by the success of democracy over communism and socialism. Development thus has to happen within the context of sustainability as it involves the promotion of sustainable livelihoods for the people. Where there is no sustainable development we are likely to experience social consequences like poverty, high unemployment and diseases. Therefore governments have to introduce development policies that are based on giving people to make democratic choices and thus promote good governance based on principles that will promote appropriate use and utilisation of economic, environmental and social resources. This model is best known as sustainable development. Many authors and opinion leaders agree that sustainable developments development that is economically, environmentally and socially supportive whilst meeting the needs of current generations without compromising the needs of future generations.

“Sustainable development encompasses the enhancement of human well-being and quality of life, in particular for those most affected by poverty and inequality.” Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism : A National Framework for Sustainable Development in South Africa : Page 2. This therefore is premised on the reality that we must ensure the effective and efficient use of our resources for current and future generations in a sustainable manner that ensures a better life for all.

The dynamic nature of sustainable development has to be considered within the context of increasing population numbers and the available resources to cater for those dynamic needs. It is thus increasingly important for government to work supportively with business / private sector, non government organisations (NGOs), religious organisations, labour and other political parties in finding programmes and projects that will result in sustainability.

There should always be the interdependence of social, economic and environmental factors in promoting sustainable development. In South Africa, sustainable development is based on three principles namely :

- ❖ human dignity and social equity;
- ❖ justice and fairness;
- ❖ democratic governance


which must be supported by integration and innovation; consultation and participation; implementation in a planned manner.



## **State of the Environment Report ( SOER) will focus on the following:**


- Natural Water Resources and Water Quality
- Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site
- Land fill Sites
- Conservation
- Mineral resources
- Air quality



- Land
- Endangered species
- Effluents control systems
- Climate

<b>Natural Resources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Sand deposits in Parys</li> <li>➤ An old quarry adjacent to Kwakwatsi (to the southeast) is accommodated in an open space and need to be rehabilitated.</li> <li>➤ Gravel is presently exploited at a large registered quarry (managed by the Provincial Roads Department) to the north of the railway line and “Leeuw Spruit”.</li> <li>➤ Bentonite and Ceramic clay deposits are present in the area and are currently exploited.</li> <li>➤ Although coal deposits are present in the area, exploitation thereof is not envisaged for several years.</li> <li>➤ Diamond deposits, in the form of volcanic pipes are present in area and being mined by Voorspoed Mine.</li> <li>➤ Gravel is exploited to the south west of Ngwathe ( Edenville)</li> </ul>	
<b>Natural Water Resources</b> (Koppies Dam Koppies, Vaal Dam: Parys, Eeufees Dam: Heilbron)		Koppies Dam
<b>Air Quality</b>	NLM relies mainly on the FDDM policy in this regard for there are few air polluting elements as compared to highly industrialized areas.	
<b>Land</b>	<u>Land Use Management</u>	

		The Draft Ngwathe Town Planning Scheme is under way. There are challenges with regard to land scarcity particularly in Koppies and Heilbron.	
<b>Endangered species</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Another unique plant community appears in the form of riparian bush or “Gallery Bush”, found on riverbanks of the rivers</li> <li>• A red data species, Sun Gazer Lizards in Edenville.</li> </ul>	
 		The vegetation stabilises the islands and serves as protection against erosion and also yields shelter to birds and animals.	The vegetation stabilises the islands and serves as protection against erosion and also yields shelter to birds and animals.
<b>Sun gazing lizards:</b> Found on the North Eastern side of Edenville		<p>The species is known as the <b>sungazer</b> because of its distinctive thermoregulatory behaviour of elevating the anterior parts of the body by extending its forearms, usually near the entrance of its burrow as if looking at the sun.</p> <p>The most common local name is ‘<b>Ouvolk</b>’, given by Afrikaans landowners who liken the thermoregulatory basking position of the species to retired farmworkers. The sungazer is also known as ‘<b>Pathakalle</b>’ by Sotho speaking people and ‘<b>Mbedla</b>’ by Zulu speaking people.[6]</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The species are vulnerable to <a href="#">endangerment</a> in the near future,</li> <li>- It is illegal to possess a sungazer (dead or alive) without a permit,</li> <li>-</li> </ul>

			
---	--	--	--

<b>Effluents control systems</b>	<p><b><u>Effluent (Raw Sewerage) journey to treatment plant and the process train in general</u></b></p> <p>Treatment processes used at Ngwathe L.M are as follows: Trickling Filter Plant for Parys and this is the process that makes use of bio filters as the heart of the treatment process. Koppies and Heilbron makes use of the process called Activated Sludge Plant and this is distinguished from other treatment processes by the fact that it makes use surface aerators that are used to introduce oxygen in during the anaerobic process and Vredefort uses what we call Sequencing Batch Reactor coupled with the polishing ponds.</p> <p>The trickling filter plant removes about 60-80 % of the total nitrogen and phosphorus whereas the activated sludge plant removes about 40-60 %. The trickling filter plant is as follow:</p> <p>Raw sewerage →Screens→Primary Settling Tanks (PST)→Reaction Basin→Bio filters→Secondary Settling Tanks(SST) or Humus Tanks→Collection Sump→To the River.</p> <p>As the raw sewerage or effluent enters the plant it goes through the screens that removes all the fats, condoms, rags,etc and gravitates into a small reaction basin that splits the effluent into all the primary settling tanks. The PST's removes all the unwanted material that managed to go through the screens and they float on top of the tank and the supernatant (remaining water) goes into the other reaction basin where it is blown by means of blower pumps on top of the bio filters and gets filtered through the stone media and this is the process where the bacteria grows.</p>	
----------------------------------	---	--

<b>Climate Change</b>	<p>Africa is one of the most vulnerable regions in the world to climate change, Ngwathe as part of Africa is also under threat</p> <p><u>Climate change scenarios indicates the following:</u></p>
-----------------------	--

- FUTURE WARMING across the continent ranging from 0.2°C (0.36°F) per decade (low scenario) to more than 0.5°C (0.9°F) per decade (high scenario).
- BIODIVERSITY LOSS. Biodiversity is an important resource for African people. Uses are consumptive (food, fiber, fuel, shelter, medicine, wildlife trade) and non consumptive (ecosystem services and the economically important tourism industry). Given the heavy dependence on natural resources in Africa, many communities are vulnerable to the biodiversity loss that could result from climate change.
- AGRICULTURE. Most of Africa relies on rain-fed agriculture. As a result, it is highly vulnerable to changes in climate variability, seasonal shifts, and precipitation patterns. Any amount of warming will result in increased water stress.
- IMPACTS ON GLACIERS AND WATER SUPPLY. The gradual yet dramatic disappearance of glaciers on Mount Kilimanjaro is a result of global warming. An estimated 82 percent of the icecap that crowned the mountain when it was first thoroughly surveyed in 1912 is now gone.
- HUMAN MIGRATION. societies that migrate in response to annual and seasonal rainfall variations.
- WATER RESOURCES According to the country study, in which were modelled using the ACRU hydrological modelling system, changes in rainfall and temperature patterns will lead to significant shifts in hydrological functioning within South Africa.
- TERRESTRIAL VEGETATION. Changes in the terrestrial plant diversity were indicated using bioclimatic modelling techniques, providing spatially-explicit predictions of the future distributions of South African biomes and selected key plant species. The study suggested significant shifts in habitat ranges and species losses.
- TOURISM ACTIVITIES in South Africa may be impacted by climate change in three main ways:
  - ✓ Change in supply due to loss of habitat (e.g. estuaries);
  - ✓ Change in supply & demand due to loss of biodiversity); and
  - ✓ Change in demand due to increase in temperature, humidity and Malaria



To Slow Climate Change, The Following Are Being Advocated:

- ✓ reduce emissions of heat-trapping gases;
- ✓ increase energy efficiency; - Installing (a) solar geysers, (b) Solar street lights, (c) solar high mast lights, 9 one installed in Parys.
- ✓ Provision of energy saving bulbs.
- ✓ use of renewable energy sources like wind, solar and biomass;
- ✓ increase the resilience and resistance of natural systems to the stress of climate change; stresses;
- ✓ Encourage Greening.
- ✓ Discourage and work against veld fires.

**Durban Climate Change Adaptation Charter for Local Governments  
as adopted on the 4<sup>th</sup> December 2011 on the occasion of the  
Durban Local Convention: adapting to a changing climate  
- towards COP17/CMP7 and beyond -**

***Preamble***

*As the local governments of the world gather in Durban, South Africa for COP17-CMP7 at a critical moment in the international climate change negotiations, we recognize the significance of the event by:*

*Recalling* the 1955 Freedom Charter which was the product of South Africans developing their own vision of an alternative society and reaffirming that government is only valid if it follows the will of the people

*Recalling* that Agenda 21 identifies local government as the level of government closest to the people with a key role in making sustainable development happen

*Noting* the 2010 Cochabamba Final Declaration of the World People's Conference on Climate Change and the Rights of Mother Earth that acknowledges that the future of humanity is in danger as a result of pursuing a model of limitless growth and that the significant adaptation debt borne by the Global South must be addressed through financial compensation, improved social and environmental justice and an acknowledgement of the importance of ecological integrity

*Noting* that the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) has highlighted the need for more extensive and rapid adaptation than is currently occurring to reduce vulnerability to climate change

*Welcoming* the outcome of Cancun Agreements where local and subnational governments are recognized as "governmental stakeholders" in the global climate regime, as a concrete achievement of two decades of global climate advocacy of local governments

*Recognising* that the challenges of climate change, poverty, and ecosystem degradation are rapidly widening the gap between the resource demands of growing population and associated economies, on the one hand, and declining natural resource base and carrying capacity on the other, and that given rapid urbanisation, the terrain to address these issues is increasingly urban

*Recognising* that current sustainable development gains, particularly the food-water-energy nexus, are being undermined by the impacts of climate change



*Recognising* the disproportionate impact that climate change has on women and the urban and rural poor

*Recognising* the intergenerational inequity of indecisive mitigation and adaptation action

*Acknowledging* that the world's urban population is growing rapidly; that cities are centres of economic, political and cultural innovation; significant drivers of national economies; and manage vast public resources, infrastructure, and investments

*Acknowledging* that globally, local governments play a strategic role in addressing climate change, because of their direct activities in delivering local government functions; their responsibility for laws and regulations that can influence adaptation and mitigation; and their ability to demonstrate leadership and innovative solutions in this area;

*Recognising* that we need to place adaptation at the core of our future local climate change response plans and urban development strategies and that we need to grasp the economic and social opportunities afforded by sustainable development

*Underlining* the value of the efforts that have been built since the Earth Summit of global climate advocacy of local governments, the increased momentum through Local Government Climate Roadmap since 2007 and most recent commitments of local government to advance the adaptation agenda at the local level including ***Global Cities Covenant on Climate – the Mexico City Pact, African Mayors' Climate Change Declaration 2011*** and *2011 Bonn Declaration of Mayors*.

*Supporting* the Earth Charter's call for a global partnership to address the multiple ecological, social and economic challenges that face the world.

**N.B. NLM was also represented in this conference and it is therefore a signatory to this charter**

<b>National Heritage Sites:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>✓ The Parys Museum ( Old Magistrate Office)</li><li>✓ The Dutch Reformed Church in Parys.</li><li>✓ Vredefort Road Concentration Camp Cemetery, Prospect, in Koppies;</li><li>✓ Old farmhouse, Leeuwpoot; Heilbron</li><li>✓ Weilbasch House, Leeuwpoot; Heilbron</li></ul>
---------------------------------	---

	✓ Railway station Heilbron;
<b>Urban Greening</b>	<p>Greening is a comprehensive term used to describe all urban vegetation management (green spaces or urban vegetated areas) including urban agriculture/ Permaculture and Urban Forestry. Urban Forestry is defined as the planning and management trees, forests and related vegetation to create, or add value to, the local community in an urban area.</p> <p>Urban Greening will contribute significantly to making our towns, and settlements more livable and is an essential component for healthy and sustainable areas. In townships and informal settlements, Urban Greening can directly meet basic needs including food, fuel, fodder and timber.</p>

## Green Economy

### Introduction

In 2012, South Africa remains faced with the triple developmental challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality. In addition, the country's current economic growth model is heavily resource and energy intensive, aggravating pressures on the environment and the threat of climate change. The transition to a green economy, stemming from the concept of sustainable development, has been internationally recognised as a ground-breaking way forward, combining economic development, social welfare and environmental protection.

### Free State Green Economy Strategy

DESTEA has developed Green Economy Strategy to guide and assist municipalities in the realization of Green Economy objectives.

### Green v/s Brown Economy

Besides generating new employment, green industries have the potential to be effective alternatives to traditional sectors as they generally create more jobs per unit of investment, unit of capacity or unit of production than the 'brown' industries for which they are a substitute (UNEP, ILO, IOE and ITUC, 2008). This is particularly true for land-based industries (e.g. land restoration or conservation)<sup>2</sup>. In addition to supporting a structural change towards a more equitable and labour-intensive economy, green industries reduce the exposure of South Africa's economy to green protectionist measures (like the application of carbon pricing) that would significantly impact the country. They reduce the interdependence of mining and energy (e.g. coal for electricity and liquid fuels or electricity for smelters) and limit the country's trade exposure to global measures to protect the environment (particularly with regards to climate change).

### Job Creation

Ensuring the growth of the green economy and that South Africans benefit from higher quality jobs requires, as with all other industries, an increase in people with managerial and technical (engineering and artisan) skills. Skill shortage has been identified

as a critical issue in green industries and the lack of coordination in training and development, as well as the absence of 'green skills' programmes is a challenge that needs to be addressed urgently

### **Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site**

#### **Description**

About 2023 million years ago, an asteroid hit the earth (such is called a meteorite). The meteorite impact happened at a time when there were no people, animals or even plants, it is suspected that the meteorite was about 10 km in size and moving at a speed of more than 10 km per second (36 000 km/h). It is this speed that led to a giant hole (a crater). The Vredefort Dome is a prominent topographical feature of international significance. It is called a DOME because rock layers were bent into the shape of an upside-bowl across 90 km..

#### **Location**

The site is largely situated in the Mopani Municipality with portions thereof situated in the Ngwathe Municipality in Parys and Vredefort areas, a significant portion is also found in Tlokwe Municipality in the North West Province

#### **Declaration**

Only a small part of the Vredefort Dome along the Vaal River, between the Parys- Potchefstroom roads has been declared a World Heritage Site on the 14 July 2005

#### **Vredefort Granophyre**

It is the name given to the black crystallized impact melt-rock that flowed into cracks in the rocks underneath the crater, it contains broken pieces from many different rock types.

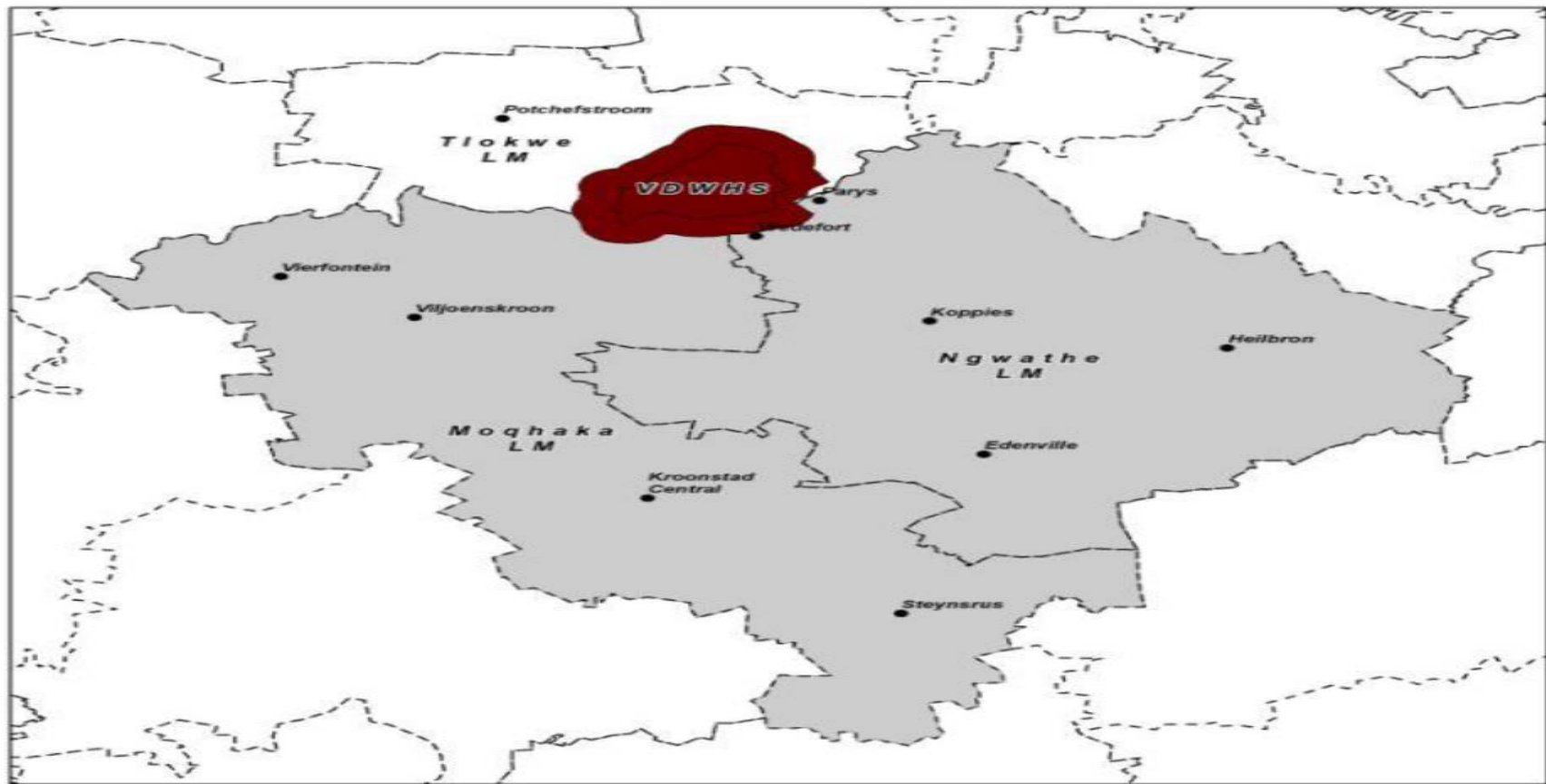
#### **Shatter cones ( cone like rocks)**

Were formed when the rock was cracked by the force of shock waves.

#### **VDWHS Environmental Management Framework.**

Centre for Environmental Management CEM from the North West University is working on the EMF for the Dome. Joint meetings of all the stakeholders have been sitting. Ngwathe and Mopani are also going to be roped in as part of this team.

## Location of VDWHS



## **Environmental Health**

It is a District Municipality function co-ordinated from the Sasolburg Head Office. Although Environmental Health is managed and co-ordinated from Sasolburg, Environmental Health officers are spread out geographically to render services in all the towns in the District. Environmental Health deals mainly with ensuring a safe and healthy environment in the whole district (both urban and rural areas). The Environmental Health department focuses on the provision of municipal health services as defined in the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003). Control over the sustainable delivery and maintenance of infrastructure services for all rural developments is also the responsibility of the department. In this regard, high density and other developments adjacent the Vaal River that is becoming more popular, need to adhere to specific health standards set by the Department.

### **Some of the Environmental Projects within NLM space**

- ☐ Registration of the land fill site in Heilbron,
- ☐ Establishment of the Buy Bag Centre in Heilbron,
- ☐ Youth Jobs in Waste ( DEA supported project, currently on hold)
- ☐ Provision of Tuk Tuk for waste awareness purposes





## **DISASTER MANAGEMENT**

NLM has developed its own Disaster Management Plan:

- Disaster Management Plan is available and was adopted by Council in 2012. It will be reviewed in 2017.
- The Unit has two disaster officials within its ranks.

### **1. Institutional Arrangements**

### **2. Key Performance Area 1: integrated institutional capacity for disaster risk management in the Ngwathe Local Municipality**

#### **3.1 Institutional arrangements for integrated policy making, direction and the execution of policy and legislation**

##### **3.1.1 Objectives**

- To establish procedures for the development, approval and implementation of integrated disaster risk management policy, including the making of by-laws, issuing directions and authorisations for the issuing of directives;
- To establish mechanisms which will provide clear direction and allocate responsibilities for the implementation of the Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 (hereinafter referred to as “the Act”);
- To develop a strategic plan for phasing in and maintaining the requirements of the Act and the National Disaster Management Framework; and
- To establish and maintain effective institutional arrangements to ensure adequate operational capacity for the implementation of the requirements of the Act and to enable stakeholder participation which will promote an integrated and co-ordinated approach to disaster risk management in Council’s area.

### **3.1.2 Arrangements for integrated policy**

#### **3.1.2.1 The Council**

Council is responsible to ensure the implementation of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 for the area of the Ngwathe Local Municipality as a whole and makes all policy decisions in relation to disaster risk management.

Having consulted with the Fezile Dabi District Disaster Management Centre in the area (Sections 55(1)(b) and 55(2) of the Disaster Management Act, 2002), Ngwathe Local Municipality in collaboration with Fezile Dabi District Municipality has primary responsibility for the co-ordination and management of local disasters threatening to occur or occurring within the area of the district municipality (section 54(1)).

#### **1. Action to be taken:**

Ngwathe LM and the Fezile Dabi DDMC must consult and determine primary responsibility as per sections 54 and 55 of the Disaster Management Act for the Ngwathe LM.

#### **3.1.2.2 The policy making process**

Action to be taken on matters relating to disasters and disaster risk management policy must be submitted to the Ngwathe LM DRMC for consideration. The DRMC will refer the Action to be taken to the Ngwathe LM Inter-departmental Disaster Risk Management Committee (IDRMC) for consideration before submitting them to the relevant portfolio committee prior to submitting them to the Council. Policy adopted by Council will then be referred back to the DRMC for implementation.

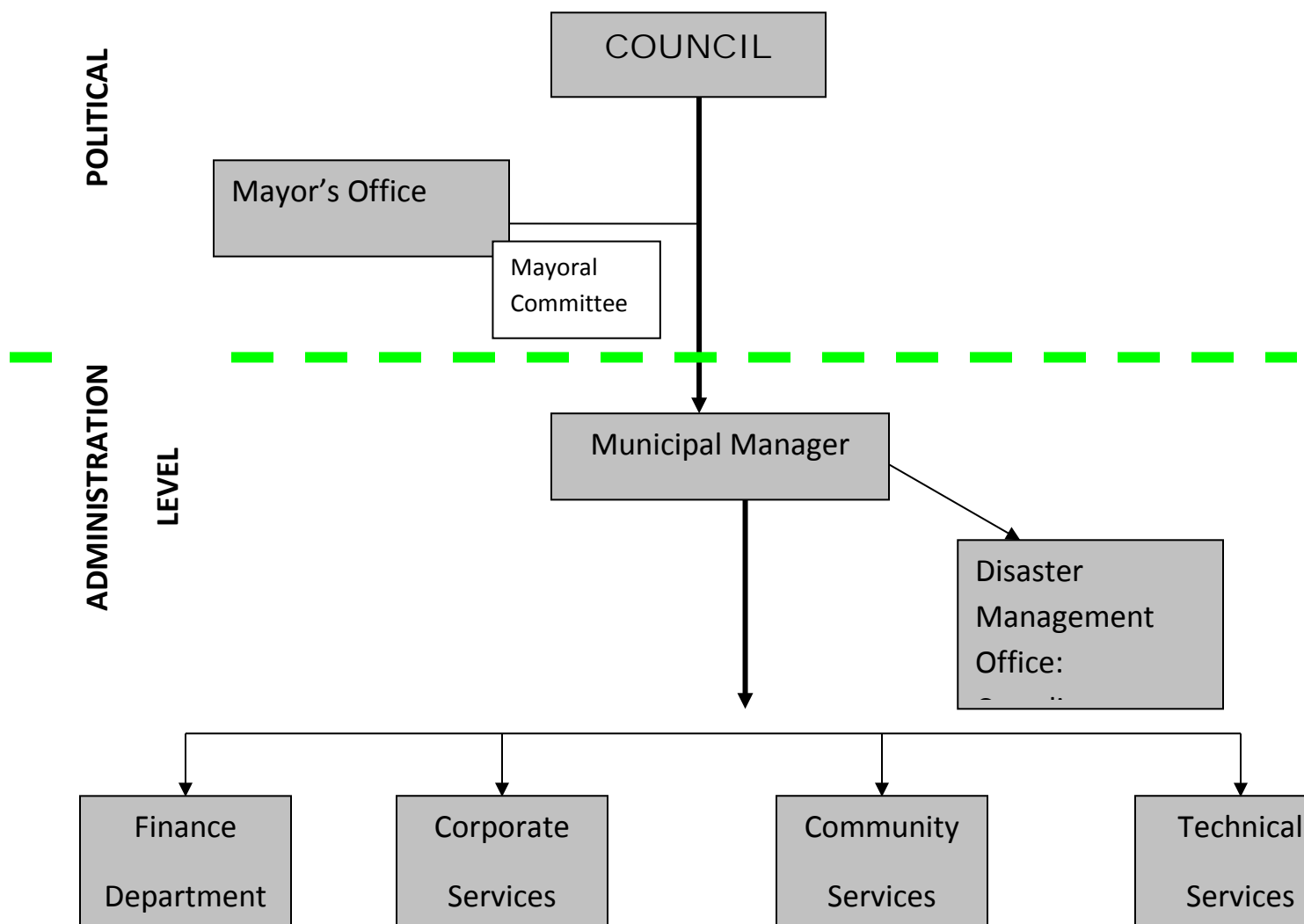


The Ngwathe LM DRMC must ensure that Action to be taken on policy include details of any financial, constitutional, human resource or interdepartmental implications before they are submitted to the relevant portfolio committee and the Council.

#### 4.1 Arrangements for integrated policy

##### 4.1.1 Arrangements for Integrated Disaster Risk Management Policy

The following schematic representation denotes the internal institutional arrangements for disaster management.



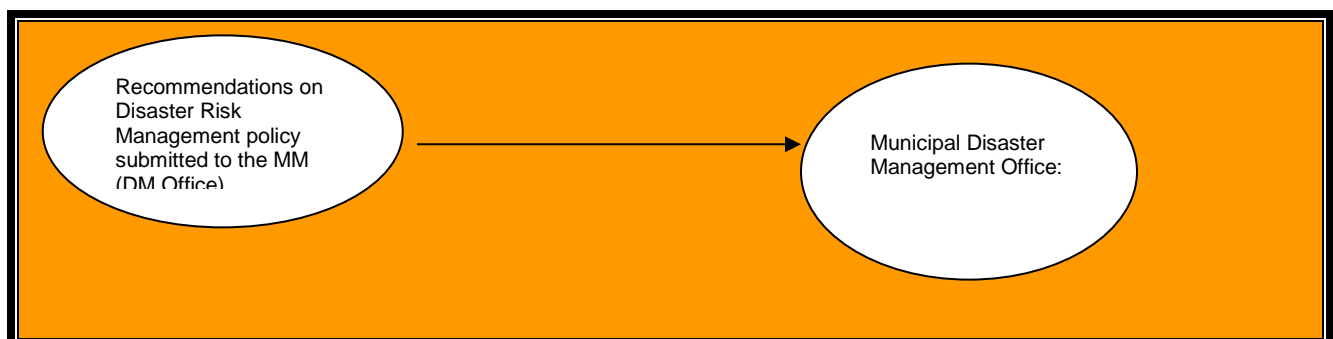
#### **4.1.2 The Council**

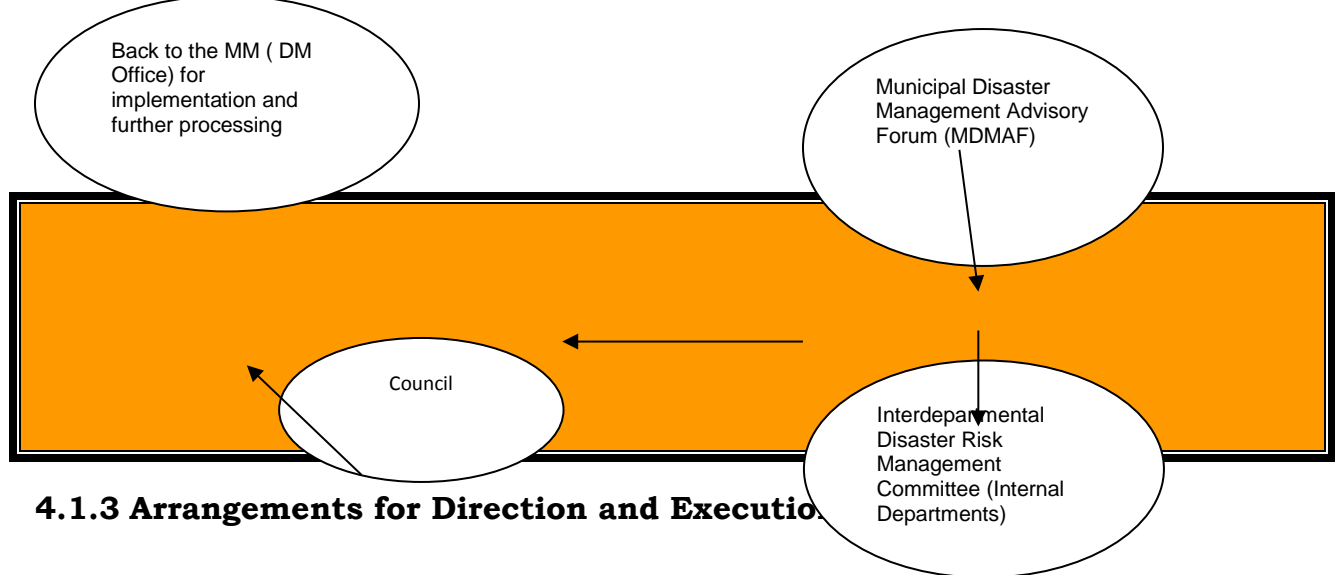
The Council is responsible for the implementation of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 in the Ngwathe Local Municipality as a whole and makes policy decisions in relation to disaster risk management.

The Council of Fezile Dabi DM, after consultation with Ngwathe LM, is primarily responsible for the coordination and management of local disasters that occur in the area. In collaboration with the PDMC may by notice in the Provincial Gazette declare the local state of disaster (Sections 55(1) (b) and 55(2) of the Disaster Management Act, 2002).

##### **4.1.2.2 The Policy Making Process**

The purpose is to stimulate a consultative process, in order to establish and sustain a holistic Disaster Management structure and practices that will support and enhance development in the municipality through disaster risk management.





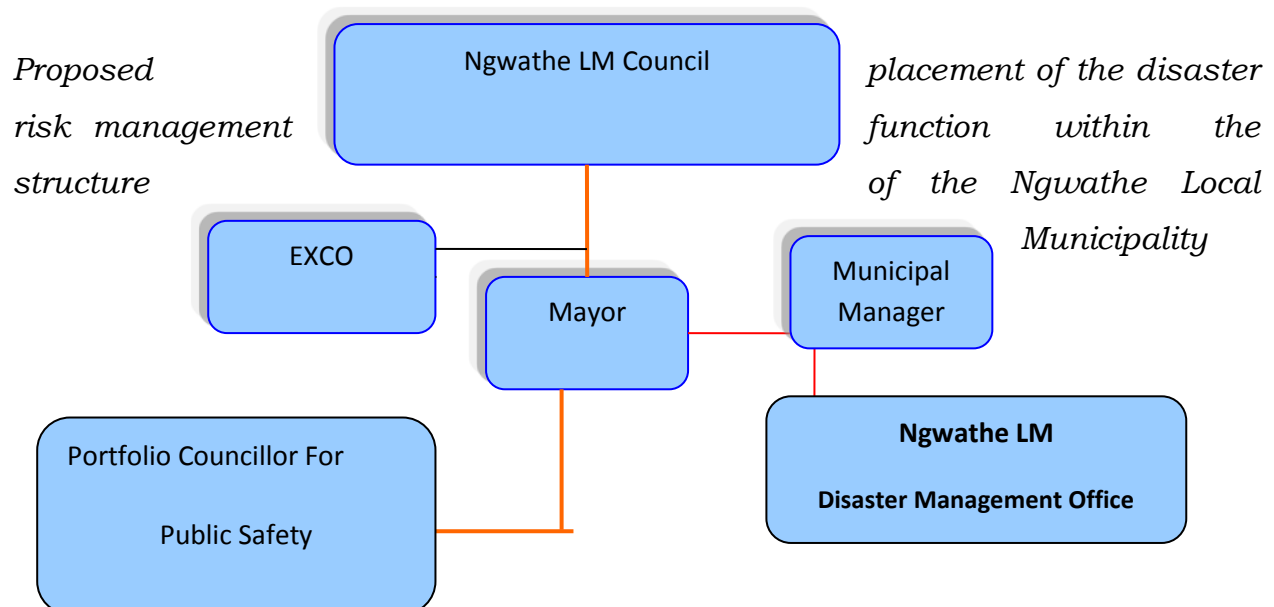
#### 4.1.3 Arrangements for Direction and Execution

##### 4.1.3.1 Establishment of Municipal Disaster Management Office

For purposes of continuous monitoring of progress with regard to the execution of the provisions of the Act; the Municipal Disaster Office must also submit reports in an approved template on its performance for consideration to every meeting of the DDMC.

##### 4.1.3.2 Location of DRM function

The proposed location of the Disaster Management Office within municipal administration and reporting lines for direction and administrative purposes are illustrated in the chart below:



#### **4.1.4 Key Responsibilities of the Ngwathe LM DRMC with regard to KPA 1**

- Establish and maintain adequate institutional capacity to enable implementation of the requirements of the Act which will promote an integrated and coordinated approach to disaster risk management in the municipal area subject to the agreement on primary responsibility with the Fezile Dabi District DRMC (see section 54 of the Disaster risk management Act)

#### **4.1.5 The Internal departments (municipal organs of state) and other municipal entities within the administration of the Ngwathe Local Municipality with regard to DRM**

- Each department under the administration of the municipality, including other municipal entities within Council's administration must, in terms of section 2 of the Act, assess any national legislation applicable to its function and must advise the Fezile Dabi DRMC on the provisions of such legislation.
- Disaster Risk Management activities must be incorporated into the routine activities of each municipal department and of any other municipal entities and their substructures.

##### **4.1.5.1 Assignment of Responsibilities**

The Coordinator: Disaster Management Office together with the heads of each department in Council's organizational structure, as well as key personnel with specific technical expertise who have disaster risk management responsibilities, must serve as the assigned disaster risk management focal points for the department and shall constitute the Ngwathe Municipality Inter-departmental Disaster Risk Management Committee (IDRMC).

The IDRMC will be responsible for all aspects of planning and operations relevant to the functional area in that department or entity.

The responsibilities of heads of department in this regard include:

- facilitating and coordinating the relevant department or entity's disaster risk management planning and operational activities for risk reduction and for response and recovery;
- ensuring that the planning and operations are consistent with the requirements of the Act, National and Provincial Disaster Management Frameworks;
- ensuring the integration and alignment of the entity's planning and operations with that of the provincial and national organs of state and other institutional role players;
- ensuring the integration of the risk reduction and response and recovery planning and operations with Councils Integrated Development Planning process, the Spatial Development Framework and Environmental Management Framework;
- ensuring the regular review of plans and that planning remains dynamic and relevant in accordance with developmental changes taking place within, or which may impact on the municipality; and
- submit copies of municipal entities' disaster risk management plans and any amendments thereof to the District Disaster Management Centre to forward to the FSPDMC and NDMC.

Sections 47 and 52 of the Act stipulate that each municipal entity must establish its role and responsibilities and must assess its capacity to fulfil the requirements. Effective coordination should be implemented where there is lack of capacity to ensure optimal use of resources between departments, organs of state in other spheres of government and by entering into partnerships with the private sector, non-governmental organizations and community-based organizations.

Mutual assistance agreements and memoranda of understanding must be entered into, detailing the extent and ramifications of such support.

#### **4.1.5.1.1      Municipal Manager**

The Municipal Manager is responsible for the effective implementation of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 within the departments and other municipal entities within the Ngwathe Local Municipality and for the integration of disaster risk management plans with the IDP Process. The Municipal Manager shall ensure that Disaster Management is a standing agenda item in all Management meetings.

#### **4.1.6 The Ngwathe Local Municipal Interdepartmental Disaster Risk Management Committee (IDRMC)**

##### ***4.1.6.1 Purpose of the IDRMC***

The Municipal Manager is responsible to establish and sustain an Interdepartmental Disaster Risk Management Committee (IDRMC) to:

- promote interdepartmental relations;
- achieve a coordinated, integrated and common approach to disaster risk management by the departments and other internal units in the administration of the municipality (Section 44(1)(b)(i) of the Act);
- ensure development and implementation of appropriate disaster risk reduction methodologies; and
- ensure emergency preparedness and rapid and effective disaster response and recovery capabilities.
- The committee is chaired by the MM of Ngwathe IDRMC and shall meet at least once a quarter, but is not precluded from meeting more frequently should circumstances so dictate.

#### **4.1.6.2 Responsibilities of the IDRMC**

Sections 47 and 48 of the Disaster Management Act prescribe responsibilities to the Ngwathe IDRMC which include:

##### **Disaster Risk Reduction Planning and Operations:**

- monitoring, assessing, and coordinating council's disaster risk management planning and implementation, with particular emphasis on risk reduction policies, practices and strategies;
- collaborating, coordinating and monitoring progress on joint projects and programmes and their integration as part of the IDP process;
- annually reviewing the Council's disaster risk management framework;
- annually reviewing disaster risk management plans to ensure that the plans are integrated, current, and consistent with the disaster risk management framework;
- promoting joint standard operational procedures within and among the departments and other entities within council;
- monitoring progress on the implementation of priority projects aimed at risk reduction; and
- participating in simulation exercises annually to remain current on roles and responsibilities in the activation and operation of the Disaster Operations Centre to ensure rapid and efficient response and recovery in the event of a disaster occurring or threatening to occur in council's area.

##### **Contingency Planning, Disaster Response and Recovery:**

- when a disastrous event occurs or is threatening to occur in the area of a municipality, on receipt of an activation alert from the Head of

the DRMC (or designate), reporting immediately to the Disaster risk management Centre -Disaster Operations Centre (DOC);

- conducting initial and specialist post disaster assessments for the department's or entities' functional area;
- ensuring that departments respond rapidly to disasters;
- ensuring efficient and coordinated disaster response and recovery operations;
- monitoring progress with, and ensuring that, post disaster reconstruction and rehabilitation projects include measures to reduce risk to similar events in the future;
- ensuring that regular reports on progress with disaster recovery are continuously submitted to council as well as to the DRMC of the Province and NDMC ; and
- ensuring that all documentation and records relating to the disaster are retained and placed in safe-keeping for the purposes of post disaster investigation, inquiry or review.

#### **4.1.6.3 Project Teams and Planning Clusters**

The IDRMC may convene project teams to address specific joint risk reduction priorities including post disaster projects. Teams so convened will act as sub-committees of the IDRMC for the duration of their task and will determine their terms of reference and outcomes in consultation with the Head of the Centre and the IDRMC; will plan and manage such multi-disciplinary projects; and will report back to the IDRMC.

In the context of emergency preparedness, planning clusters will also be convened to address contingency plans for specific priority risks posed by hazards such as storms, floods, drought, fires, epidemics, transportation accidents, oil spills, hazardous material spills, Xenophobic attacks crowd related events. These contingency plans will include strategies and procedures to ensure the implementation of an incident management system, which will



establish joint standards of practice and inter-disciplinary co-operation for rapid and effective disaster response capabilities. Such plans will also be subject to consultation with Ngwathe IDRMC.

### **Arrangements for stakeholder participation and technical advice**

#### **4.2.1 Communication with the Fezile Dabi District Municipality**

In terms of the legislation communication must be maintained at all times among Municipal Disaster Management Centre, the PDMC and NDMC in order to:

- assist Fezile Dabi District Disaster Management Centre to identify and establish communication links with disaster management role players in the municipal area and develop and maintain an electronic database;
- develop guidelines for the preparation and regular review of disaster management plans and strategies including contingency plans and emergency procedures and the integration of the concepts and principles of disaster management with integrated development plans and programmers;
- Submit a copy of the Disaster Plan and any amendment thereto and reports to the Fezile Dabi District Disaster Management Centre for submission to the PDMC and then NDMC.
- Immediately inform the DDRMC of any disaster which occurs or threatens to occur in municipal area; provide information regarding the assessment of the disaster and make recommendations regarding the classification of the disaster as may be appropriate

#### **4.2.2 Municipal Disaster Management Advisory Forum**

The forum has been established

##### **4.2.2.2 Composition of the Ngwathe Local Municipality DMAF**

The forum is convened and chaired by the Coordinator of Disaster Management in the municipality and comprises the following members:

##### **4.2.2.3 Integration with the IDP Process**

In order to facilitate the integration of disaster risk management into the IDP process, the Head of the DRMC must serve on both the IDP Steering Committee and IDP Representative Forum. All development projects must be referred to the MAP IDRMC for comment and input before their submission to council for approval.

##### **4.2.2.4 Units of Volunteers**

- The municipality may recruit and train volunteers;
- The register for volunteers should be maintained.

##### **4.2.2.5 Joint co-operation with neighbouring authorities through the DRMAF and other forums**

Cooperation with the following neighbouring municipalities will be enhanced:

- Moqhaka Local Municipality
- Mafube Local Municipality
- Metsimaholo Local Municipality
- Tlokwe Local municipality
- Sedibeng Local Municipality

Provision must be made for the representation on the Disaster Risk Management Advisory Forum as well as other forums of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality for the purposes of:

- the identification of potential cross boundary threats;
- sharing information on disasters and important risk reduction issues;
- participative disaster risk planning;
- joint contingency planning;
- developing and establishing joint standards of practice;
- information sharing including disaster risk management plans and the dissemination of early warnings;
- clear identification of roles and responsibilities in the event of cross boundary disasters which occur as well as responsibilities for the issue of advisories or early warnings of the potential spread or progress of a significant event or disaster into one or more neighbouring jurisdictions;
- concluding mutual assistance agreements, bilateral and multilateral agreements with clearly defined protocols for the purposes of shared risk reduction initiatives, emergency preparedness and cross boundary response and recovery efforts;
- sharing expertise and the development of disaster assistance response teams;
- establishing strategic communication links, procedures and protocols; and
- Creating opportunities for conducting research.

#### **4.2.2.6 Mutual Assistance Agreements**

Ngwathe LM, Fezile Dabi District Municipality, municipal organs of state, and any other entities operating within the administrations of municipalities must assess their capacity to meet their responsibilities for disaster risk reduction, emergency preparedness and response and recovery in terms of the Act. Where

required they must enter into partnerships and conclude mutual assistance agreements with other organs of state, the private sector, communities and nongovernmental organisations to augment their capacity. Such agreements must be in accordance with the national guidelines.

#### **4.2.2.4 Key performance indicators**

- The IDRMC is established and is operating effectively.
- A job description and key performance indicators for the Head of the Office have been developed.
- The Head of the Disaster Risk Management Centre is appointed in terms of a written contract, which includes key performance indicators.
- Ngwathe Local Municipality Disaster Risk Management Centre is fully established and staffed and is operating optimally.
- Provision has been made for the necessary funding to give effect to the arrangements.
- Accurate records of correspondence, proceedings, meetings and plans are maintained.
- A current register for disaster risk management volunteers is maintained and updated.

### **4.3 Monitoring and evaluation**

Ngwathe Local Municipal DRM office is responsible to ensure that any established structures (e.g. Ward Forums and the volunteer unit) conduct self-assessments and peer reviews at least twice a year. Assessment and review reports must be prepared in accordance with the reporting guideline to be developed by Ngwathe LM DRM office. Copies of the reports of the Ngwathe Local Municipal DRM office must be submitted to the Fezile Dabi District Disaster Management Centre.

## **4. KPA 2: DISASTER RISK ASSESSMENT**

### **4.1.1 Objective**

To establish a uniform approach to assessing and monitoring disaster risks that will inform disaster risk management planning and disaster risk reduction undertaken by organs of state and other role players.

### **4.2.2 Hazard and Risk Analysis**

#### **4.2.2.1 Purpose**

- To identify what risks present the greatest threat to provincial development planning.
- To develop an understanding of how best to manage existing, residual and future risks.
- To assign levels of risk

#### **4.2.2.2 The Key Steps**

- Identify and assess significant hazards
- Analyze the disaster risk(s)
- Evaluate the disaster risk(s)
- Monitor disaster risk reduction initiatives and update and disseminate disaster risk assessment information.

#### **(i) Hazard identification**

The following hazards have been identified:

- Drought
- Extreme cold
- Heat wave
- Hail
- Windstorm
- Tornado
- Floods
- Structural fires

- Veld fires
- Human epidemic
- Animal epidemic
- Hazmat transportation
- Hazmat fixed facility
- Hazmat biological (Anthrax)
- Hazmat radioactive
- Fire and explosion
- Transport motor vehicles
- Transport rail
- Transport aircraft
- Dam failure
- Seismic movements
- Boat accidents
- Hostage/ hijack incidents
- Reservoir break
- Snow
- Mudslides

**Water contamination**  
**HAZARD AND RISK REDUCTION STRATEGIES**

HAZARD	POTENTIAL RISK	RISK REDUCTION STRATEGIES
<b>Human epidemic</b>	2. Substantial loss of life.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes: types of diseases e.g. malaria, cholera, HIV/AIDS, Disease surveillance, health programmes, mobile clinics, Social Welfare programmes</li> <li>Ensure that service providers have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Low immunization rates in the province will increase the likelihood of an epidemic occurring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health awareness, medical effects of non immunization e.g. polio, measles</li> <li>Ensure that department of health have contingency plans in place.</li> </ul>
	Psychological effects on the community	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programme: Sensitize communities on the effects of epidemics, counseling and rehabilitation.</li> <li>Department of health to ensure contingency plans are in place.</li> </ul>
	Loss of income within the province	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify potential industry /commercial risk</li> <li>Awareness programmes: address economic impact, train replacement employees. Promote good health practices Effects and treatment of epidemic outbreaks.</li> <li>Contingency planning e.g. Streamlining services to meet budgetary constraints.</li> </ul>
	Vector/vermin contact will spread the epidemic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes: identification of diseases,</li> </ul>

	throughout the province and beyond.	Monitoring and surveillance. Preventing measures in respect of vermin, pest control and good house keeping: clear breeding sites etc
	Stigma being attached to the municipality accompanied by a tourist and visitor downturn.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness: People need to know the affects and facts. Good public relations and marketing programmes to be promoted.</li> </ul>
<b>Major infrastructure failure</b>	Water supply pumping facilities will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness: Maximum use of available recourses, water sanitation, personal hygiene and health awareness</li> <li>• Identify alternative safe water supplies e.g. bore holes, Farms dams, rivers and springs and ensure service providers have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Encourage installation of backup power.</li> </ul>
	Disaster communication facilities will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Identify alternative means of communication</li> <li>• Disaster Management and service providers to ensure that contingency plans are in place. (TELKOM, ESKOM, MTN, VODACOM AND CELL C)</li> <li>• Encourage installation of backup power</li> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors high risk flood plain</li> </ul>
	Fuel supply facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programme: Maximize use of available fuel resources e.g. rationing, Encourage the use of public transport, rail etc</li> <li>• Identify alternative suppliers</li> </ul>



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Encourage strategic suppliers to provide emergency backup systems</li> </ul>
	Telephone land-line and cell communication will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service providers to have contingency plans in place for e.g. radio, satellite phones.</li> </ul>
	Base radio transmitter stations relying on power will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Identify alternative means of communication e.g. telephone and cell communication</li> <li>• Service provider to have contingency plans</li> </ul>
	Electronic banking facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service provider to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Business and industry refrigeration and cooling facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: contamination of foodstuffs</li> <li>• Identify high risk areas e.g. meat storage, mortuary's</li> <li>• Identify alternative refrigeration facilities e.g. mobile refrigeration</li> <li>• Maintain and upgrading of infrastructure</li> </ul>
<b>Major Transportation Incident</b>	Accidents involving aircraft, trains, coaches or taxi vehicles will result in death or serious injury to a large number of people.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness/law enforcement e.g. regular safe inspections. Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Local Municipalities and service providers to have contingency plans in place Regular interaction between role players to identify risks.</li> <li>• Identify hospitals with the capacity and expertise to cope with such major incidents.</li> </ul>

	The bad mechanical condition of vehicles traversing Municipality roads will cause road accidents.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Co-ordination /Implementation of law enforcement Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> </ul>
	Inappropriate driver behavior will cause road accidents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Co-ordination /Implementation of law enforcement</li> </ul>
	Deteriorating road conditions will cause road accidents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness e.g. Signage</li> <li>• Law enforcement to combat e.g. overloading</li> <li>• Planned Maintenance</li> </ul>
<b>Water Contamination</b>	Contaminated water supplies will cause disease such as cholera and dysentery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Proper industrial and commercial water management procedures, good hygiene and sanitation practices, household water treatment options e.g. bleach</li> <li>• Responsible agencies DWAf department of environmental affairs, Health and water affairs to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Regular monitoring and surveillance</li> <li>• Identify alternative of water.</li> </ul>
	Shortage of potable water supplies will aggravate the situation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness e.g. purification of alternatives water resources. Encourage rain water harvesting.</li> <li>• Department of water affair/water authority to</li> </ul>

		<p>have contingency plans in place.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify alternative potential water resources e.g. boreholes, dams (database) Spring protection.</li> </ul>
	Resultant epidemics will place a great strain on the District's health facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Health to have contingency plans in place e.g. identify district health facilities and call support from other agencies</li> </ul>
<b>Animal Disease</b>	Loss of export capability.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. State controlled diseases, symptoms of animal disease</li> <li>Ensure that Veterinary services have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>Identify disposal sites and guard disposal sites</li> </ul>
	Cross contamination with indigenous wildlife will spread disease.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Proper fencing, quarantine procedure</li> <li>Ensure that Veterinary services have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>Monitoring/Surveillance</li> </ul>
	Loss of production (income) will have a severe impact on the economic viability of the rural population	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Type of service available Knowledge of symptoms</li> </ul>
	Impact on the reputation of the area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Facts and Effects of the disease, Avoid panic, Refer tourists to alternative resorts</li> <li>Positive marketing</li> </ul>
	Loss of production (income) will have severe impact on the food supply of the rural population.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that Department of Agriculture to have contingency plans in place (Recruitment of Veterinary personnel)</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support from Department of Welfare/Veterinary services</li> <li>• Awareness Programmes: Encourage insurance</li> <li>• Ensure proper staffing provision of Recruitment of enough staff</li> <li>• Mutual assistance agreements with other provinces.</li> </ul>
<b>Drought</b>	Reduction or loss of natural or reticulated water for human and stock consumption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes e.g. Do not cultivate or drain wetlands and Vlei's. Control of alien vegetation i.e. bugweed, wattle, lantana and paraffin weed. Protect springs. Encourage rainwater harvesting and investment in watertanks</li> <li>• Planning (IDP) for alternative reliable water sources e.g. Dams, covered reservoirs, boreholes and springs</li> <li>• Continuous maintenance of natural and reticulated water sources</li> <li>• Departments of Agriculture and DWAF to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Loss of crops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices, contour ploughing, minimum tillage, crop rotation. Encourage planting drought resistant varieties.</li> <li>• Identify responsible agency and ensure to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Loss of grazing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices e.g. Back burning, fire breaks, crop rotation and</li> </ul>

		<p>prevention of soil erosion. Identify alternative grazing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper clearing of encroaching alien vegetation e.g. Back burning</li> </ul>
	Loss of livestock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: e.g. Fire breaks, Good grazing practice e.g. Designated areas for grazing</li> <li>• Make provision in IDP for designated communal holding areas to supplement feed and water</li> </ul>
<b>Fire</b>	<p>Informal settlements have an increased vulnerability to fire because of the close quarters and lack of access.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establish fire services.</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good House Keeping e.g. Encourage proper spacing, use of electrical equipment, use of cooking apparatus and storage of flammable liquid. Proper clearing of encroaching vegetation and disposal of refuse. Encourage specialized institution to present safety audits. Provide fire fighting training for volunteers and basic equipment</li> <li>• Proper policing to avoid further influx</li> <li>• Plan alternative accommodation e.g. include development of housing as priority in the IDP</li> </ul>
	Loss of stock and game	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: e.g. Agriculture advice to be give fire breaks, Good grazing practice e.g. Designated areas for grazing</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of roofing., thatch,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes:</li> </ul>

	rendering housing uninhabitable	<p>Encourage good building practices e.g. use of proper roofing materials</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper clearing encroaching vegetation e.g. Back burning.</li> <li>• Training of fire volunteers</li> </ul>
	Pregnant women, young children the elderly and the disable unable to evacuate in time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Fire behaviour e.g. Reading wind direction and evacuation procedures.</li> <li>• Early warning systems e.g. Media broadcast, pamphlets and loud speakers</li> <li>• Identification of places of safety.</li> <li>• Identify alternative access routes</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of crops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices e.g. Back burning, fire breaks and crop rotation</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of grazing land	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practice e.g.</li> </ul>
	Destruction of industrial areas, industrial job losses, economic losses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establishment of FPAS (Fire Protection Associations)</li> <li>• Maintenance of gaspipes, Awareness campaigns fire protection systems contingencies plans for industries</li> </ul>
<b>Flood, Storm, Severe Rainfall, Landslip</b>	People will not be able to evacuate the area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Pre-identified high ground shelter, leave unnecessary item. Take food etc.</li> <li>• Consider relocation of informal temporary shelter</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pro-active measures of mitigation (gabion baskets)</li> <li>• Early warning systems Pre-identify alternative accommodation</li> <li>• Include in IDP for future development</li> </ul>
	Areas will be cut off by washed out roads, bridges etc, preventing access by response agencies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes (proper drainage ext)</li> <li>• Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Planning, positioning and quality of roads</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative resources in terms of access (Rubberduck ext) for floods only</li> <li>• Include IMS protocol in conjunction with department of transport</li> <li>• Include IDP</li> </ul>
	Building (Public and Private) and informal settlements will be destroyed, leaving large number of people homeless.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness in terms of building codes in rural areas. (Quality of homes) and (management of household possessions)</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative accommodation/Maintain database of resources. Exp (Food distribution plan)</li> <li>• Include re-housing in development programme. (IDP)</li> </ul>
	Sanitation and health problems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Promote the treatment of available water resources and good personal hygiene practices. Prevention of water born disease. e.g. (Malaria, Cholera and diarrhoea)</li> <li>• Identify responsible and ensure contingency plans in place</li> </ul>

	Women left to care extended families with no means of transportation out of the affected area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Resources in terms of access</li> </ul>
<b>Hazmat Incidents Snow</b>	Pollution of the water table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Pollution of the soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Human exposure to toxic chemical resulting in serious harm or death.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Pollution of the atmosphere will occur from the release of hazardous material.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify</li> </ul>



		specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	People will not be able to evacuate the area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Pre-identified high ground shelter, leave unnecessary item. Take food etc.</li> <li>• Consider relocation of informal temporary shelter</li> <li>• Pro-active measures of mitigation (gabion baskets)</li> <li>• Early warning systems Pre-identify alternative accommodation</li> <li>• Include in IDP for future development</li> </ul>
	Areas will be cut off by washed out roads, bridges etc, preventing access by response agencies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Planning, positioning and quality of roads</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative resources in terms of access Include IMS protocol in conjunction with department of transport</li> <li>• Include IDP</li> </ul>

#### **4.3.2 Integration of disaster reduction into development planning**

##### **4.3.2.1 Integration of disaster risk reduction with spatial development planning**

District and municipal disaster management coordinators must establish mechanisms in association with spatial planners in both

spheres to ensure that relevant spatial information informs disaster risk reduction planning.

#### ***4.3.2.2 Incorporation of disaster risk reduction planning into integrated development planning***

Disaster risk reduction efforts are medium to long-term multi-sectoral efforts focused on vulnerability reduction and must be incorporated into ongoing IDP projects, processes, programmes and structures.

### **3. Disaster risk reduction**

## **5. KPA 3: DISASTER RISK REDUCTION**

### ***Objective***

To ensure that all disaster risk management stakeholders develop and implement integrated disaster risk management plans and risk reduction programmes in accordance with approved frameworks.

### **5.1 Core Disaster Risk Reduction Principles**

All disaster risk management plans must give explicit priority to the core principles of disaster prevention and mitigation.

#### ***5.1.1 Disaster Prevention***

It refers to actions that provide outright avoidance of the adverse impact of hazards and related environmental, technological and biological disasters.

#### ***5.1.2 Disaster Mitigation***

It refers to structural and non-structural measures that are undertaken to the limit the adverse impact of natural hazards, environmental degradation

and technological hazards on vulnerable areas, communities and households.

### HAZARD AND RISK REDUCTION STRATEGIES

HAZARD	POTENTIAL RISK	RISK REDUCTION STRATEGIES
<b>Human epidemic</b>	3. Substantial loss of life.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: types of diseases e.g. malaria, cholera, HIV/AIDS, Disease surveillance, health programmes, mobile clinics, Social Welfare programmes</li> <li>• Ensure that service providers have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Low immunization rates in the province will increase the likelihood of an epidemic occurring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Health awareness, medical effects of non immunization e.g. polio, measles</li> <li>• Ensure that department of health have contingency plans in place.</li> </ul>
	Psychological effects on the community	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programme: Sensitize communities on the effects of epidemics, counseling and rehabilitation.</li> <li>• Department of health to ensure contingency plans are in place.</li> </ul>
	Loss of income within the province	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify potential industry /commercial risk</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: address economic impact, train replacement employees. Promote good health practices Effects and treatment of epidemic outbreaks.</li> <li>• Contingency planning e.g. Streamlining services to meet budgetary constraints.</li> </ul>

	Vector/vermin contact will spread the epidemic throughout the province and beyond.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes: identification of diseases, Monitoring and surveillance. Preventing measures in respect of vermin, pest control and good house keeping: clear breeding sites etc</li> </ul>
	Stigma being attached to the municipality accompanied by a tourist and visitor downturn.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness: People need to know the affects and facts. Good public relations and marketing programmes to be promoted.</li> </ul>
<b>Major infrastructure failure</b>	Water supply pumping facilities will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness: Maximum use of available recourses, water sanitation, personal hygiene and health awareness</li> <li>Identify alternative safe water supplies e.g. bore holes, Farms dams, rivers and springs and ensure service providers have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>Encourage installation of backup power.</li> </ul>
	Disaster communication facilities will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes: Identify alternative means of communication</li> <li>Disaster Management and service providers to ensure that contingency plans are in place. (TELKOM, ESKOM, MTN, VODACOM AND CELL C)</li> <li>Encourage installation of backup power</li> <li>Identify vulnerable sectors high risk flood plain</li> </ul>
	Fuel supply facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programme: Maximize use of available fuel resources e.g. rationing, Encourage the use of public transport, rail etc</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify alternative suppliers</li> <li>• Encourage strategic suppliers to provide emergency backup systems</li> </ul>
	Telephone land-line and cell communication will be rendered inoperable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service providers to have contingency plans in place for e.g. radio, satellite phones.</li> </ul>
	Base radio transmitter stations relying on power will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Identify alternative means of communication e.g. telephone and cell communication</li> <li>• Service provider to have contingency plans</li> </ul>
	Electronic banking facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service provider to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Business and industry refrigeration and cooling facilities will be rendered inoperable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: contamination of foodstuffs</li> <li>• Identify high risk areas e.g. meat storage, mortuary's</li> <li>• Identify alternative refrigeration facilities e.g. mobile refrigeration</li> <li>• Maintain and upgrading of infrastructure</li> </ul>
<b>Major Transportation Incident</b>	Accidents involving aircraft, trains, coaches or taxi vehicles will result in death or serious injury to a large number of people.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness/law enforcement e.g. regular safe inspections. Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Local Municipalities and service providers to have contingency plans in place Regular interaction between role players to identify risks.</li> <li>• Identify hospitals with the capacity and expertise to cope with such major incidents.</li> </ul>

	The bad mechanical condition of vehicles traversing Municipality roads will cause road accidents.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Co-ordination /Implementation of law enforcement Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> </ul>
	Inappropriate driver behavior will cause road accidents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Road and vehicle safety principles to be adopted by drivers and passengers.</li> <li>• Co-ordination /Implementation of law enforcement</li> </ul>
	Deteriorating road conditions will cause road accidents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness e.g. Signage</li> <li>• Law enforcement to combat e.g. overloading</li> <li>• Planned Maintenance</li> </ul>
<b>Water Contamination</b>	Contaminated water supplies will cause disease such as cholera and dysentery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Proper industrial and commercial water management procedures, good hygiene and sanitation practices, household water treatment options e.g. bleach</li> <li>• Responsible agencies DWA department of environmental affairs, Health and water affairs to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Regular monitoring and surveillance</li> <li>• Identify alternative of water.</li> </ul>
	Shortage of potable water supplies will aggravate the situation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness e.g. purification of alternatives water resources. Encourage rain water harvesting.</li> <li>• Department of water affair/water authority to</li> </ul>

		<p>have contingency plans in place.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify alternative potential water resources e.g. boreholes, dams (database) Spring protection.</li> </ul>
	Resultant epidemics will place a great strain on the District's health facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Department of Health to have contingency plans in place e.g. identify district health facilities and call support from other agencies</li> </ul>
<b>Animal Disease</b>	Loss of export capability.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. State controlled diseases, symptoms of animal disease</li> <li>Ensure that Veterinary services have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>Identify disposal sites and guard disposal sites</li> </ul>
	Cross contamination with indigenous wildlife will spread disease.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Proper fencing, quarantine procedure</li> <li>Ensure that Veterinary services have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>Monitoring/Surveillance</li> </ul>
	Loss of production (income) will have a severe impact on the economic viability of the rural population	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Type of service available Knowledge of symptoms</li> </ul>
	Impact on the reputation of the area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Awareness programmes e.g. Facts and Effects of the disease, Avoid panic, Refer tourists to alternative resorts</li> <li>Positive marketing</li> </ul>
	Loss of production (income) will have severe impact on the food supply of the rural population.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that Department of Agriculture to have contingency plans in place (Recruitment of Veterinary personnel)</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support from Department of Welfare/Veterinary services</li> <li>• Awareness Programmes: Encourage insurance</li> <li>• Ensure proper staffing provision of Recruitment of enough staff</li> <li>• Mutual assistance agreements with other provinces.</li> </ul>
<b>Drought</b>	Reduction or loss of natural or reticulated water for human and stock consumption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes e.g. Do not cultivate or drain wetlands and Vlei's. Control of alien vegetation i.e. bugweed, wattle, lantana and paraffin weed. Protect springs. Encourage rainwater harvesting and investment in watertanks</li> <li>• Planning (IDP) for alternative reliable water sources e.g. Dams, covered reservoirs, boreholes and springs</li> <li>• Continuous maintenance of natural and reticulated water sources</li> <li>• Departments of Agriculture and DWAF to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Loss of crops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices, contour ploughing, minimum tillage, crop rotation. Encourage planting drought resistant varieties.</li> <li>• Identify responsible agency and ensure to have contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Loss of grazing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices e.g. Back burning, fire breaks, crop rotation and</li> </ul>



		<p>prevention of soil erosion. Identify alternative grazing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper clearing of encroaching alien vegetation e.g. Back burning</li> </ul>
	Loss of livestock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: e.g. Fire breaks, Good grazing practice e.g. Designated areas for grazing</li> <li>• Make provision in IDP for designated communal holding areas to supplement feed and water</li> </ul>
<b>Fire</b>	<p>Informal settlements have an increased vulnerability to fire because of the close quarters and lack of access.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establish fire services.</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good House Keeping e.g. Encourage proper spacing, use of electrical equipment, use of cooking apparatus and storage of flammable liquid. Proper clearing of encroaching vegetation and disposal of refuse. Encourage specialized institution to present safety audits. Provide fire fighting training for volunteers and basic equipment</li> <li>• Proper policing to avoid further influx</li> <li>• Plan alternative accommodation e.g. include development of housing as priority in the IDP</li> </ul>
	Loss of stock and game	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: e.g. Agriculture advice to be give fire breaks, Good grazing practice e.g. Designated areas for grazing</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of roofing., thatch,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes:</li> </ul>

	rendering housing uninhabitable	<p>Encourage good building practices e.g. use of proper roofing materials</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper clearing encroaching vegetation e.g. Back burning.</li> <li>• Training of fire volunteers</li> </ul>
	Pregnant women, young children the elderly and the disable unable to evacuate in time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Fire behaviour e.g. Reading wind direction and evacuation procedures.</li> <li>• Early warning systems e.g. Media broadcast, pamphlets and loud speakers</li> <li>• Identification of places of safety.</li> <li>• Identify alternative access routes</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of crops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices e.g. Back burning, fire breaks and crop rotation</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of grazing land	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practice e.g.</li> </ul>
	Destruction of industrial areas, industrial job losses, economic losses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establishment of FPAS (Fire Protection Associations)</li> <li>• Maintenance of gaspipes, Awareness campaigns fire protection systems contingencies plans for industries</li> </ul>
<b>Flood, Storm, Severe Rainfall, Landslip</b>	People will not be able to evacuate the area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Pre-identified high ground shelter, leave unnecessary item. Take food etc.</li> <li>• Consider relocation of informal temporary shelter</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pro-active measures of mitigation (gabion baskets)</li> <li>• Early warning systems Pre-identify alternative accommodation</li> <li>• Include in IDP for future development</li> </ul>
	Areas will be cut off by washed out roads, bridges etc, preventing access by response agencies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes (proper drainage ext)</li> <li>• Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Planning, positioning and quality of roads</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative resources in terms of access (Rubberduck ext) for floods only</li> <li>• Include IMS protocol in conjunction with department of transport</li> <li>• Include IDP</li> </ul>
	Building (Public and Private) and informal settlements will be destroyed, leaving large number of people homeless.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness in terms of building codes in rural areas. (Quality of homes) and (management of household possessions)</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative accommodation/Maintain database of resources. Exp (Food distribution plan)</li> <li>• Include re-housing in development programme. (IDP)</li> </ul>
	Sanitation and health problems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Promote the treatment of available water resources and good personal hygiene practices. Prevention of water born disease. e.g. (Malaria, Cholera and diarrhoea)</li> <li>• Identify responsible and ensure contingency plans in place</li> </ul>
	Women left to care extended families with no means of transportation out of the affected area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Resources in terms of access</li> </ul>
<b>Hazmat</b>	Pollution of the water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes:</li> </ul>

<b>Incidents Snow</b>	table	<p>the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Pollution of the soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Human exposure to toxic chemical resulting in serious harm or death.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have contingency plans in place.</li> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	Pollution of the atmosphere will occur from the release of hazardous material.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: the effect of various chemical and precautionary measures, identify specialized and alternative treatment facilities and places of safety</li> <li>• Local Authority, Environmental affairs/DWAF to have</li> </ul>

		contingency plans in place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify Hazmat Task Team</li> </ul>
	People will not be able to evacuate the area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes: Pre-identified high ground shelter, leave unnecessary item. Take food etc.</li> <li>• Consider relocation of informal temporary shelter</li> <li>• Pro-active measures of mitigation (gabion baskets)</li> <li>• Early warning systems Pre-identify alternative accommodation</li> <li>• Include in IDP for future development</li> </ul>
	Areas will be cut off by washed out roads, bridges etc, preventing access by response agencies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify vulnerable sectors informal/formal</li> <li>• Awareness programmes Identify alternative routes</li> <li>• Planning, positioning and quality of roads</li> <li>• Pre-identify alternative resources in terms of access Include IMS protocol in conjunction with department of transport</li> <li>• Include IDP</li> </ul>

## ***5.2 Integration of disaster reduction into development planning***

### ***5.2.1 Integration of disaster risk reduction with spatial development planning***

District and municipal disaster management coordinators must establish mechanisms in association with spatial planners in both spheres to ensure that relevant spatial information informs disaster risk reduction planning.

### ***5.2.2 Incorporation of disaster risk reduction planning into integrated development planning***

Disaster risk reduction efforts are medium to long-term multi-sectoral efforts focused on vulnerability reduction and must be incorporated into ongoing IDP projects, processes, programmes and structures.

### **5.3 Key Performance Indicators**

- Risk related information has been incorporated into spatial development frameworks.
- Projects and initiatives that include a focus on disaster risk reduction have been included in IDPs.

## **4. RESPONSE AND RECOVERY**

### **7.3 KPA 4: RESPONSE AND RECOVERY**

#### ***Objective***

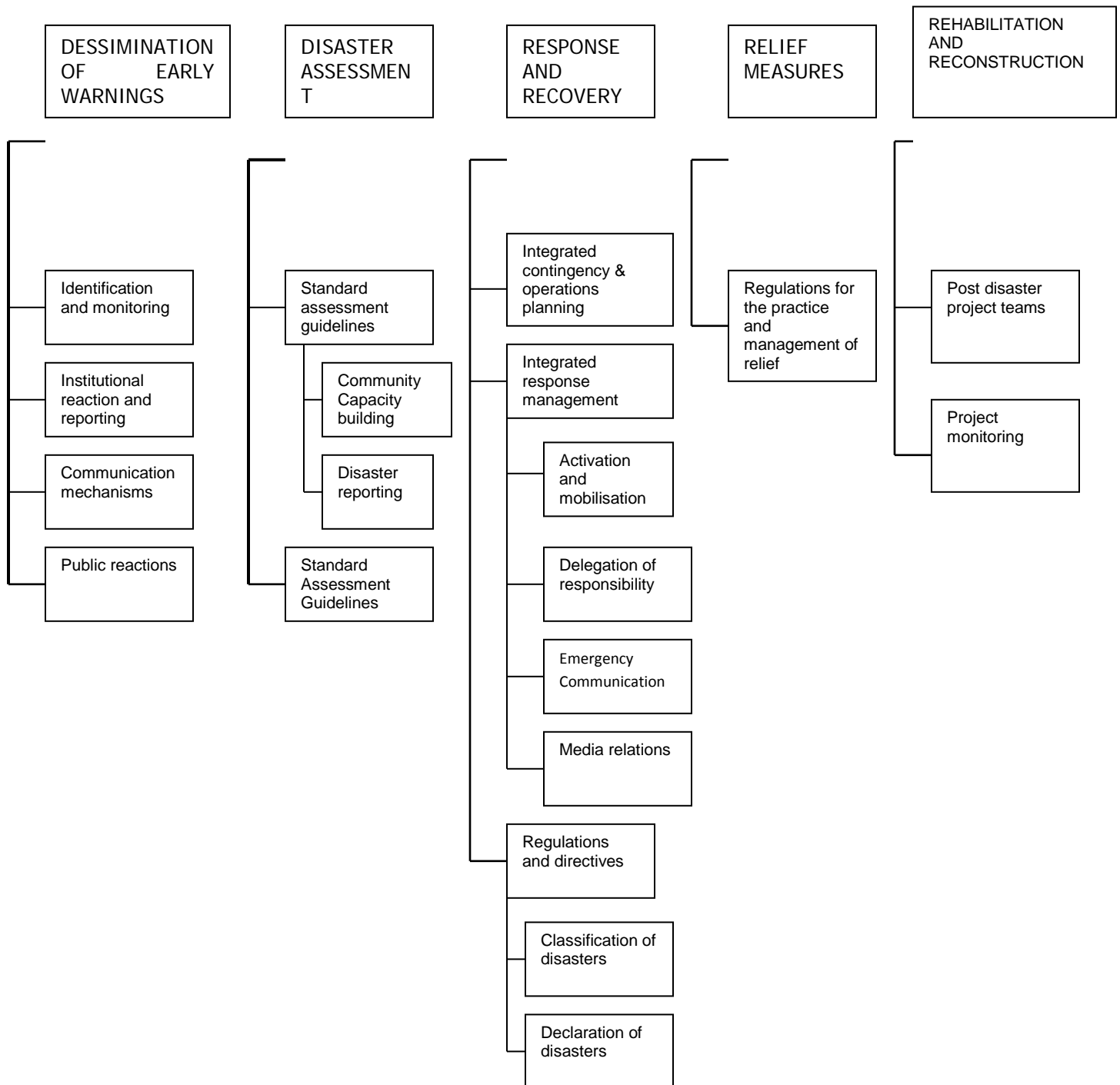
To ensure effective and appropriate disaster response and recovery by:

Implementing a uniform approach to the dissemination of early warnings; averting or reducing the potential impact in respect of personal injury, health, loss of life, property, infrastructure, environment and government services;

Implementing immediate integrated and appropriate response and relief measures when significant events or disasters occur or are threatening to occur;

Implementing all rehabilitation and reconstruction strategies following a disaster in an integrated and developmental manner.

**FIG. DISASTER RESPONSE AND RECOVERY**



## PROCESS FOR THE CLASIFICATION AND DECLARATION OF STATE OF DISASTER



Evaluate nature of occurrence In terms of section 2 of the

Conduct initial assessment of occurrence to establish magnitude and severity or potential magnitude and severity according to set assessment criteria

Determine if occurrence falls within definition of a disaster in terms of the Disaster Management Act, 2002

Classify the occurrence in terms of section 23 of the Disaster management Act, 2002

Classify a local disaster: Mobilize contingencies.

If existing legislation and contingencies are inadequate deal with the consequences or potential consequences, declare a local state of disaster

Access central contingency fund

If existing legislation and contingencies are inadequate to deal with the consequences or potential consequences:

If capabilities are exceeded, resources depleted and provincial contingency fund threshold exceeded, classify disaster as national disaster in terms of section 23 of the Disaster Management Act, 2002.

If existing legislation and contingencies are inadequate to deal with the consequences or potential consequences, declare a local state of disaster



### **7.4.1 Early Warnings**

↑  
Early warnings are designed to alert areas, communities, households and individuals to an impending or imminent significant event or disaster so that they can take the necessary steps to avoid or reduce the risk and prepare for an effective response.

#### **Major Role Players in integrated early warning:**

- South African Weather Services - climate forecast, satellite information;
- Department of Water Affairs & Forestry - flood warnings, dam and river levels, water supplies;
- Department of Agriculture - crop forecasts, staple food quality, forage availability, water irrigation and livestock;
- Department of Health – epidemics and diseases.

#### **Disaster Assessment**

On-site assessment includes establishing what resources are necessary to ensure the delivery of immediate, effective and appropriate response and relief measures to affected areas and communities and to facilitate business continuity.

#### **Response and Recovery**

The operational plans and guidelines of the various response agencies that contribute to field operations must be considered when allocating responsibilities for response and recovery. Primary and secondary responsibilities will be allocated for each of the operational activities associated with disaster response e.g. evacuation, shelter, search and rescue, emergency medical services and fire fighting.

#### **Relief Measures**

Relief operations following significant and/or events classified as disasters will be coordinated. Relief assistance and donations will be equitably distributed.

## **Rehabilitation and Reconstruction**

The organ of state tasked with primary responsibility for known hazard will facilitate the establishment of project teams.

### **Key Performance Indicators**

- Post disaster project teams for rehabilitation and reconstruction have been established and operate effectively.
- Mechanisms for the monitoring of rehabilitation and reconstruction projects have been established and regular progress reports are submitted to the NDMC.
- The provincial and municipal disaster management centres have established and documented clear procedures for accessing, interpreting and disseminating early warnings of both rapid and slow onset hazards.

## **5. Information and Communication**

### **ENABLER 1: INFORMATION MANAGEMENT AND COMMUNICATION**

#### **Objective**

To guide the development of a comprehensive information management and communication system and establish integrated communication links with all disaster risk management role players.

#### **7.5.1 Establishing an Information Management and Communication System**

The information management and communication system will include the establishment of communication links, which will enable the receipt, transmission and dissemination of information between disaster management centres and those likely to be affected by disaster risks as well as other role players and role players and stakeholders involved in disaster risk management. The design of the system will

take into account the lack of technological infrastructure in areas and communities most at risk, as well as telephonic system failures during disasters. This will require the use of a dedicated two-way provincial emergency radio communication network.

### **7.5.2 Integrated Information Management and Communication Model**

An integrated information management and communication system must be established to achieve the objectives of the KPAs and enablers outlined in the national disaster management framework.

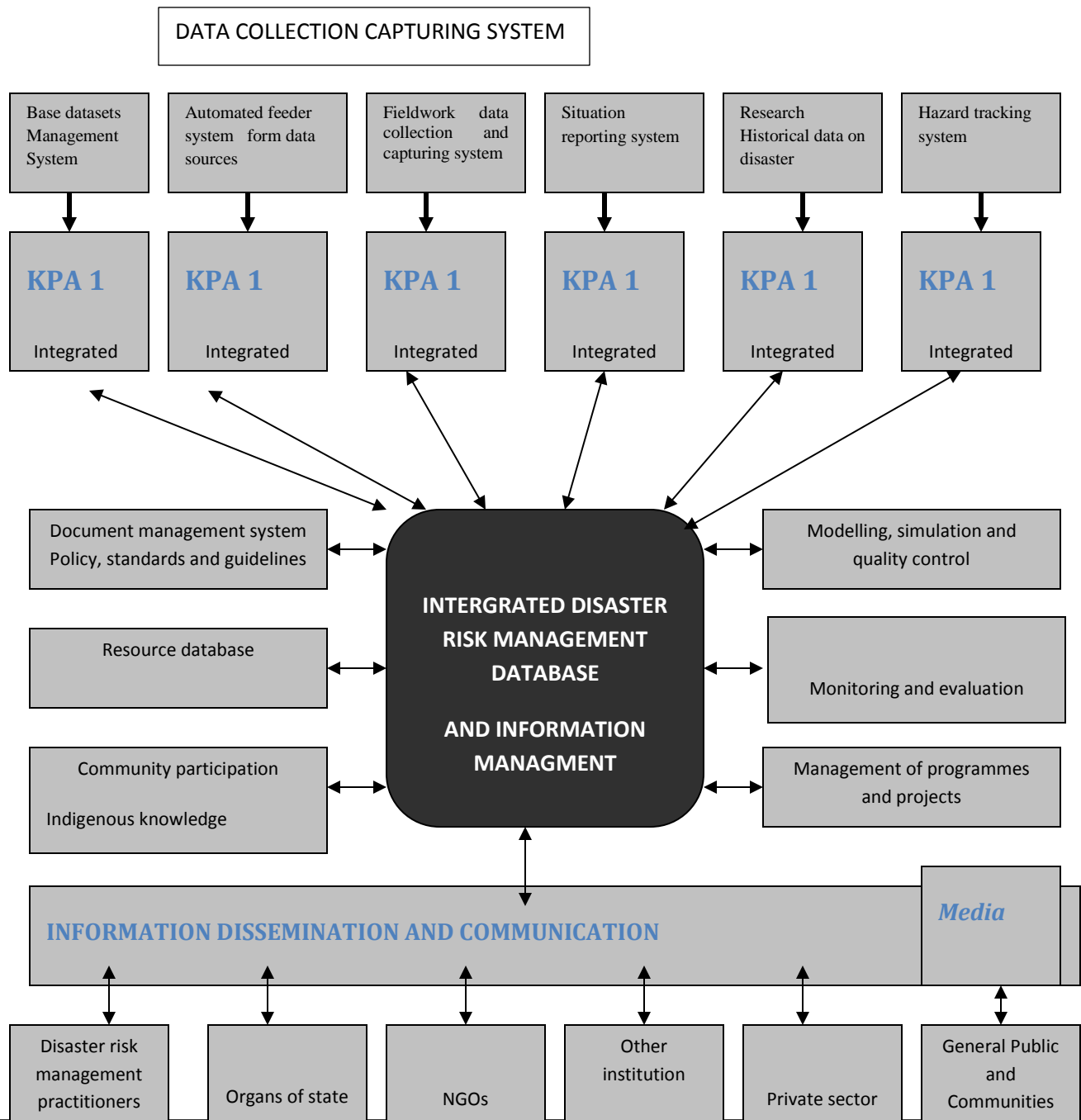
### **7.5.3 Data Acquisition (Data Collection and Capturing)**

The process will identify both the inputs and data sources (data custodians) that will be required to ensure effective support for the implementation of the Act and the Framework.

The following types of data, among others, will be required: -

- Base data (e.g. topographical, census, land cover, infrastructure, deeds, environmental)
- Dynamic data (e.g. contact and other relevant details of all role players)
- Field data (e.g. features of buildings, infrastructure)
- Situational reporting system (e.g. incidents, local conditions)
- Hazard tracking (e.g. weather conditions, flood, fire hazard conditions, droughts)
- Early warnings

Figure .....: Model of an integrated information management and communication system for disaster risk management



#### 7.5.4 Key Performance Indicators

- Data needs have been defined by the PDMC.
- Data sources have been identified by the PDMC.

- Data collection and capturing methodologies have been developed and implemented.
- The responsibilities of the respective data custodians have been defined and assigned.
- Agreements with identified data custodians have been negotiated to ensure availability, quality and reliability of data.

## **6. Education**

### **7.6 ENABLER 2: EDUCATION, TRAINING, PUBLIC AWARENESS & RESEARCH**

#### **Objective**

To promote a culture of risk avoidance among stakeholders by capacitating role players through integrated education, training and public awareness programmes informed by scientific research.

#### **7.6.1 EDUCATION AND TRAINING**

##### **7.6.1.1 School Programmes**

Ngwathe Municipality will seek to establish links with existing awareness creation programmes in schools for the purpose of disseminating of information on disaster risk management and risk avoidance. The district municipalities will play an active part in engaging schools to ensure a practical approach to awareness programmes.

##### **7.6.1.2 Dissemination and Use of Indigenous Knowledge**

It is imperative that traditional leaders, as custodians of indigenous knowledge, play an active role at the local, district and provincial levels. The indigenous knowledge is an integral part of disaster risk management.

##### **7.6.1.3 Training Programmes for Government Officials and Policy Makers**

Training programmes for government officials and policy makers will embrace the multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary dimensions of disaster risk reduction, which will include the following:

- Development planning
- Hazard identification and assessment

- Communicable diseases
- Dry land agriculture
- Participatory rural appraisal
- Applied climate science and GIS

#### **7.6.1.4 Community Training Programmes**

Training programmes for communities will focus on disaster risk awareness, disaster risk reduction, volunteerism and preparedness. Communities will be given the opportunity to modify and enhance training programmes through the inclusion of indigenous knowledge, practices and values, and the incorporation of local experience of disasters and disaster risk management.

### **7.6.2 PUBLIC AWARENESS**

#### **7.6.2.1 Public Awareness Strategy**

To inculcate risk avoidance behaviour by all stake holders, public awareness campaigns aimed at raising consciousness about disaster risks will provide information on how to reduce vulnerability and exposure to hazards. These campaigns will include:

- Organized and planned awareness programmes
- Imbizo meetings
- Annual recognition and celebration of World Disaster Risk Reduction Day
- Rewards, incentives, competitions and recognition schemes to enhance awareness of and participation in risk reduction activities
- Dissemination of information to all role players

#### **7.6.2.2 Communication through the Media (Communication Unit)**

The role of the media during disasters must be defined and managed through a consultative process involving the media, role players involved in response and recovery efforts, and communities routinely affected by disasters or impending disasters. The PDMC will establish and manage ongoing relations with relevant community and local and media.

### **7.6.3 RESEARCH**

The Disaster Management Office, through a process of consultation, will develop a strategic disaster risk reduction research agenda to effectively inform disaster risk management planning and implementation in the municipality. Research initiatives will also be linked to the IDP processes of municipalities.

**The PDMC will facilitate:**

- Consultation and engagement between the communities and disaster Risk Management role players' holders and stakeholders.
- A process for auditing existing initiatives and programmes.
- The development of an integrated disaster risk reduction research agenda and programme.

**7.6.4 Key Performance Indicators**

- Training programmes have been developed and implemented.
- Approved service providers have been registered and are offering training services and products.
- Facilitators, instructors and presenters have become qualified and have been accredited.
- Widespread community-based disaster risk management training is taking place.
- Awareness of disaster risk management is promoted at schools and in communities known to be at risk.
- Disaster risk reduction is the focus of all disaster risk management awareness programmes.
- There is a widespread evidence of balanced media reports and coverage on hazards, disasters and disaster risk management issues.
- Disaster risk reduction is included as a standard agenda item for consideration at Executive meetings of all role players and stakeholders.
- A strategic disaster risk research agenda linked between scientific research and policies, which is accessible to stakeholders, has been established.

**7. Fire**

<b>Fire</b>	Informal settlements have an increased vulnerability to fire because of the close quarters and lack of access.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Establish fire services.</li><li>• Awareness programmes: Good House Keeping e.g. Encourage proper spacing, use of electrical equipment, use of cooking apparatus and storage of flammable liquid. Proper clearing of encroaching vegetation and</li></ul>
-------------	--	---

		<p>disposal of refuse. Encourage specialized institution to present safety audits. Provide fire fighting training for volunteers and basic equipment</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper policing to avoid further influx</li> <li>• Plan alternative accommodation e.g. include development of housing as priority in the IDP</li> </ul>
	Loss of stock and game	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: e.g. Agriculture advice to be give fire breaks, Good grazing practice e.g. Designated areas for grazing</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of roofing., thatch, rendering housing uninhabitable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Encourage good building practices e.g. use of proper roofing materials</li> <li>• Proper clearing encroaching vegetation e.g. Back burning.</li> <li>• Training of fire volunteers</li> </ul>
	Pregnant women, young children the elderly and the disable unable to evacuate in time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Fire behaviour e.g. Reading wind direction and evacuation procedures.</li> <li>• Early warning systems e.g. Media broadcast, pamphlets and load halers</li> <li>• Identification of places of safety.</li> <li>• Identify alternative access routes</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>
	Loss of crops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practices e.g. Back burning, fire breaks and crop rotation</li> <li>• Training of fire fighting Volunteers</li> </ul>



	Loss of grazing land	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness programmes: Good farming practice e.g.</li> </ul>
	Destruction of industrial areas, industrial job losses, economic losses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establishment of FPAS (Fire Protection Associations)</li> <li>• Maintenance of gaspipes, Awareness campaigns fire protection systems contingencies plans for industries</li> </ul>

## LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS

**Strategic Objective:** Create an environment that promotes the development of the local economy and facilitate job creation

**Intended Outcome:** Improved municipal economic viability

LED Strategy: It is available and was adopted by Council

LED Unit: It is available and is composed of the Acting LED Manager and three supporting staff

**i. Linkages with LED Strategies for LM**

There is linkage between the FDDM LED Strategy

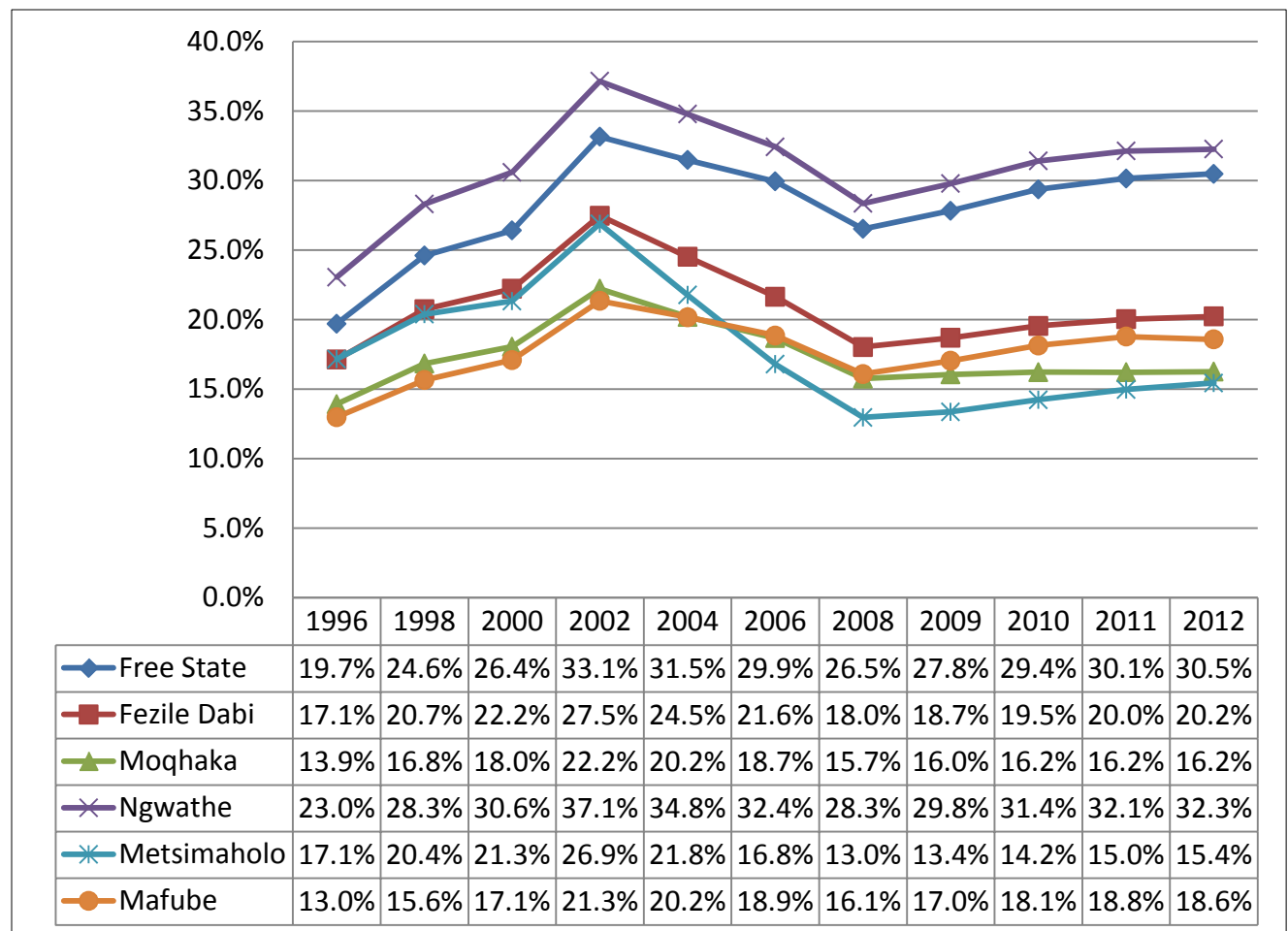
There are also linkages amongst other local municipalities within the district in terms of the by-laws that are to be implement

### Unemployment levels in percentage: 2001– 2011

	Unemployment Rate (official)		Youth unemployment rate (official) 15-34 years	
	2001	2011	2001	2011
<b>Free State Province</b>	43,0	32,6	54,1	43,0
<b>Fezile Dabi DM</b>	41,3	33,9	54,2	44,4
<b>Ngwathe LM</b>	47,1	35,2	59,4	45,1

(Source: Census 2011)

## Unemployment Rates



## Findings:

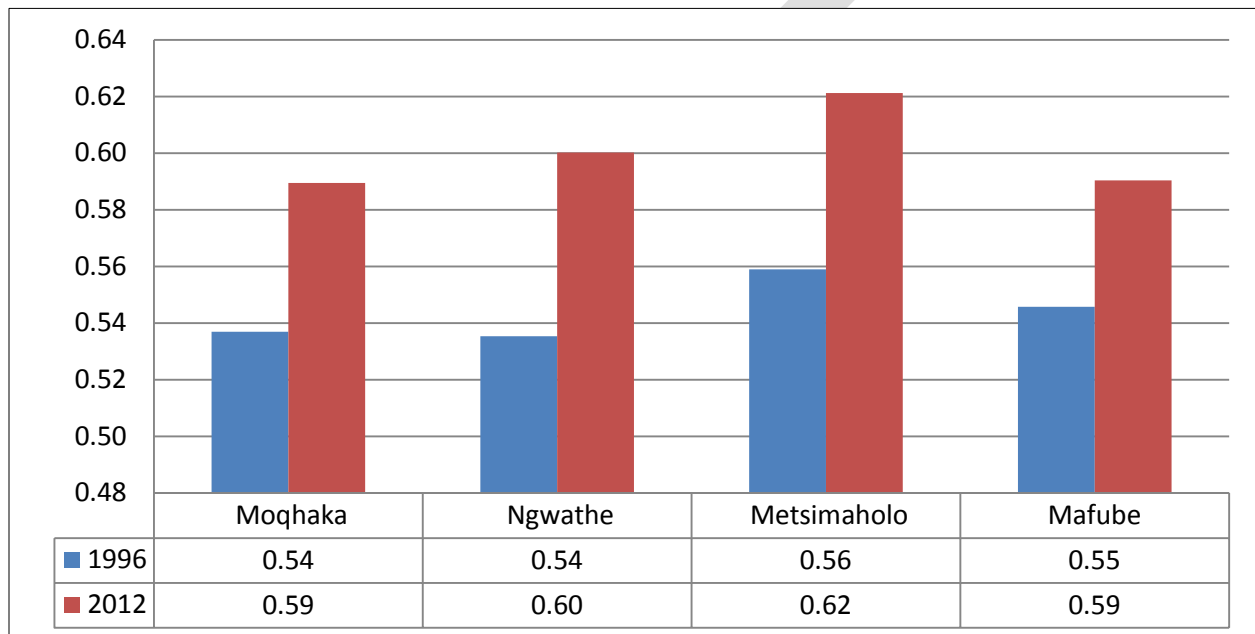
- Unemployment levels in the district are lower than in the province.
- The district has an unemployment rate of 20, 2%,
- Ngwathe area has the highest unemployment rate at 32, 3% in the district and therefore efforts should be made to create jobs in the area. ( Higher than both Province and district)
- The rest of the local municipalities have unemployment rates that are below the district and provincial unemployment rates

## Current economic activity dominant sectors and potential sectors

Agriculture (Crop Farming) plays a predominant part

There is a great potential for the growth of Smme's in the field of Farming once the land (Commonages) is made available to them.

Gini co efficient



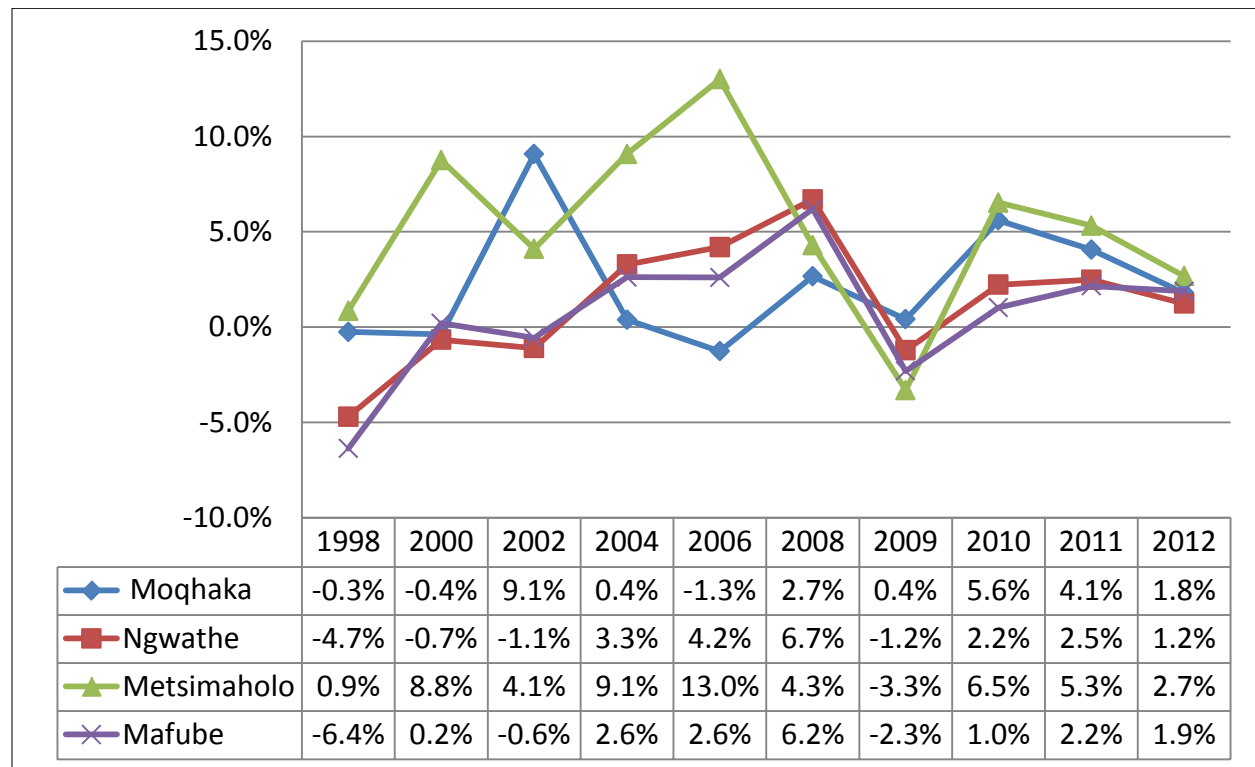
(Source; Global Insight)

### The above means:

The level of inequality has increased in the country and in the province compared to 1996.

Inequality in Fezile Dabi has also increased; from 0.56 to 0.62. that of NLM has on the other hand increased to 0.60.

## GDP Growth Rates per municipality



(Source: Global Insight)

### The above depicts the following scenario:

Fastest growing municipalities since 1996:

Metsimaholo (5.0% average)

Moqhaka (2.6% average)

Slowest growing:

Mafube (1.2% average)

Ngwathe (1.7% average)

### Linkages with the National and Provincial, particularly in respect of infrastructure and skills development

Hydroponic in Parys was renovated through the assistance of Dept. of Agriculture

There is also a structure which has been built for Poultry in Parys by Dept. of Agriculture.

Skills development through EPWP and CPW is going on.

### **Adequate consideration of special issues relevant to the economic development**

There are enough commonage lands within the municipality.

Emerging farmers are encouraged to apply for the utilisation of land.

There are two cooperatives that have already benefitted from this process LionStream in Koppies and Edenville Cooperatives.

There are ten trainees who benefitted from training of Operating and Running Guest Houses and B&B businesses.

Bank Sita also trained Money Lenders on how to operate their businesses professionally.

### **Targets and established database for BEE programmes, SMME & cooperative support and EPWP.**

Smme's are constantly assisted to enrol on database of both NLM and FDDM and other Government Departments.

Enrolled companies are considered when opportunities of business arise

Local people are also given preference during EPWP and CWP projects (e.g Paving)

FDDM Destea information centre which is located in Parys render assistance to SMME's from all towns within the district.

### **Public Works Policy Initiatives as part of job creation:**

Creation of work opportunities through implementation of community development initiatives:

- Cash for Waste Programme
  - Community Work Programme
  - Cemetery Maintenance

- Township Revitalization Project
- Community Halls Maintenance

<b>Programme</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Beneficiaries</b>
Cash for Waste		Heilbron	107
Cemetery Maintenance Programme			
		Heilbron	31
Community Halls Renovations/ Maintenance	Renovations to Phiritona and Sandersville Halls		21
Township Revitalisation Programme		Parys	75
		Vredefort	68
		Heilbron	42
<b>EPWP TARGET FOR 2015-16 = 317</b>			



One of the Food Garden initiated and maintained by CWP in Edenville

## Regional Tourism:

Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010. The industry needs to grow to levels as experienced in the province which has a contribution of 5,9% of GDP. Tourism in the district has been growing steadily at 3,4% per annum. As could be expected, the Ngwathe area has the highest levels of tourism at 9,7% of GDP, while the Metsimaholo area has only a 1,7% contribution to GDP. There is a potential for growth in the tourism sector and needs to be exploited, especially in terms of the domestic market.<sup>2</sup>

Parys & Region	Heilbron & Region	Koppies & Region	Vredefort & Region	Edenville & Region
<b>Resorts and Tourism - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <i>To promote the optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Ngwathe region, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</i> <sup>3</sup> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li><li>▪ Similar to the Fezile Dabi District, the region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the VDWHS, game ranches and guesthouses on farms</li><li>▪ Support Leisure Residential and Resort developments<sup>4</sup></li></ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ VDWHS</li><li>▪ Mimosa Gardens and Rotary Resort</li><li>▪ Vaal de</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Uniefees Dam</li><li>▪ As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Koppies Dam and Koppies Nature Reserve</li><li>▪ Rooipoort Dam private resort</li><li>▪ The R82 Anglo</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ VDWHS</li><li>▪ S5: Dome Interpretation Centre</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Old Limestone mine</li></ul>



<b>Parys &amp; Region</b>	<b>Heilbron &amp; Region</b>	<b>Koppies &amp; Region</b>	<b>Vredefort &amp; Region</b>	<b>Edenville &amp; Region</b>
<p>Grace, Island 13 and Parys Golf &amp; Country Estates</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Afri-dome equestrian centre</li> <li>▪ Scenic routes parallel to the Vaal River in the VDWHS (Koepel &amp; Vaal Eden Scenic Route)</li> </ul>	<p>Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The recently established <i>Francolin Creek Conservancy</i> (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 road) and Ghoya Africa Conservancies</li> </ul>	<p>Boer Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Rooiwal Battlefield (Koppies District)</li> <li>▪ Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district)</li> <li>▪ Bentonite mining area</li> </ul>		

## **Resorts and Tourism**

The area is not considered as a primary tourist destination, although it is increasingly becoming a favourite weekend destination. The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years. Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010. The industry needs to grow to levels as experienced in the province which has a contribution of 5,9% of GDP. Tourism in the district has been growing steadily at 3,4% per annum. As could be expected, the Ngwathe area has the highest levels of tourism at 9,7% of GDP, while the Metsimaholo area has only a 1,7% contribution to GDP. There is a potential for growth in the tourism sector and needs to be exploited, especially in terms of the domestic market. (LED Report, 2013).

Apart from the pristine natural landscapes, especially related to the VDWHS, The Free State Province played a significant role in the Anglo Boer War, resulting in a number of historically important tourist attractions. The Koppies area, for example, is becoming well known for various battlefields as tourist attractions.

- The R82 Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands, including the Rooiwal Battlefield, has been officially established.
- Improvements and upgrading of the battlefields were recently endeavoured.
- Other sites of significant value are the Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district).
- As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area), is considered as a significant tourist attraction.
- The area is not considered as a primary tourist destination, although it is increasingly becoming a favourite weekend destination. The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years. Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010.

### **Parys Area:**

Parys, due to its favourable location to Gauteng, is a popular weekend tourist destination rendering the urban area ideal for enhanced tourism development. The town additionally houses several sporting events. The Council will support feasible tourism developments, meeting legal guidelines and standards, to contribute to local economic development. Significant tourism facilities include:

- VDWHS with associated guest houses, venues, game farms and resorts

### **Resorts and Tourism**

- The Mimosa Gardens and Rotary Resort
- Vaal de Grace, Island 13 and Parys Golf & Country Estates
- Afri-dome equestrian centre and associated venues
- Two scenic routes were identified that run virtually parallel to the Vaal River in the Koepel area and comprise of extreme beauty, unique topography and landscape features. The routes also provide, in some instances, access to the Vaal River and are identified as the Koepel Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 264, 212, 80 & 713) and the Vaal Eden Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 1052 & 171).

### **Heilbron Area:**

- The Uniefees Dam.
- As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area).
- The Francolin Creek Conservancy and Ghoya Africa Conservancy (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 road).

### **Koppies Area:**

The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms. Other significant tourism resources proposed for enhancement are:

- Koppies Dam Resort and Nature Reserve
- Rooipoort Dam private resort
- The R82 Anglo Boer Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands,
- Rooiwal Battlefield (Koppies District)
- Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district)
- Bentonite mining area

### **Vredefort Area:**

- The Vredefort crater is the largest verified impact crater on Earth, more than 300 km across (when it was formed) and named after the town of Vredefort, situated near its centre. Although the crater itself has long since eroded away, the remaining geological structures at its centre are known as the Vredefort Dome or Vredefort impact structure, since 2005 located in the VDWHS.

### **Resorts and Tourism**

- Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.
- The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.
- There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Vredefort *per se*, although the town is closely related to the VDWHS and

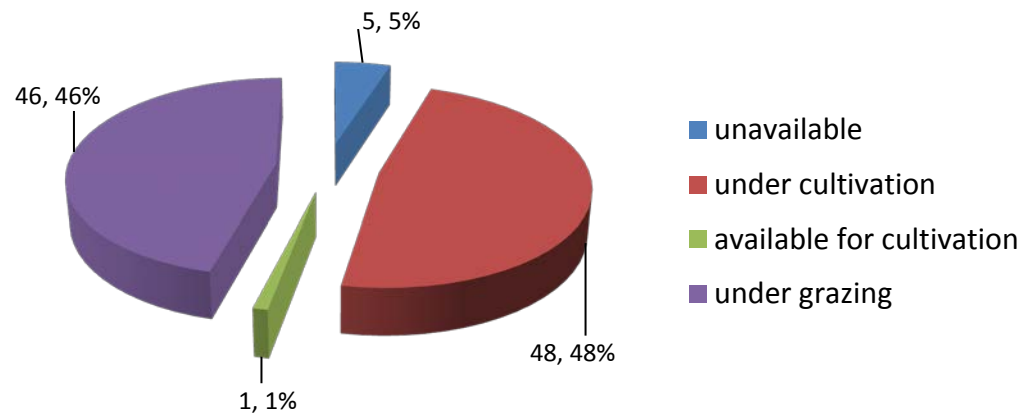
#### **Edenville Area:**

- There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Edenville and its immediate surroundings. A possibility exists to provide a small tourist facility/ view point at an old exploited lime mine.
- Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.
- Specific reference is also made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.

## C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

The region accommodates predominantly agricultural related activities. Only a restricted percentage of the region is unavailable for agriculture purposes (5%). A fairly significant portion of the region (48%) is currently under cultivation, which is attributed to the average rainfall in the area and the general availability of water for irrigation purposes.

**Figure 7**  
**Average Application of Agricultural Land : Fezile Dabi Region**



- The only formally developed irrigation scheme exists adjacent Koppies
- Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, and Irrigation Schemes etc.)
- The Free State Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (during 2009) in “*A Study to Investigate Opportunities for Value Add Agriculture in the Free State Province*”, identified the following significant agriculture practises for the Northern Free State Region, the most agricultural active region in the province:

- Soya Beans (dairy replacement production/products)
- Sunflower (biofuel, oil and secondary products i.e. margarine, mayonnaise etc. such as the currents refinery at Villiers)
- Cattle Farming (primary production in the north-eastern Free State, feedlots and diversify products)
- Game Farming (venison and biltong products, secondary tourism)
- Limited opportunities for poultry abattoirs(area currently comprises several abattoirs and market deemed saturated)
- Niche Sector : honey production
- Current restrictions on the alteration of natural veldt into cultivated fields should be adhered to
- Subdivisions to riparian properties must ensure a minimum waterfront of 100 m for subdivisions and the remainder
- Subdivisions of agricultural land will be considered for formal development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments*<sup>5</sup> according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas Guidelines*

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>Virtually, the larger part of the region that is suitable for cultivation is being utilised (48%) and only 1% could still be developed for that purpose. Stock farming (46%) is mainly extensive, focussing on grazing and dairy farming. It can generally be determined that the region is developed to its optimum with regard to agriculture and future development of this sector is thus not foreseen.</p>	<p>Only 1% of the study area is not optimally utilised for cultivation or grazing that provides future potential for agricultural purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, etc).</li> <li>▪ Small-scale farming is relatively latent and potential exists to provide in agricultural smallholdings for certain urban areas.</li> </ul> <p>Existing smallholdings, serviced by the</p>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	irrigation scheme at Koppies, should be investigated to determine how it can be utilised more effectively and productively and to possibly re-establish small scale farmers on economically viable smallholdings.

<b><u>Urban Area</u></b>	<b><u>Land to be Acquired</u></b>
Parys Area	<p>Continual extension in a north-easterly direction will necessitate purchasing of additional commonage to the east of Tumahole and Schonkenville. It is proposed to acquire:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Subdivisions 3 &amp; 4 of the farm Boschkop 220</li> <li>- The remainder of the farm Kliprug 344</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 of the farm Wildehondekop 396</li> <li>- Subdivision 9 of the Farm Pistorius Rust 288</li> </ul>
Heilbron Area	<p>Long term urban extension of Phiritona will necessitate the purchasing of additional land, namely the farms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Weltevreden 257</li> <li>- Mayville 960</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 Modderfontein 122</li> </ul>
Vredefort Area	<p>Should future urban extensions on the commonage farms, Subdivisions 8 and 9 of the farm Vredefort 148 be considered, it will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (175 &amp; 147 Ha respectively). Specific farms have not been identified.</p>
Koppies Area	<p>The following commonage is urgently required as a consequence of urban extension on commonage land:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Rem and Sub 1 of the farm Lionriver 154</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 of the farm Goedverblyf 208</li> <li>- Plots 1017, 1018 &amp; 1019</li> </ul>

<b><u>Urban Area</u></b>	<b><u>Land to be Acquired</u></b>
Edenville Area	Future urban extensions on the commonage farm, Subdivision 1 of the farm Stilledal 53, will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (approximately 280 Ha).



## MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS ( INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS)

**Strategic Objectives:** Improve organizational cohesion and effectiveness

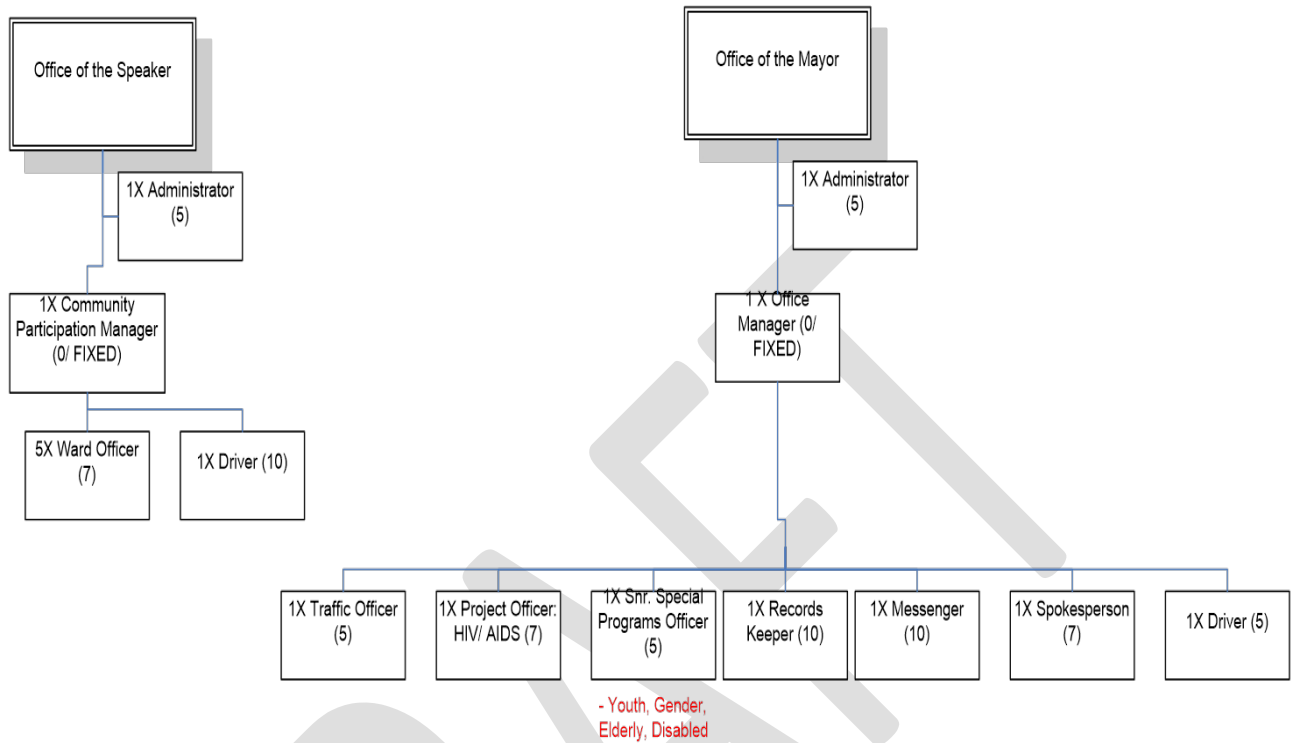
**Intended Outcome:** Improved organizational stability and sustainability

Status of the Institutional Structure and or Systems

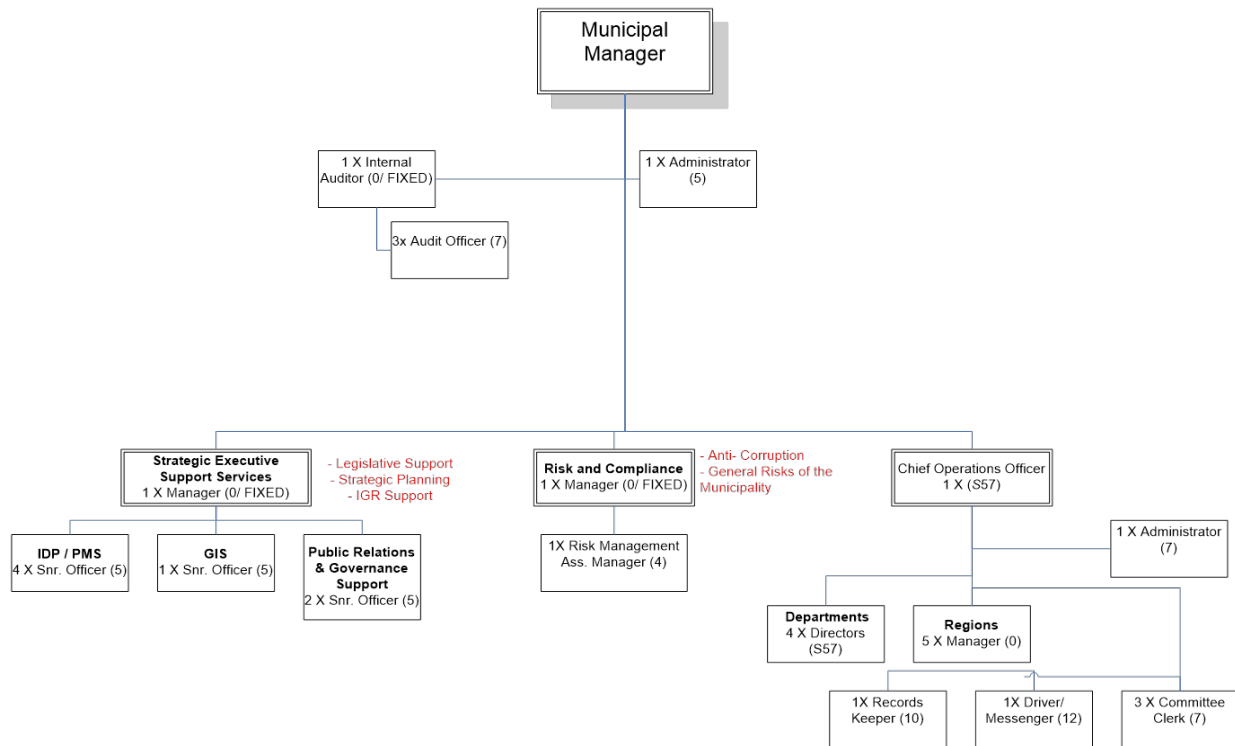
Structure and Systems	Availability	Status	Responsibility
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Information Technology (IT) Policy</li> </ul>	<b>Available</b>	Review	ADCOS, LDM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Availability of skilled staff</li> </ul>	Nlm IS IN THE PROCESS OF CONDUCTING SKILLS AUDIT	Currently focus is on Councillor, Finance and Water	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Organisational Structure</li> </ul>	Available	Review	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vacancy rate</li> </ul>	Available	21,5%	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Skills development plan</li> </ul>	Available	Submitted to LGSETA	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Human Resource Management strategy/plan</li> </ul>	Available	Implementation and due for review	DCOS & SESM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Individual Performance and Organisational Management Systems</li> </ul>	PMS Framework was adopted by Council in September 2014	Implementation	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring, evaluation and reporting processes and systems</li> </ul>	Unit not available	Function performed by SESM	

## Organisational Structure

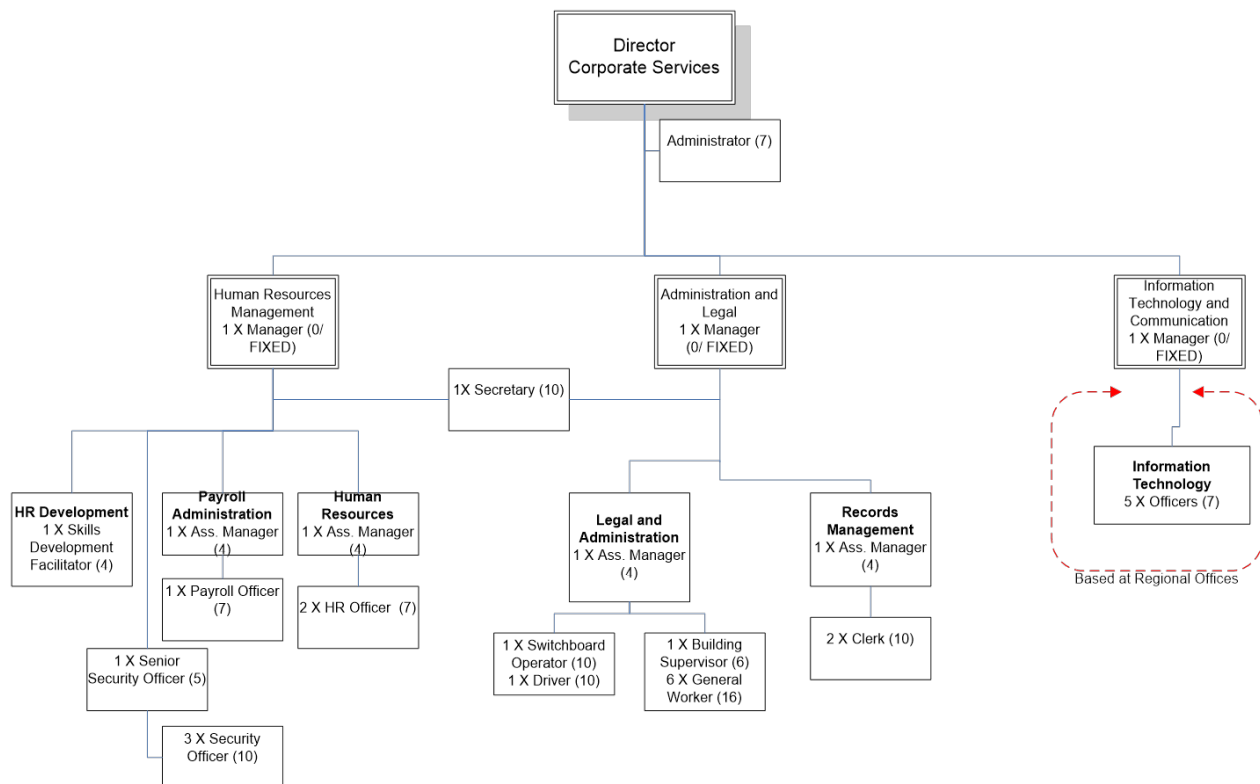
### Political Office



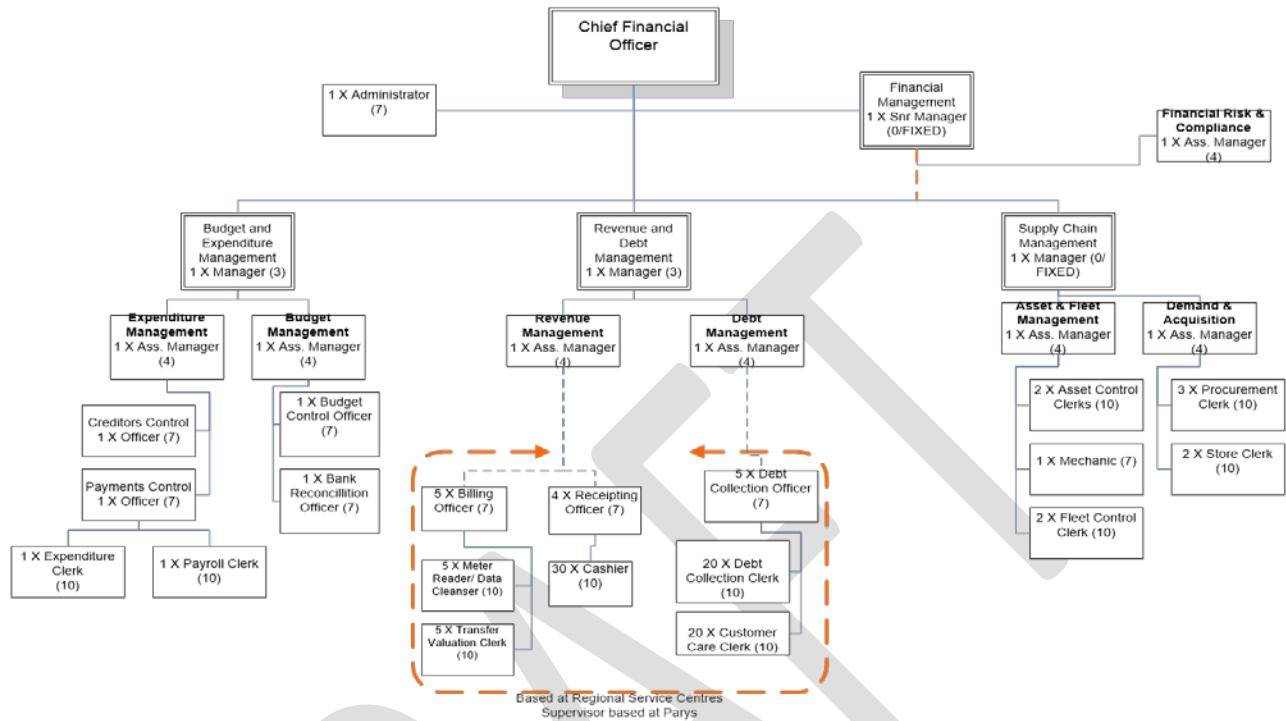
## Municipal Manager's office



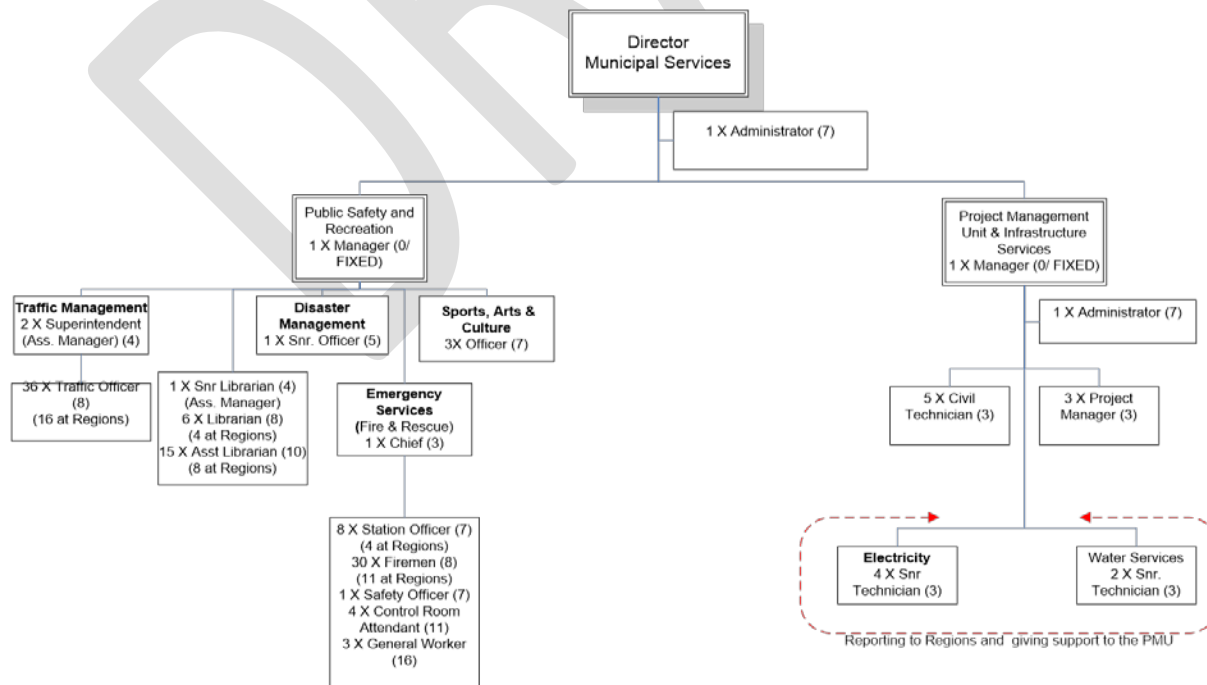
## Corporate Services



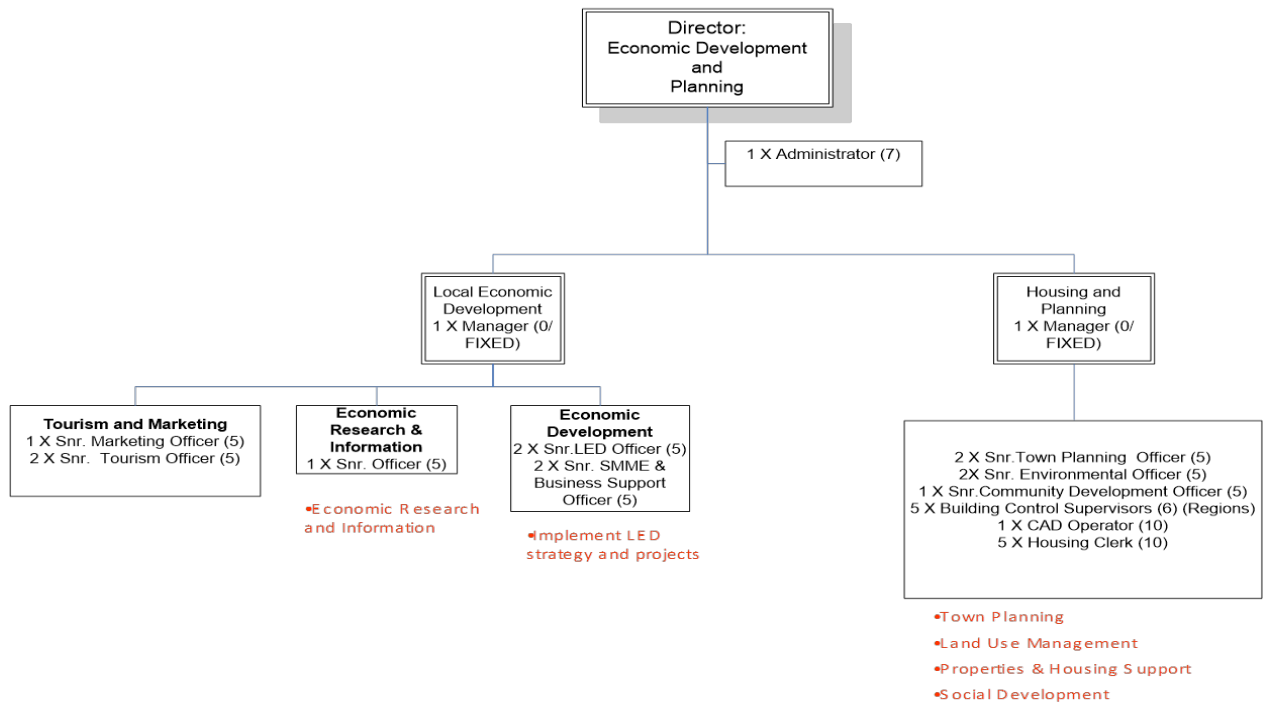
## Financial services



## Municipal Services



## Local Economic Development Services



## EMPLOYMENT EQUITY

1.1 Please report the total number of **employees** (including employees with disabilities) in each of the following **occupational levels**: Note: A=Africans, C=Coloureds, I=Indians and W=Whites

Occupational Levels	Male				Female				Foreign Nationals		Total
	A	C	I	W	A	C	I	W	Male	Female	
Top management	4	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	4
Senior management	10	0	0	1	5	0	0	0	0	0	17
Professionally qualified and experienced specialists and mid-management	15	0	0	2	4	0	0	1	0	0	22
Skilled technical and academically qualified workers, junior management, supervisors, foremen, and superintendents	37	0	0	9	2	0	0	0	0	0	59
Semi-skilled and discretionary decision making	102	2	0	5	29	0	0	4	0	0	168
Unskilled and defined decision making	227	3	0	2	34	2	0	1	0	0	328
<b>TOTAL PERMANENT</b>	286	5	0	19	127	2	0	6	0	0	598
Temporary employees	0	0	0	0	0		0		0	0	292
<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>	681	8	0	38	202	4	0	12	0	0	856

1.2 Please report the total number of **employees with disabilities only** in each of the following occupational levels: Note: A=Africans, C=Coloureds, I=Indians and W=Whites

[illegible]

## GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

**Strategic Objective:** Promote a culture of participatory and good governance.

**Intended outcome:** Entrenched culture of accountability and clean governance.

### Governance Structures:

Structure	Availability	Status	Responsibility
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Internal audit function.</li> </ul>	Available	1 Internal Audit Manager: Mr Moseme L; and 2 IA officers: Mr B Morabe and Me M Kojwana and 1 intern: Me M Maseko	MM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Audit committee.</li> </ul>	Available	Mr Nthimotse Mokhesi ( Chairperson); Mr Makgale Ntabe Godfrey Mahlatsi; Mr Ernest Mohlahlo; Me Jaby Vuyiswa Mikhethi	MM
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Oversight committee.</li> </ul>	Available	Chairperson: Cllr V De Beer, Members, Cllrs: K Khumalo, M Mofokeng, M Mofokeng, M Mofokeng, L Seabi, and S Vermaak.	Mayor and Council
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ward committees.</li> </ul>	Available	17 of 20 ward committees are functional	Speaker
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Council committees.</li> </ul>	Available	<u>INFRASTRUCTURE &amp; LED:</u> <u>Cllr Members:</u> Cllr D Vandisi, Cllr K Khumalo, Cllr M Ranthako <u>FINANCE &amp; BUDGET:</u> <u>Cllr Members:</u> Cllr G Mandelstam <u>URBAN, RURAL,</u>	Speaker



		<u>PLANNING &amp; HOUSING:</u> <u>Cllr Members:</u> Cllr N Mopeli, <u>CORPORATE SERVICES : Cllr</u> <u>Members:</u> Cllr K Serathi Cllr S Vermaak Cllr L Tladi Cllr M Ramabitsa Cllr Seabi  <u>SOCIAL &amp; COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT : Cllr</u> <u>Members:</u> Cllr C Serfontein,  <u>PUBLIC SAFETY &amp; TRANSPORT: Cllr</u> <u>Members:</u> Cllr A Schoonwinkel	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supply Chain Committees (SCM).</li> </ul>	Available	<u>Bid Specification:</u> Mr T Mpindo(chairperson) Me L Mbalo, Mr EC Pule, Mr M Pietersen, Mr ZC Ngobentombi  <u>Bid Adjudication:</u> Me Mkhuma(chairperson), Mr Z Majivolo, Mr P Tsekedi, Mr N Shabalala, Mr AB Netshivhodza, Mr P Kgotlakgomang  <u>Bid Evaluation:</u> Mr ST Mathibeli(chairperson), Me KD Mtimkhulu, Mr LA Marumo, Mr Henk Coetzer, Me P Manzi, Mr J Mosala	MM

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Youth Council</li> </ul>	Available	1.Kekeletso Maleho <u>chairperson;</u> ( Parys) 2.MaviesDeputy Chair ( Edenville) 3. Thapelo Mosoeu, Secretary ( Vredefort) 4.Dories Deputy Secretary ( Koppies) 5Buntiki, Coodinator (Heilbron) 6.Mzwandile Bam, Organiser ( Parys) 7. Malethola, Organiser; Heilbron <u>Additional Members:</u> 8.Babiky 9.Mbuyiselo, Coodinator; (Parys)	Mayor



## MAYORAL YOUTH COUNCIL

### Introduction

In 2014 June, the youth of Ngwatho municipality held a youth summit at Parys Mimosa Garden Resort, The youth came from all Ngwatho five towns which are Parys, Heilbron, Vredefort, Edenville and Koppies. There were more than 200

attendees in the summit. The summit was mainly in response to the National Youth Policy.

### **Purpose**

The purpose of the summit was to elect members of the executive youth council representing all five towns. One of the core responsibilities of the youth council is to advise the office of the mayor on youth development issues around all towns.

### **Composition**

The youth council consists of seven members with gender equity – 4 male and 3 female. The chairperson and secretary are males with females deputies, coordinator is male and organiser is female with male deputy. All these members come from all five different towns. Edenville (1), Parys (2), Heilbron (1), Koppies (1) and Heilbron (2). The members are indicated here above.

### Management and Operational Systems:

Systems	Availability	Status	Responsibility
• Complaints Management System.	Available	Initiation stage	ACFO & ADCOS
• Fraud Prevention Plan.	Available	Draft Stage	ARCM
• Communication strategy.	Available	Draft Stage	CO
• Stakeholder Mobilization Strategy / Public Participation Strategy.	Available	Review stage	Public Participation Manager
• Internal Audit Charter	Available	Adopted by Audit Committee	IAM
• GIS	Available	Shared Services through Mr Humbulani's office	IT Section

❖ The Municipality is actively involved in the following IGR Fora:

**a. District**

1. DCF,
2. Speaker's forum (Political & Technical)
3. Technical IGR,
4. MM's Forum,
5. MTAS/ M & E Forum,
6. IDP Manager's Forum,
7. LED Manager's Forum;
8. IT steering Committee;
9. Skills Development Facilitator's Forum;
10. Water Sector Forum;
11. Energy Forum;
12. PPO's Forum (Steering Committee);
13. Corporate Services Forum

**b. Provincial**

1. PCF;
2. MM's Forum;
3. IDP Manager's Forum,
4. LED Manager's Forum;
5. Skills Development Facilitator's Forum
6. PPO's Forum (Steering Committee)
7. MIG Forum
8. Revenue Enhancement Committee.

## Council and Council committees Meeting Schedule

LIEBENBERGSTREK

PARYS

9585



### SCHEDULE FOR DATES AND TIMES FOR MEETINGS FROM JAN 2015 – DEC 2015

MON TH	LLF		CORP SERVICE S		PUBLIC SAFETY & TRANSP ORT		URBAN, RURAL PLAN & HOUSIN G		SOCIAL & COMMU NITY		INFRA & LED		FINANCE & BUDGET		EXCO		COUNCIL	
	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E	DA TE	TIM E
<b>JAN</b>	20	10H 00	20	14H 00	21	10H 00	22	10H 00	23	10H 00	15	10H 00	21	10H 00	27	10H 00	25	11H 00
<b>FEB</b>	09	10H 00	09	14H 00	11	10H 00	12	10H 00	10	10H 00	13	10H 00	17	10H 00	26	10H 00		
<b>MAR CH</b>	09	10H 00	09	14H 00	11	10H 00	12	10H 00	13	10H 00	16	10H 00	17	10H 00	26	10H 00	31	11H 00
<b>APRI L</b>	14	10H 00	14	14H 00	09	10H 00	13	10H 00	16	10H 00	21	10H 00	16	10H 00	23	10H 00		
<b>MAY</b>	05	10H 00	05	14H 00	07	10H 00	11	10H 00	12	10H 00	06	10H 00	19	10H 00	21	10H 00	29	11H 00

<b>JUN E</b>	05	10H 00	05	14H 00	08	10H 00	09	10H 00	11	10H 00	12	10H 00	18	10H 00	25	10H 00		
<b>JUL Y</b>	03	10H 00	03	14H 00	07	10H 00	09	10H 00	13	10H 00	14	10H 00	16	10H 00	23	10H 00		
<b>AUG</b>	04	10H 00	04	14H 00	13	10H 00	17	10H 00	18	10H 00	20	10H 00	19	10H 00	24	10H 00		
<b>SEP</b>	04	10H 00	04	14H 00	08	10H 00	10	10H 00	16	10H 00	14	10H 00	15	10H 00	17	10H 00	29	11H 00
<b>OCT</b>	09	10H 00	09	14H 00	13	10H 00	15	10H 00	19	10H 00	20	10H 00	21	10H 00	22	10H 00		
<b>NOV</b>	06	10H 00	06	14H 00	10	10H 00	12	10H 00	16	10H 00	17	10H 00	18	10H 00	24	10H 00		
<b>DEC</b>	07	10H 00															10	11H 00

### Audit Committee Schedule

1 <sup>st</sup> Quarter	1 <sup>st</sup> Special Audit Committee Meeting	27 August 2014	Wednesday
2 <sup>nd</sup> Quarter	1 <sup>st</sup> Ordinary Audit Committee Meeting	01 December 2014 May 2014	Monday
3 <sup>rd</sup> Quarter	2 <sup>nd</sup> Ordinary Audit Committee Meeting	08 April 2015	Wednesday
4 <sup>th</sup> Quarter	3 <sup>rd</sup> Ordinary Audit Committee Meeting	15 June 2015	Monday
Special Meeting – for reviewing of AFS 2014/15		03 August 2015	Monday

### **Oversight Committee Schedule**

<b>Meeting</b>	<b>Purpose</b>	<b>Date</b>
Council meeting	Establishment of the Oversight committee	6 <sup>th</sup> February 2015
Public Meetings	Consultation on the Annual Report	5 <sup>th</sup> March 2015
		10 <sup>th</sup> March 2015
Committee Meeting	Prepare the oversight report	31 <sup>st</sup> March 2015
		10 <sup>th</sup> April 2015
Council Meeting	Consider oversight report	14 <sup>th</sup> April 2014

## PRIORITY OVERVIEW

**The following table is a summarised version of the wards priorities to determine the direction to which resources should be channelled**

[illegible]



**For direct and detailed Ward Priorities please refer to the ward profiles for each ward**

**Prioritisation Process**

<b>Top Five Priorities as per totals:(in terms of Municipal functions)</b>	<b>MTSF TARGETS FOR 2019</b>
1. Electricity	Increase in the percentage of households with access to a functional water service from 85% in 2013 to 90% by 2019.
2. Water	<input type="checkbox"/> Increase in the percentage of households with access to a functional sanitation service from 84% in 2013 to 90% by 2019, including elimination of bucket sanitation in the formal areas.
3. Roads	<input type="checkbox"/> 1.4 million additional households to be connected to the grid between 2014 and 2019, and 105 000 additional non-grid connections.
4. Job Opportunities	<input type="checkbox"/> Income support to the unemployed through expansion of the Community Work  Programme to reach 1 million participants in 2019. <input type="checkbox"/> An increase in the level of public trust and confidence in local government from 51% in 2012 to 65% in 2019, as measured by the

	IPSOS survey.
5. Change of Ownership	<input type="checkbox"/> An improvement in overall municipal audit outcomes, with at least 75% of municipalities receiving unqualified audits by 2019.
	Citizen participation in local government processes will continue to be promoted.
	Cooperative governance arrangements will be strengthened to better support and empower municipalities.
	A long-term approach will be taken to skills development and capacity building for the local government sector.
	Institutional problems will be addressed to improve the quality of municipal administrative and management practices including human resources and recruitment practices, supply chain and financial management, and anticorruption initiatives.

**NB. DESPITE THE ABOVE, HOUSING REMAINS NO 1 A NEED IN MOST WARD**

## FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY

**Strategic Objective:** To improve overall financial management in the municipalities by developing and implementing appropriate financial management policies, procedures and systems

**Intended Outcome:** Improved financial management and accountability

Structure/ System	Availability	Status	Responsibility
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tariff policies</li> </ul>	Available	Reviewal of draft tariff policy to be tabled on the 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2015.	<b>ACFO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rates policies</li> </ul>	Available	Reviewal of draft Rates policy to be tabled on the 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2015.	<b>ACFO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SCM policy – staffing</li> </ul>	Available	SCM unit established, it consists of an Acting Supply Chain Manager and 4 officers.	<b>ACFO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Staffing of the Finance units</li> </ul>	Available	NLM consists of 3 units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- SCM</li> <li>- Budget and Expenditure</li> <li>- Revenue and Debt Collection</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payment of creditors</li> </ul>	Available	The municipality is still unable to pay its creditors within 30 days as per the legislation due to financial constraints and poor planning.	<b>ACFO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Financial Management systems</li> </ul>	E Venus System is in use	The municipality is in the process in linking all towns to this system through the assistance of	<b>ACFO</b>

		TELKOM	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auditor General Findings – issues raised in the report if any:</li> </ul>	Available	<p>NLM received A disclaimer of an opinion for 2013-14 financial year:</p> <p>The opinion was mainly due to shortcomings from the municipality's side in the following areas;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊕ PPE;</li> <li>⊕ Payables from exchange transactions;</li> <li>⊕ Service charges;</li> <li>⊕ Consumer receivables from exchange transactions;</li> <li>⊕ Consumer receivables from non- exchange transactions;</li> <li>⊕ Unauthorized expenditure;</li> <li>⊕ Employee related cost;</li> <li>⊕ General expenses;</li> <li>⊕ Investment property;</li> <li>⊕ Bulk purchases;</li> <li>⊕ Depreciation and amortization;</li> <li>⊕ Impairment loss;</li> <li>⊕ Irregular expenditure;</li> <li>⊕ Commitments;</li> <li>⊕ Finance cost;</li> <li>⊕ Prior period errors;</li> <li>⊕ Cash flow</li> </ul>	<b>IAM</b>

		statement; ⊕ Distribution losses and ⊕ Inventories.	
--	--	--	--

## CHAPTER THREE (3 ): DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGIES AND OBJECTIVES

### Introduction

It is important that a municipal IDP correlate with National and Provincial intent so as to co-ordinate the work of all spheres of government. Such a coherent plan will ensure the improvement of the quality of life for all citizens. Issues of national and provincial importance should be reflected in the IDP of the municipality. For this reason this chapter commences with a brief overview of national and provincial intent that influence the integrated development plan and intended development objectives, strategies and priorities of the NLM.

#### 1. NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN (VISION FOR 2030)

*“The Vision Statement and the National Development Plan presented here is a step in the process of charting a new path for our country. By 2030, we seek to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. We seek a country wherein all citizens have the capabilities to grasp the ever-broadening opportunities available. Our plan is to change the life chances of millions of our people, especially the youth; life chances that remain stunted by our apartheid history.”*

(Trevor Manuel, MP, Minister in the Presidency, On behalf of the National Planning Commission)

### Creating a virtuous cycle of growth and development

It is possible to eliminate poverty and to sharply reduce inequality by 2030. The commission proposes that these be the guiding objectives of the national plan over the next 20 years. All elements of the plan must demonstrate their effect on these two goals.

The national plan has to attack the blight of poverty and exclusion, and nurture economic growth at the same time; creating a virtuous cycle of expanding opportunities, building capabilities, reducing poverty, involving communities in their own development, all leading to rising living standards. Such a virtuous cycle requires agreement across society about the contribution and sacrifices of all sectors and interests. This will translate into greater confidence and a greater field of opportunities for individuals and the country. Growth and development, and reducing poverty and inequality, are

the core elements of this virtuous cycle. Strong leadership throughout society, national consensus, social cohesion and a capable state are its key enablers.

### **Key Priority Areas and Proposals**

**TABLE 1: NDP – KEY PRIORITY AREAS AND PROPOSALS**

<b>Key priority areas</b>	<b>Proposals</b>
<b>An economy that will create more jobs</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Raise exports, focusing on those areas where South Africa already has the endowments and comparative advantage, such as mining, construction, mid-skill manufacturing, agriculture and agro-processing, tourism and business services.</li> <li>• Increase the size and effectiveness of the innovation system, and ensure closer alignment with companies that operate in sectors consistent with the growth strategy.</li> <li>• Improve the functioning of the labour market to help the economy absorb more labour, through reforms and specific proposals concerning dispute resolution and discipline.</li> <li>• Support small businesses through better coordination of activities in small business agencies, development finance institutions, and public and private incubators.</li> <li>• Improve the skills base through better education and vocational training.</li> <li>• Increase investment in social and economic infrastructure to lower costs, raise productivity and bring more people into the mainstream of the economy.</li> <li>• Reduce the regulatory burden in sectors where the private sector is the main investor, such as broadband Internet connectivity, to achieve greater capacity and lower prices.</li> <li>• Improve the capacity of the state to effectively implement economic policy.</li> </ul>
<b>Improving infrastructure</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The upgrading of informal settlements.</li> <li>• Public transport infrastructure and systems, including the renewal of the commuter rail fleet, supported by station and facilities upgrades to enhance links with road-based services.</li> <li>• The timely development of a number of key new</li> </ul>

Key priority areas	Proposals
	<p>water schemes to supply urban and industrial centres.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The construction of infrastructure to import liquefied natural gas and accelerated exploration activity to find sufficient domestic gas feedstocks (including exploration of shale and coal bed methane reserves) to diversify our energy mix and reduce our carbon emissions.</li> <li>• Procuring about 20 000 MW of renewable electricity by 2030, importing electricity from the region, decommissioning // 000MW of aging coal-fired power stations and accelerated investments in demand-side savings, including technologies such as solar water heating.</li> </ul>
<b>Transition to a low-carbon economy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support for a carbon budgeting approach, linking social and economic considerations to carbon reduction targets.</li> <li>• Introducing an economy-wide price for carbon complemented by a range of programmes and incentives to raise energy efficiency and manage waste better.</li> <li>• Promoting universal utilization of solar water heaters towards 2030.</li> <li>• Building standards that promote energy efficiency</li> <li>• Simplifying the regulatory regime to encourage renewable energy, regional hydroelectric initiatives and independent power producers.</li> </ul>
<b>An inclusive and integrated rural economy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create a million jobs through agricultural development based on effective land reform, and the growth of irrigated agriculture and land production.</li> <li>• Basic services that enable people to develop the capabilities they need to take advantage of economic opportunities throughout the country and so contribute to the development of their communities through remittances and the transfer of skills.</li> <li>• This includes ensuring food security and the empowerment of farm workers.</li> </ul>



Key priority areas	Proposals
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Industries such as agro-processing, tourism, fisheries and small enterprises should be developed where potential exists.</li> <li>Reforms required to deal with contested relationships between indigenous institutions and constitutional ones.</li> </ul>
<b>Reversing the spatial effects of apartheid</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing urban population density, while improving the liveability of cities by providing parks and other open spaces, and ensuring safety.</li> <li>Providing more reliable and affordable public transport with better coordination across municipality and between different modes.</li> <li>Moving jobs and investment towards dense townships that are on the margins of cities. Building new settlements far from places of work should be discouraged, chiefly through planning and zoning regulations responsive to government policy</li> </ul>
<b>Improving the quality of education, training and innovation</b>	<p>By 2030, South Africa needs an education system with the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High-quality early childhood education, with access rates exceeding 90 percent.</li> <li>Quality school education, with globally competitive literacy and numeracy standards.</li> <li>Further and higher education and training that enables people to fulfil their potential.</li> <li>An expanding higher education sector that is able to contribute towards rising incomes, higher productivity and the shift to a more knowledge-intensive economy.</li> <li>A wider system of innovation that links key public institutions (universities and science councils) with areas of the economy consistent with our economic priorities.</li> </ul>
<b>Quality health care for all</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>By 2030, the health system should provide quality care to all, free at the point of service, or paid for by publicly provided or privately funded insurance.</li> <li>The primary and district health system should provide universal access, with a focus on prevention, education, disease management and</li> </ul>

Key priority areas	Proposals
	<p>treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hospitals should be effective and efficient, providing quality secondary and tertiary care for those who need it.</li> <li>• More health professionals should be on hand, especially in poorer communities.</li> </ul> <p>Reform of the public health system should focus on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved management, especially at institutional level</li> <li>• More and better-trained health professionals</li> <li>• Greater discretion over clinical and administrative matters at facility level, combined with effective accountability</li> <li>• Better patient information systems supporting more decentralised and home-based care models</li> <li>• A focus on maternal and infant health care.</li> </ul> <p>Building a national health insurance system</p>
<b>Social protection</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An acceptable minimum standard of living must be defined as the social floor, including what is needed to enable people to develop their capabilities.</li> <li>• The retirement savings and risk benefit gap should be closed through reforms, including mandatory contributions, with consideration given to government subsidising these contributions for low income or periodic workers.</li> <li>• Social welfare services must be expanded, with more education and training for social work practitioners and a review of funding for non-profit organisations.</li> <li>• Public employment should be expanded to provide work for the unemployed, with a specific focus on the youth and women.</li> <li>• The integration of a number of databases in the social security environment with information from public employment programmes will enable communities to conduct social audits of government services, leading to better and more</li> </ul>

Key priority areas	Proposals
	<p>effective targeting of government's social and employment programmes.</p>
<p><b>Building safer communities</b></p>	<p>By 2030, people living in South Africa should feel safe and have no fear of crime. Women and children and all vulnerable groups should feel protected. They should have confidence in the criminal justice system to effectively apprehend and prosecute criminals who violate individual and community safety. The South African Police Service and metro police should be a professional institution staffed by skilled, disciplined, ethical individuals who value their work and serve the community.</p> <p>Achieving this vision requires targeted action in five key areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strengthening the criminal justice system</li> <li>• Making the police service professional</li> <li>• Demilitarising the police service</li> <li>• Building safety using an integrated approach</li> <li>• Building community participation in community safety</li> </ul>
<p><b>Reforming the public service</b></p>	<p>The plan proposes radical reforms in several areas. Parliament's oversight role should be enhanced, the political/administrative interface stabilised, the public service professionalised, skills upgraded and coordination improved. A more pragmatic approach to the intergovernmental system is required, recognising uneven capacity.</p> <p>To professionalise the public service, we propose that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heads of departments should report to a head of the civil service on administrative matters.</li> <li>• A hybrid system of appointing heads of departments should be introduced, incorporating both political and administrative elements.</li> <li>• A graduate recruitment programme and a local government skills development strategy should be introduced to attract high-quality candidates.</li> <li>• The Public Service Commission should be given the power to develop and monitor norms and</li> </ul>

Key priority areas	Proposals
	<p>standards for appointments at each level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A purely administrative approach should be adopted for lower-level appointments, with senior officials given full authority to appoint staff in their departments.</li> <li>•</li> </ul>
<b>Fighting corruption</b>	<p>In addition to political will, the fight against corruption has to be fought on three fronts: <i>deterrence, prevention</i> and <i>education</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Deterrence</i> helps people understand that they are likely to get caught and punished.</li> <li>• <i>Prevention</i> is about systems (information, audit and so on) that make it hard to engage in corrupt acts.</li> <li>• The social dimensions of corruption can only be tackled by focusing on values, through <i>education</i>. South Africa has some, but not all, of these elements in place.</li> </ul>
<b>Transforming society and uniting the country</b>	<p>A united people and a more cohesive society are not only national objectives; they are also means to eradicating poverty and inequality. Our strategy to enhance social cohesion is based on three themes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reducing poverty and inequality by broadening opportunity through economic inclusion, education and skills, and specific redress measures.</li> <li>• Promoting mutual respect, inclusiveness and cohesion by acting on the constitutional imperative that South Africa belongs to all who live in it, and that all are equal before the law.</li> <li>• Deepening the national appreciation of the responsibilities and obligations that citizens have towards one another.</li> </ul> <p>In addition to measures that promote social equity outlined elsewhere in the plan, we propose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Bill of Responsibility, developed by the Department of Basic Education and others, should be popularised, encouraging all South Africans to live the values of the Constitution.</li> <li>• A pledge based on the Constitution's preamble should be developed and used in school</li> </ul>

Key areas	priority	Proposals
		<p>assemblies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All South Africans should be encouraged to learn an African language and government programmes should work to make this a reality.</li> <li>• The Commission on Gender Equality and the Ministry for Women, Children and People with Disabilities should jointly set clear targets for the advancement of women's rights and report on progress in achieving this in an annual publication each August.</li> <li>• Employment equity and other redress measures should be made more effective by focusing on the environment within which capabilities are developed.</li> <li>• A review of black economic empowerment. While this remains the correct approach to broaden ownership and control over productive parts of the economy, the present model is not achieving the desired objectives quickly enough.</li> <li>• Redress measures in the workplace should focus on enterprise development, access to training, career mobility and mentoring.</li> </ul>

To make meaningful, rapid and sustained progress in reducing poverty and inequality over the next two decades, South Africa needs to write a new story. At the core of this plan is a new development paradigm that seeks to involve communities, youth, workers, the unemployed and business in partnership with each other, and with a more capable state. The aim is to develop the capabilities of individuals and of the country, and to create opportunities for all South Africans.

### Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF)

Informed by the 2014 Election Manifesto, Government adopted the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for the mandate period 2014 - 2019. The MTSF translates the Election Manifesto into a Government strategic framework. It elaborates on the Election Manifesto and identified the Ten (10) Strategic Priorities that serve as the basis for determining the Governments

Implementation Plans for the period to 2014. The basic thrust of the Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014 – 2019 (MTSF) is to improve the conditions of life of all South Africans and contribute to building a better Africa and a better world.

**The 2014-2019 electoral mandate focuses on the following priorities:**

- ☐ Radical economic transformation, rapid economic growth and job creation
- ☐ Rural development, land and agrarian reform and food security
- ☐ Ensuring access to adequate human settlements and quality basic services
- ☐ Improving the quality of and expanding access to education and training
- ☐ Ensuring quality health care and social security for all citizens
- ☐ Fighting corruption and crime
- ☐ Contributing to a better Africa and a better world

- ☐ Social cohesion and nation building.

*“The MTSF base document is meant to guide planning and resource allocation across all spheres of government. National and provincial departments in particular will need immediately to develop their five-year strategic plans and budget requirements, taking into account the medium-term imperatives. Similarly, informed by the MTSF and their 2006 mandates, **municipalities are expected to adapt their integrated development plans in line with the national medium-term priorities**”.*

**OUTCOME 9: A RESPONSIVE, ACCOUNTABLE, EFFECTIVE AND EFFICIENT LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

*“Problems at municipalities range from issues of poor governance and accountability, weak financial management, high vacancies in critical senior management posts and in a number of instances, an inability to deliver even a core set of critical municipal services efficiently and effectively.....All these problems combined have shattered the confidence of the majority of our people in our local government system.”*

**Vision for Outcome 9**

1. Develop a more rigorous, data driven and detailed segmentation of municipalities that better reflect the varied capacities and contexts within municipalities and lays the basis for a differentiated approach to

municipal financing, planning and support

2. Ensure improved access to essential services
3. Initiate ward-based programmes to sustain livelihoods
4. Contribute to the achievement of sustainable human settlements and quality neighbourhoods
5. Strengthen participatory governance
6. Strengthen the administrative and financial capability of municipalities
7. Address coordination problems and strengthen cross-departmental initiatives

#### MTSF TARGETS FOR 2014-2019

Such targets are incorporated under Prioritisation Process in the above chapter

### **THE NEW GROWTH PATH**

*“As a developmental state that is located at the centre of a mixed economy, we see our role as being to lead and guide the economy and to intervene in the interest of the poor, given the history of our country.*

*Informed by this responsibility, in 2010 we launched the New Growth Path framework and identified our job drivers as infrastructure development, tourism, agriculture, mining, manufacturing and the green economy. “*

- State of the Nation Address by His Excellency Jacob G Zuma, President of the Republic of South Africa on the occasion of the Joint Sitting of Parliament, 9 February 2012

Government, under the leadership of Minister Ebrahim Patel, on 23 November 2010 released the [Framework of the New Economic Growth Path](#) aimed at enhancing growth, employment creation and equity. The policy's principal target is to create five million jobs over the next 10 years. This framework reflects government's commitment to prioritising employment creation in all economic policies. It identifies strategies that will enable South Africa to grow in a more equitable and inclusive manner while attaining South Africa's developmental agenda.

Central to the New Growth Path is a massive investment in infrastructure as a critical driver of jobs across the economy.

- The framework identifies investments in five key areas namely: energy, transport, communication, water and housing. Sustaining high levels of public investment in these areas will create jobs in construction, operation and maintenance of infrastructure.
- The new growth path sees the infrastructure programme as a trigger to build a local supplier industry for the manufacture of the components for the build-programme.
- Specific measures, particularly changes to procurement policy and regulations, are identified to ensure that this is achieved. Risks include the still fragile global recovery; competition and collaboration with the new fast-growing economies; and competing interests domestically.

The New Growth Path identifies five other priority areas as part of the programme to create jobs, through a series of partnerships between the State and the private sector.

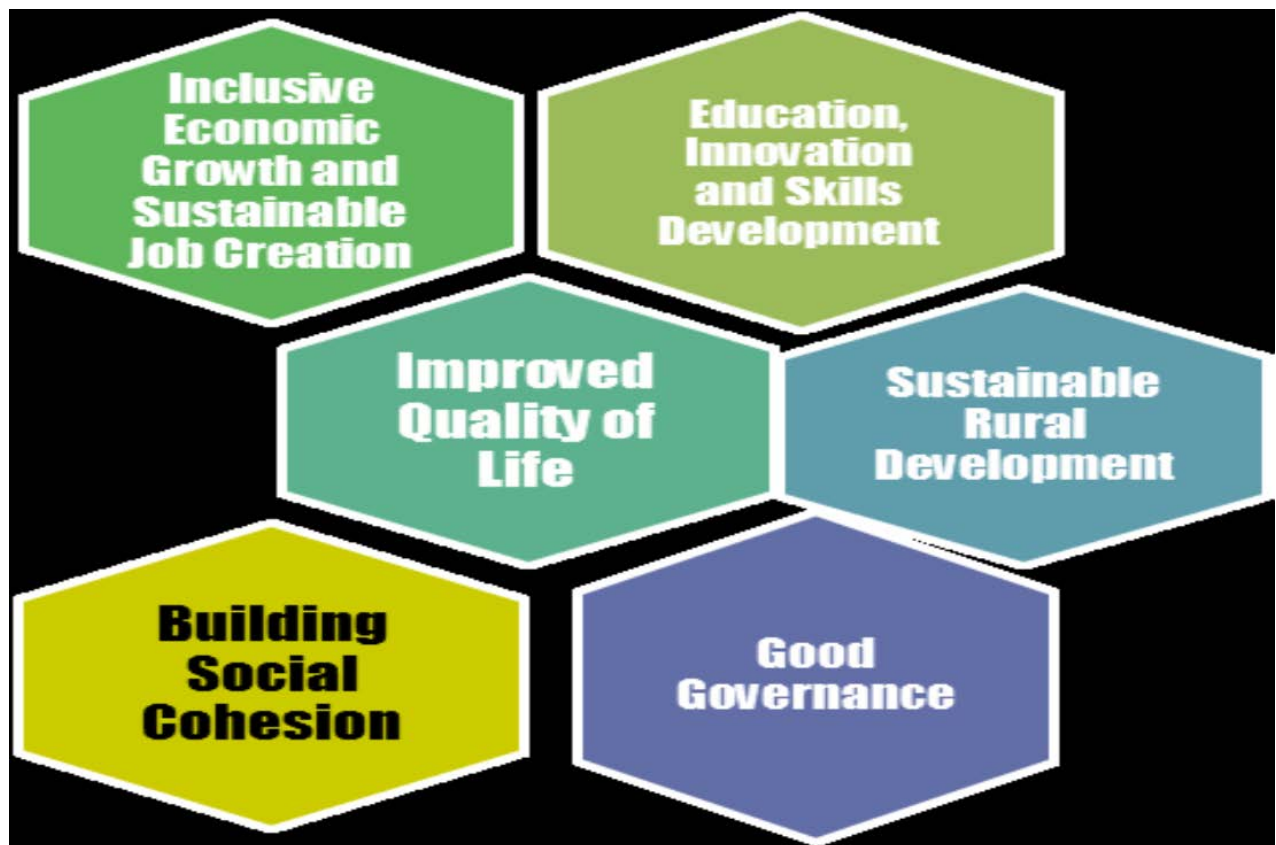
## **FREE STATE GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY (VISION 2030)**

The draft Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) – Free State Vision 2030 has been released.

The PGDS is a critical instrument to shape and coordinate the allocation of national, provincial and local resources, and private sector investment to achieve sustainable development outcomes based on provincial development needs and priorities.

The Free State Vision 2030, marks a break with the current five-year planning approach and is a reflective long-term strategic framework envisioned to create an environment to respond to the complexities that characterise the provincial development landscape. Underpinning the vision is the ability of government together with the people to map out the destiny of the province.





Free State Vision 2030: Pillars		Targets
Economic Restructuring, Growth and Employment Creation		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase the provincial growth rate from 2.1% in 2010 to 7% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the contribution of non-petro-chemicals sub-sectors to the manufacturing sector from 25% to 50%</li> <li>• Increase the contribution of the manufacturing sector from 14% to 28%</li> <li>• Increase the contribution of the agricultural sector from 3.8% to 10%</li> <li>• Increase the provincial contribution to the SA economy from 5% in 2010 to 15% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the GDP per capita income from R32 304 in</li> </ul>

Free State Vision 2030: Pillars	Targets
	<p>2010 to R110 000 in 2030</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce unemployment rate from 25.5% in 2011 to 6% by 2030</li> <li>• Increase the availability, affordability and speed of broadband from 256kbs in 2011 to at least 2mbs in 2030</li> </ul>
<b>Education, Innovation and Skills Development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eradicate micro-nutrient deficiencies in children under 18 months</li> <li>• Ensure that all children have at least two years pre-school education</li> <li>• Increase Grade R enrolment from 58% in 2010 to 80% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase Grade 12 pass rate with at least 50% from 70.7% in 2011 to 95% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase Grade 12 Mathematics and Science pass rate from 67% in 2010 to 90%</li> <li>• Increase the number of people with Grade 12 who are 15+ years from 23% in 2010 to 80% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the FET graduation rate to 75% in 2030</li> </ul>
<b>Improved Quality of Life</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the Gini-coefficient from 0.64 in 2010 to 0.3 in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the proportion of people with access to electricity from 90% in 2010 to 100%</li> <li>• Develop integrated, affordable and environmentally-friendly public transport system</li> <li>• Increase the proportion of people with access to water in their dwelling from 45% in 2009 to 100% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the proportion of people with access to flush or chemical toilets from 70% in 2009 to 100% in 2030</li> <li>• Reduce the housing informal settlement backlog from 23.4% in 2010 to 0% in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the number of people living closer to their places of work to 20% in 2030</li> <li>• Reduce infant mortality rate from 31.4% in 2010 to 7% in 2030</li> <li>• Promote health education as an essential part of the school curriculum</li> <li>• Reduce HIV prevalence from 22.6% of the population in</li> </ul>

Free State Vision 2030: Pillars	Targets
	<p>2010 to 14% in 2030 and ensure that the under-20 age group is largely HIV-free generation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase life expectancy from 46 in 2011 to 70 in 2030</li> <li>• Increase the TB cure rate from 71.3% in 2010 to 100% in 2030</li> <li>• Reduce the number of people living in poverty from 44.7% in 2010 to 0% in 2030</li> <li>• Reduce the number of municipalities with green-drop score from 17 in 2010 to 0 in 2030 and those with blue-drop score from 12 to 0</li> <li>• Increase the land dedicated to formal conservation from 1.6% of the land surface to 3% in 2030</li> <li>• Reduce property-related crimes from 1 020 per 100 000 in 2010 to 200 per 100 000 in 2030</li> </ul>
<b>Sustainable Rural Development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase the provision of quality basic services and invest in education, health care and public transport</li> <li>• Increase investment in agro-processing, tourism, aquaculture and crafts industries</li> <li>• Increase financial support to rural communities</li> <li>• Increase investment in irrigation technologies and implement conservation measures</li> <li>• Improve access to markets for small-scale farmers and rural cooperatives</li> </ul>
<b>Build Social Cohesion</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Popularize and promote rights and responsibilities embedded within the Constitution</li> <li>• Introduce African languages in all schools to facilitate understanding, tolerance, respect and diversity</li> <li>• Promote Sport and Recreation as an essential part of the education curriculum</li> <li>• Develop and embed shared values amongst communities</li> <li>• Strengthen participatory democracy to encourage citizenry expression to guide and influence behaviour</li> <li>• Increase socio-economic access and opportunities to all to eliminate any forms of prejudice and marginalization</li> <li>• Create a safe and secure environment for individuals</li> </ul>

## BACK TO BASICS

The core services that local government provides - clean drinking water, sanitation, electricity, shelter, waste removal and roads - are basic human rights, essential components of the right to dignity enshrined in our Constitution and Bill of Rights. Our vision of developmental local government was that it would be the building block on which the reconstruction and development of our country and society was built, a place in which the citizens of our country could engage in a meaningful and direct way with the institutions of the state. Local government is where most citizens interface with government, and its foundational ethos must be about serving people.

Yet despite our delivery achievements, it is clear that much needs to be done to support, educate and where needed, enforce implementation of local government's mandate for delivery. The transformation of the local government sector remains a priority for the current administration. Our National Development Plan makes it clear that meeting our transformation agenda requires functional municipalities and capable machinery at a local level that can create safe and healthy and economically sustainable areas where citizens and people can work, live and socialise.

It is therefore important to understand where we are, where we could be and what needs to be done to improve performance. Our goal is to improve the functioning of municipalities to better serve communities by getting the basics right.

COGTA has done a review of South Africa's 278 municipalities, which has revealed that we still have a journey to reach the ideal municipality we envisage. **The top third** municipalities have got the basics right and are performing their functions at least adequately. Within this group, there are a small group of top performers that are doing extremely well. In these municipalities there are innovative practices to ensure sustainability and resilience. This small core represents the desired (ideal) state for all our municipalities.

**The middle third** of municipalities are fairly functional, and overall performance is average. While the basics are mostly in place and the municipalities can deliver on the main functions of local government, we also find some areas of poor performance or decline that are worrying signs.

**The bottom third** of municipalities are frankly dysfunctional, and significant work is required to get them to function properly. Among others we find

endemic corruption, councils which don't function, no structured community engagement, and poor financial management leading to continuous negative audit outcomes. There is a poor record of service delivery, and functions such as fixing potholes, collecting refuse, maintaining public places or fixing street lights are not performed. While most of the necessary resources to render the functions or maintain the systems are available, the basic mechanisms to perform these functions are often not in place. It is in these municipalities that we are failing our people dramatically, and where we need to be intervening urgently in order to correct the decay in the system.

### **Back to Basics – a Programme for Change**

“We cannot solve today's problems with the same level of thinking that created the problems in the first place” (Albert Einstein). We need to do things differently if we want different solutions we must change our paradigm to focus on serving the people and not extra activities. The Constitution and other legislation spell out our responsibilities and tasks. Some municipalities perform them well, but others don't.

### **A differentiated approach**

Our transformational agenda recognizes that there are widely divergent levels of performance between different categories of municipalities – in terms of services, public engagement, good governance, financial management and technical capacity. Our aim is to encourage all municipalities to become positively functional centers of good governance. We need to set the proper standards for municipal performance.

Provincial Government programmes of support and enforcement

Basic Services: Creating decent living conditions

- Provinces to establish/strengthen Rapid Response Teams' capabilities to address challenges.
- Monitor implementation plans of municipalities.  
Good governance
- Provinces to intensify monitoring and support of Council meetings where there is evidence of dysfunctionality.
- MEC to take action in terms of the Code of Conduct for Councillors.  
Public Participation: Putting people first
- Assist municipalities in developing community engagement plans targeting hotspots and

- potential hotspots areas.
- Provincial sector departments to increase their visibility and support to Thusong Centres.
- Sound financial management
- National and Provincial CoGTAs and Provincial Treasuries to assess and address capacity deficiencies of municipalities to develop and implement Audit and Post Audit Action plans.
- Provincial CoGTAs and Treasuries to assess and address capacity deficiencies of municipalities to develop and implement procurement plans.
- Provincial Treasuries to support municipalities in the development and implementation of financial recovery plans.
- National and Provincial CoGTAs and Provincial Treasuries to assess the credit control and debt collection policies and by-laws for adequacy, and support the implementation thereof. Building Capable Institutions and Administrations
- Monitor and support the filling of vacancies with competent personnel.
- In collaboration with SALGA, monitor the functionality of local labour forums, identify weaknesses and intervene.
- National and provincial government to support municipalities to develop appropriate organograms.
- Develop and implement appropriate capacity building interventions.
- Develop guidelines on shared services and inter-municipal collaboration.

## **Municipal performance reporting activities**

### **Actions for immediate implementation:**

#### **4.1 Monthly reporting of Council activities**

- Every month, each municipal council must consider and then endorse a report on the degree to which it is meeting its governance obligations and the actual delivery of basic services being undertaken. The key elements in that report are listed below.

- This report must be publicised at a ward level

#### **4.2 Each councillor to report to Speaker on a monthly basis:**

- How they have made themselves available in communities to serve the needs of communities?
- How many people at community level they have served?
- When last they reported back on initiatives of council to an open public meeting in their community/ward?

#### 4.3 Speaker to report on a monthly basis to Council on:

- Dates of all Council related meetings held since the last Council meeting.
- Summary of ward committee meetings (including issues raised) held since the previous Council meeting. In the case of District Municipalities, an overview of all municipalities in terms of ward committee functioning must be provided.
- How many issues were brought to the attention of councillors and how these are being addressed?
- All actions being taken to address fraud and corruption.

#### 4.4 Mayor must report on a monthly basis to Council on:

- How many report backs to stakeholders the Mayor and/or mayoral/executive committee held to communicate policies, plans and progress of council?
- Number of meetings of Mayoral/Executive Committee held in the previous month and whether or not they were open to the public.
- Number of visits to hotspots / areas where there are breakdowns in community services and what was subsequently done.
- All activities in the previous month by councillors, on campaigns to improve the 'culture of payment for services' and 'against illegal connections, cable theft, manhole covers'.
- How many hours were spent in the previous month: (i) in committee/council meetings, including launches; (ii) in political caucus meetings, and (iii) in community engagements.

#### 4.5 Chief Whip must report on a monthly basis to Council on:

- The weekly meetings of the Mayor, Speaker, Chief Whip and Manager and caucus meetings ensuring that councillors are adequately informed of the municipality's programmes.

#### 4.6 Municipal Manager to report on a monthly basis to Council on:

- The overall operations of financial management and all reported instances of fraud and corruption, including actions being taken.
- The ongoing monitoring of all senior managers' performance agreements.
- All shortfalls in the competence standards of senior managers and what is being done to address such.
- Regular engagements held with organized labour.
- Number of meetings of senior management, how many issues were decided upon in those meetings and time spent in those meetings.
- Quarterly performance reviews of senior management and what action is taken where needed.
- Whether there are vacancies of senior management and professional/technical staff, and steps taken to fill positions.
- How many tenders were awarded and average length of time taken in such tenders: (i) from date of advert to date of final Evaluation Committee meeting and (ii) from date of Final Evaluation Committee to date on which award was sent to winning bidder.
- Total value of section 36 awards for the previous month.
- Total value of awards of tenders for the previous month.
- How many letters clarifying problems raised by communities were replied to during the previous month?
- Areas of protest and actions taken to address issues, including labour disputes, for the previous month.
- Infrastructure delivery the previous month, including: (i) how much was spent on the capital budget the previous month, (ii) how many electricity outages there were and the average length of time taken to fix them, (iii) How many sewerage spillages there were and how long it took to fix them, (iv) backlog delivery in housing, roads (km), water, electricity, sanitation that were addressed.

#### 4.7 Chief Financial Officer to report on a monthly basis to Council on:

- The monthly report required by National Treasury.
- Revenue collection and debtor management processes.
- Multiyear infrastructure investment and maintenance plans and budgets, including steps taken to build and improve the municipality's capacity to spend capital budgets.
- All post Audit Action Plans.
- Internal controls and what steps are taken to monitor these.



## **OUR VISION (Statement of intent)**

“To provide excellent and sustainable municipal services”

## **THE MISSION**

To provide quality and sustainable services in an efficient, effective & economic manner to all communities through the promotion of community participation, good governance & improved intergovernmental values.

## **CORE VALUES**

**Transparency**: We practice good corporate governance, openness and strive to understand the needs of our community at all times.

**Commitment**: We are dedicated to the services we render to the community. We are committed to realize the objective of local government in South Africa.

**Accountability**: We respect and value our people and ensure that we are accountable and responsible on all aspects of our work.

**Integrity**: We perform our work diligently with integrity and courage to ensure that our communities are able to trust and believe in us.

**Democracy**: We encourage adherence to the constitution of the country, by allowing everybody to exercise their rights.

## **CHAPTER FOUR (4): SECTOR PLANS**

At the core of the new system of local government is the ability of municipalities to coordinate and integrate programmes of other spheres and sectors operating in their space. This role is very critical given that all government programmes and services are delivered in municipal spaces. In this regard, the integrated development planning process becomes a vehicle to facilitate integrated development to ensure the attainment of local government outcomes contained in the White Paper on Local Government.

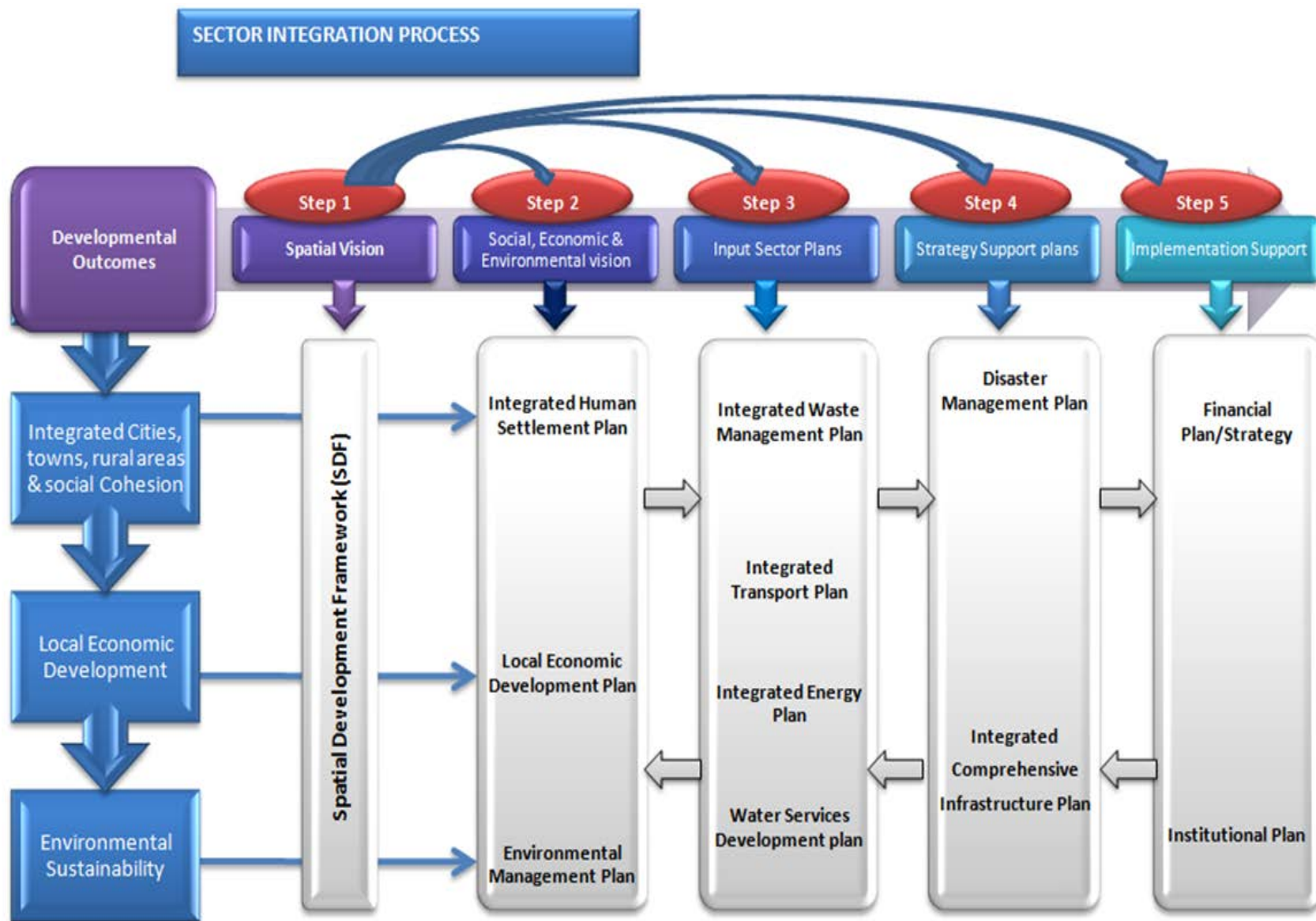
The approaches and plans to achieve these outcomes are contained in various national and provincial legislation and policy frameworks.

National departments through legislation and policies express government priorities, strategies, plans and programmes. The legislation and policies also require municipalities to develop sector specific plans to guide the rendering certain services.

For the purpose of this framework these sector plans are grouped in two (2) main categories, namely:

- sector plans providing overall development vision of the municipality and
- sector plans that are service-oriented.

The table below provides a summary of the various plans and how they are linked to each other



<b>Sector Plan</b>	<b>Available/ Not Available</b>	<b>Reviewed By</b>	<b>Responsibility</b>
Spatial Development Framework	Available		<b>DCS</b>
Comprehensive Infrastructure Plan (EPWP)	Not Available		<b><u>DTS</u></b>
LED Strategy	Available	<b>November 2014</b>	<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Integrated Waste Management Plan	Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Land Use Management Framework/Strategy			<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Land Reform Strategy			<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Integrated Transport Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Roads & Storm Water Master Plan	Available		
Disaster Management Plan	Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Environmental Management Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Water Service Development Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DTS</u></b>
Water Safety Plan	Available	<b>September 2014</b>	<b><u>DTS</u></b>
Energy Master Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DTS</u></b>

Electricity Master Plan	Available		<b><u>DTS</u></b>
Housing Sector Plan	Not available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
Health Sector Plan (HIV/AIDS Plan)	Available	<b>March 2015</b>	<b><u>MAYOR</u></b>
Organizational PMS	Available	<b>September 2014</b>	<b><u>SESM</u></b>
Institutional Programme	Available		<b><u>SESM</u></b>
Financial Plan	Available	<b>May 2014</b>	<b><u>CFO</u></b>
Solid Waste Master Plan	Available		<b><u>DTS</u></b>
Public Participation Policy and Plan	Available		<b><u>SPEAKER</u></b>
Communication Strategy	Available (draft)		<b><u>MAYOR</u></b>
Internal Audit Charter	Available	<b>June 2014</b>	<b><u>IAM</u></b>
Fraud Prevention Plan	Available		<b><u>ARCM</u></b>
HR Strategy	Available		<b><u>DCOS</u></b>
Work Skills Plan	Available	<b>March 2014</b>	<b><u>DCOS</u></b>
Skills Development Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DCOS</u></b>
Employment Equity Plan	Available		<b><u>DCOS</u></b>
Human Settlement Plan	Not Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>
National Tourism Sector Strategy	Available		<b><u>DCS</u></b>

## **CHAPTER FIVE (5); THE FINANCIAL PLAN**

### **Introduction**

The application of sound financial management principles for the compilation of the Municipality's financial plan is essential and critical to ensure that the municipality remains financially viable and that municipal services are provided sustainably, economically and equitably to all communities.

The Municipality's business and service delivery priorities were reviewed as part of this year's planning and budget process. Where appropriate, funds were transferred from low- to high-priority programmes so as to maintain sound financial stewardship. A critical review was also undertaken of expenditures on noncore items.

The Municipality has embarked on implementing a range of revenue collection strategies to optimize the collection of debt owed by consumers. Furthermore, the Municipality has undertaken various customer care initiatives.

National Treasury's MFMA Circular No. 74 and previous circulars were used to guide the compilation of the 2015/16 MTREF.

The main challenges experienced during the compilation of the 2015/16 MTREF can be summarized as follows:

- The ongoing difficulties in the national and local economy;
- Aging and poorly maintained water, roads and electricity infrastructure;
- The need to reprioritize projects and expenditure within the existing resource envelope given the cash flow realities and declining cash position of the municipality;
- The increased cost of bulk water and electricity (due to tariff increases from Rand Water and Eskom), which is placing upward pressure on service tariffs to residents. Continuous high tariff increases are not sustainable;
- Wage increases for municipal staff that continue to exceed consumer inflation, as well as the need to fill critical vacancies;
- Affordability of capital projects – Endless list of legitimate capital projects to address backlogs against limited resources to fund the capital projects; and

The following budget principles and guidelines directly informed the compilation of the 2015/16 MTREF:

- The 2015/16 Adjustments Budget priorities and targets, as well as the base line allocations contained in that Adjustments Budget were adopted as the upper limits for the new baselines for the 2015/16 annual budget;

- Intermediate service level standards were used to inform the measurable objectives, targets and backlog eradication goals;
- Tariff and property rate increases should be affordable and should generally not exceed inflation as measured by the CPI, except where there are price increases in the inputs of services that are beyond the control of the municipality, for instance the cost of bulk water and electricity. In addition, tariffs need to remain or move towards being cost reflective, and should take into account the need to address infrastructure backlogs;
- There will be no budget allocated to national and provincial funded projects unless the necessary grants to the municipality are reflected in the national and provincial budget and have been gazetted as required by the annual Division of Revenue Act;

In view of the aforementioned, the following table is a consolidated overview of the proposed 2015/16 Medium-term Revenue and Expenditure Framework:

Table 2 Consolidated Overview of the 2015/16 MTREF

	Adjustments Budget		Budget Year		Budget Year +1		Budget Year +2	
R thousands	2014/15		2015/16		2016/17		2017/18	
Total Operating Revenue	R	484 546	R	512 098	R	528 125	R	547 969
Total Operating Expenditure	R	587 461	R	656 732	R	692 852	R	729 573
<i>Surplus/ (Deficit) for the year</i>	R	-102 915	R	-144 634	R	-164 727	R	-181 604
Total Capital Expenditure	R	67 672	R	75 647	R	42 175	R	44 480

Total operating revenue has grown substantially by 5.7 per cent or R27.6 million for the 2015/16 financial year when compared to the 2014/15 Adjustments Budget. For the two outer years, operational revenue will increase by 3.1 and 3.8 per cent respectively.

Total operating expenditure for the 2015/16 financial year has been appropriated at R656.7 million and translates into a budgeted deficit of R102.9 million (excluding non-cash items, the municipality is budgeting for a surplus of R36.3 million). When compared to the 2014/15 Adjustments Budget, operational expenditure has increased by 11.8 per cent in the 2015/16 budget; this is largely due to the municipality budgeting for all posts as per the proposed organogram.

The capital budget of R75.6 million for 2015/16 is 11.8 per cent more when compared to the 2014/15 Adjustment Budget. It must be highlighted that the internally funded capital projects can only be undertaken as and when funds become available.

A substantial portion of the capital budget will be funded from National grants over MTREF Internally generated funds will contribute 42.3 per cent of capital expenditure in the 2015/16 financial year.

### **Operating Revenue Framework**

For Ngwathe Local Municipality to continue improving the quality of services provided to its citizens it needs to generate the required revenue. In these tough economic times strong revenue management is fundamental to the financial sustainability of the municipality. The reality is that we are faced with development backlogs and poverty. The expenditure required to address these challenges will inevitably always exceed available funding; hence difficult choices have to be made in relation to tariff increases and balancing expenditures against realistically anticipated revenues.

The municipality's revenue strategy is built around the following key components:

- National Treasury's guidelines and macroeconomic policy;
- Growth in the Municipal area and continued economic development;
- Sustainable revenue management, which aims to ensure a 80 per cent annual collection rate for property rates and other key service charges;
- Electricity tariff increases as approved by the National Electricity Regulator of South Africa (NERSA);
- Achievement of full cost recovery of specific user charges especially in relation to trading services;
- Determining the tariff escalation rate by establishing/calculating the revenue requirement of each service;
- The municipality's Property Rates Policy approved in terms of the Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004) (MPRA);
- The municipality's Indigent Policy and rendering of free basic services; and
- Tariff policies of the Municipality.



The following table is a summary of the 2015/16 MTREF (classified by main revenue source):

**Table 3 Summary of revenue classified by main revenue source**

Description	Ref	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	Current Year 2014/15				2015/16 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2015/16	Budget Year +1 2016/17	Budget Year +2 2017/18
R thousand	1										
<b>Revenue By Source</b>											
Property rates	2	68 562	48 723	42 923	51 297	51 297	51 297	-	56 633	59 918	63 094
Property rates - penalties & collection charges									-	-	-
Service charges - electricity revenue	2	70 468	132 624	126 136	145 557	145 557	145 557	-	154 676	163 094	172 320
Service charges - water revenue	2	31 208	67 638	134 474	40 111	40 211	40 211	-	42 543	45 010	47 401
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2	28 433	30 205	25 998	37 057	37 057	37 057	-	41 343	43 741	46 276
Service charges - refuse revenue	2	24 757	25 692	29 084	35 148	35 148	35 148	-	37 186	39 343	41 624
Service charges - other		-			-	-	-		-	-	-
Rental of facilities and equipment		252	2 291		1 420	1 951	1 951		2 521	2 667	2 808
Interest earned - external investments		575	1 435		2 757	1 757	1 757		1 858	1 966	2 070
Interest earned - outstanding debtors		17 103	20 008		2 500	2 500	2 500		2 645	2 798	2 947
Dividends received		-	-		-	-	-		-	-	-
Fines		775	1 097		1 000	1 400	1 400		1 846	1 953	2 062
Licences and permits		-	-		1	1	1		1	1	1
Agency services		-	-		-	-	-		-	-	-
Transfers recognised - operational		163 319	156 259		163 765	163 765	163 765		162 761	159 080	158 359
Other revenue	2	2 137	1 728	180 408	3 074	3 905	3 905	-	8 085	8 554	9 008
Gains on disposal of PPE											
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		<b>407 589</b>	<b>487 698</b>	<b>539 021</b>	<b>483 685</b>	<b>484 546</b>	<b>484 546</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>512 098</b>	<b>528 125</b>	<b>547 969</b>

**Table 4 Percentage growth in revenue by main revenue source**

Description	Ref	Current Year 2014/15		2015/16 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework					
		Adjusted Budget	%	Budget Year 2015/16	%	Budget Year +1 2016/17	%	Budget Year +2 2017/18	%
<b>R thousand</b>	<b>1</b>								
<b>Revenue By Source</b>									
Property rates	2	51 297	11%	56 633	11%	59 918	11%	63 094	12%
Property rates - penalties & collection charges				–		–		–	
Service charges - electricity revenue	2	145 557	30%	154 676	30%	163 094	31%	172 320	31%
Service charges - water revenue	2	40 211	8%	42 543	8%	45 010	9%	47 401	9%
Service charges - sanitation revenue	2	37 057	8%	41 343	8%	43 741	8%	46 276	8%
Service charges - refuse revenue	2	35 148	7%	37 186	7%	39 343	7%	41 624	8%
Service charges - other		–		–		–		–	
Rental of facilities and equipment		1 951	0%	2 521	0%	2 667	1%	2 808	1%
Interest earned - external investments		1 757	0%	1 858	0%	1 966	0%	2 070	0%
Interest earned - outstanding debtors		2 500	1%	2 645	1%	2 798	1%	2 947	1%
Dividends received		–		–		–		–	
Fines		1 400	0%	1 846	0%	1 953	0%	2 062	0%
Licences and permits		1	0%	1	0%	1	0%	1	0%
Agency services		–		–		–		–	
Transfers recognised - operational		163 765	34%	162 761	32%	159 080	30%	158 359	29%
Other revenue	2	3 905	1%	8 085	2%	8 554	2%	9 008	2%
Gains on disposal of PPE									
<b>Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)</b>		<b>484 546</b>		<b>512 098</b>		<b>528 125</b>		<b>547 969</b>	

In line with the formats prescribed by the Municipal Budget and Reporting Regulations, capital transfers and contributions are excluded from the operating statement, as inclusion of these revenue sources would distort the calculation of the operating surplus/deficit.

Revenue generated from rates and services charges forms a significant percentage of the revenue basket for the Municipality. Rates and service charge revenues comprise more than half the total revenue mix. In the 2014/15 financial year, revenue from rates and services charges totalled R309.2 million or 63.9 per cent.

This increases to R331.3 million, R349.9 million and R369.5million in the respective financial years of the MTREF. A notable trend is the increase in the total percentage revenue generated from rates and services charges which increases from 63.9 per cent in 2014/15 to 64.7 per cent in 2015/16. This growth can be mainly attributed to the increased share that the sale of electricity contributes to the total revenue mix, which in turn is due to rapid increases in the Eskom tariffs for bulk electricity. The above table excludes revenue foregone arising from discounts and rebates associated with the tariff policies of the Municipality.

‘Other revenue’ which consists of various items such as income received from permits and licenses, building plan fees, connection fees, transport fees and advertisement fees. Departments have been urged to review the tariffs of these items on an annual basis to ensure they are cost reflective and market related.

Operating grants and transfers totals R162.8 million in the 2015/16 financial year and steadily decreases to R158.4 million by 2017/18. Note that the year-on-year decrease for the 2015/16 financial year is 0.6 per cent. The following table gives a breakdown of the various operating grants and subsidies allocated to the municipality over the medium term:

**Table 5 Operating Transfers and Grant Receipts**

Description	Ref	Dec-11	2012/13	2013/14	Current Year 2014/15			2014/15 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year 2015/16	Budget Year +1 2016/17	Budget Year +2 2017/18
R thousand										
RECEIPTS:	1, 2									
<u>Operating Transfers and Grants</u>										
National Government:		141 013	157 276	159 631	163 765	163 765	163 765	162 761	159 080	158 359
Local Government Equitable Share		137 311	153 983	156 191	160 231	160 231	160 231	159 059	156 313	155 181
EPWP Incentive		1 462	993	1 000	1 000	1 000	1 000	1 097	–	–
Municipal Systems Improvement		790	800	890	934	934	934	930	957	1 033
Finance Management		1 450	1 500	1 550	1 600	1 600	1 600	1 675	1 810	2 145
Other transfers/grants [insert description]										
Total Operating Transfers and Grants	5	141 013	157 276	159 631	163 765	163 765	163 765	162 761	159 080	158 359

Tariff-setting is a pivotal and strategic part of the compilation of any budget. When rates, tariffs and other charges were revised, local economic conditions, input costs and the affordability of services were taken into account to ensure the financial sustainability of the Municipality.

The percentage increases of both Eskom and Rand Water bulk tariffs are far beyond the mentioned inflation target. Given that these tariff increases are determined by external agencies, the impact they have on the municipality's electricity and in these tariffs are largely outside the control of the Municipality. Discounting the impact of these price increases in lower consumer tariffs will erode the Municipality's future financial position and viability.

It must also be appreciated that the consumer price index, as measured by CPI, is not a good measure of the cost increases of goods and services relevant to municipalities. The basket of goods and services utilised for the calculation of the CPI consist of items such as food, petrol and medical services, whereas the cost drivers of a municipality are informed by items such as the cost of remuneration, bulk purchases of electricity and water, petrol, diesel, chemicals, cement etc. The current challenge facing the municipality is managing the gap between cost drivers and tariffs levied, as any shortfall must be made up by either operational efficiency gains or service level reductions. Within this framework the municipality has undertaken the tariff setting process relating to service charges as follows.

### **Property Rates**

Property rates cover the cost of the provision of general services. Determining the effective property rate tariff is therefore an integral part of the municipality's budgeting process.

National Treasury's MFMA Circular No. 72 deals, inter alia with the implementation of the Municipal Property Rates Act, with the regulations issued by the Department of Co-operative Governance. These regulations came into effect on 1 July 2009 and prescribe the rate ratio for the non-residential categories, public service infrastructure and agricultural properties relative to residential properties to be 0.25:1. The implementation of these regulations was done in the previous budget process and the Property Rates Policy of the Municipality has been amended accordingly.

The following stipulations in the Property Rates Policy are highlighted:

- The first R30 000 of the market value of a property used for residential purposes is excluded from the rate-able value (Section 17(h) of the MPRA). In addition to this rebate, a further 10 per cent reduction on the market value of a property will be granted in terms of the Municipality's own Property Rates Policy;
- 100 per cent rebate will be granted to registered indigents in terms of the Indigent Policy;
- For pensioners, physically and mentally disabled persons, a maximum/total rebate of 100 per cent (calculated on a sliding scale) will be granted to owners of rate-able property if the total gross income of the applicant and/or his/her spouse, if any, does not to exceed the amount equal to twice the annual state pension as approved by the National Government for a financial year. In this regard the following stipulations are relevant:
  - occupy the property as his/her normal residence;
  - be at least 60 years of age or in receipt of a disability pension from the Department of Welfare and Population Development;
  - be in receipt of a total monthly income from all sources as annually determined by the municipality (including income of spouses of owner);
  - not be the owner of more than one property; and
  - provided that where the owner is unable to occupy the property due to no fault of his/her own, the spouse or minor children may satisfy the occupancy requirement.
- ii. Property owners must apply on a prescribed application form for a rebate as determined by the municipality. Applications must be accompanied by-
  - a certified copy of the identity document or any other proof of the owners age which is acceptable to the municipality;
  - sufficient proof of income of the owner and his/her spouse;
  - an affidavit from the owner;
  - if the owner is a disabled person proof of a disability pension payable by the state must be supplied; and
  - if the owner has retired at an earlier stage for medical reasons proof thereof must be submitted.
- The Municipality may award a 100 per cent grant-in-aid on the assessment rates of rate-able properties of certain classes such as registered welfare organizations, institutions or organizations performing

charitable work, sports grounds used for purposes of amateur sport. The owner of such a property must apply to the Chief Financial Officer in the prescribed format for such a grant.

The categories of rate-able properties for purposes of levying rates and the proposed rates for the 2015/16 financial year based on a 5.8 per cent increase from 1 July 2015 is contained below:

**Table 6 Comparison of proposed rates to levied for the 2015/16 financial year**

<b>Category</b>	<b>Current Tariff (1 July 2014)</b>	<b>Proposed tariff (from 1 July 2015)</b>
	<b>c</b>	<b>C</b>
Residential properties	0.0105	0.0111
State owned properties	0.0263	0.0278
Business & Commercial	0.0197	0.0209
Agricultural	0.0105	0.0111
Vacant land	0.0105	0.0111
Schools	0.0263	0.0278
Public service infrastructure	0.0105	0.0111

### **Sale of Water and Impact of Tariff Increases**

With the current water and electricity supply challenges facing the municipality and the country at large, since demand growth outstrips supply. National Treasury has in the past encouraged all municipalities to carefully review the level and structure of their water tariffs to ensure:

- Water tariffs are fully cost-reflective – including the cost of maintenance and renewal of purification plants, water networks and the cost associated with reticulation expansion;
- Water tariffs are structured to protect basic levels of service and ensure the provision of free water to the poorest of the poor (indigent); and

- Water tariffs are designed to encourage efficient and sustainable consumption.

Better maintenance of infrastructure, new dam construction and cost-reflective tariffs will ensure that the supply challenges are managed in future to ensure sustainability.

Although the municipality has increased the water tariffs by 5.8 per cent, actual growth in the anticipated revenue from the sale of water is 12 per cent; this is due to increased number in houses with water connection and the municipality's decision to stop the 6 kl subsidy given to non-indigents.

A tariff increase of 5.8 per cent from 1 July 2015 for water is proposed. This is based on input cost assumptions of the increase in the cost of bulk water (Rand Water), the cost of other inputs increasing at a higher percentage. In addition 6 kl water per 30-day period will only be granted free of charge to indigent residents.

A summary of the proposed tariffs for households (residential) and non-residential are as follows:



**Table 7 Proposed Water Tariffs**

<b>PART 1 : SUPPLY OF WATER</b>										
that as from 1 July 2015, the tariffs for the supply of water be determined as follows and are subjected to VAT:										
<b>Schedule (b) Water Tariffs excluding VAT</b>		<b>Parys/Heibron/Vredefort/Koppies/Edenville</b>								
	<b>Tariff Codes Services</b>		<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>	<b>2014/2015</b>	<b>2015/2016</b>	<b>VAT%</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Residential/Church - Conv	BW001	<b>Basic</b>	29,94	32,00	33,92	35,82	37,89	40,09	5,61	45,70
0 - 6		<b>Free Cons</b>								
7 - 20										
21 - 30	WA001	<b>0 - 20</b>	4,28	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
31 - >	WA001	<b>21 - 30</b>	4,55	5,01	6,95	7,34	7,76	8,21	1,15	9,36
	WA001	<b>31 - &gt;</b>	4,89	5,38	7,05	7,44	7,87	8,33	1,17	9,50
Business (per Business)	BW002	Basic	96,15	102,78	108,94	115,04	121,70	128,76	18,03	146,78
	WA002	Cons	3,48	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
Without meters	BW002	Basic	96,15	102,78	108,94	115,04	121,70	128,76	18,03	146,78
			-							
Bulk/Government/Schools	BW004	Basic	96,14	102,78	108,93	115,03	121,69	128,75	18,03	146,78
	WA004	Cons	4,27	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
			-							
Industrial	BW009	Basic	62,67	66,99	71,01	74,98	79,32	83,92	11,75	95,67
	WA009	Cons	3,48	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
			-							
Small Business(Business from Home)	BW010	Basic	47,70	50,99	54,05	57,07	60,38	63,88	8,94	72,82
	WA015	Cons	3,56	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
			-							
Municipal	WA005	Cons	5,30	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
			-							
Sewerage	WA013	Cons	1,23	3,82	4,05	4,28	4,52	4,79	0,67	5,46
			-							
Unpurified	WA014	Cons	1,72	3,82	4,05	4,28	4,52	4,79	0,67	5,46
			-							
Sports Organisations	WA007	Cons	3,25	6,46	6,85	7,23	7,65	8,09	1,13	9,23
			-							
Vacant stands	BW000	Basic	63,60	67,99	72,06	76,10	80,50	85,17	11,92	97,10

### **Sale of Electricity and Impact of Tariff Increases**

A proposed 12.2 per cent increase in the Eskom bulk electricity tariff to municipalities will be effective from 1 July 2015.

Considering the Eskom increases, the consumer tariff had to be increased by 12.2 per cent. Furthermore, it should be noted that given the magnitude of the tariff increase, it is expected to depress growth in electricity consumption, which will have a negative impact on the municipality's revenue from electricity.

Registered indigents will again be granted 50 kWh per 30-day period free of charge. The municipality has resolved to stop with immediate effect the grant of free 5kWh of electricity to non-indigents.

The inadequate electricity bulk capacity and the impact on service delivery and development remains a challenge for the Municipality. Most of the municipality's reticulation network was designed or strengthened in the early 1980's with an expected 20-25 year life-expectancy. The upgrading of the Municipality's electricity network has therefore become a strategic priority, especially the substations and transmission lines.

The approved budget for the Electricity Division can only be utilised for certain committed upgrade projects and to strengthen critical infrastructure (e.g. substations without back-up supply).

Owing to the high increases in Eskom's bulk tariffs, it is clearly not possible to fund these necessary upgrades through increases in the municipal electricity tariff – as the resultant tariff increases would be unaffordable for the consumers. The municipality needs to explore other means of financing the required upgrades.

The municipality has embarked on programme where it is replacing and fixing all bridged and broken meters, this will result in an increase in the anticipated revenue that is above the proposed tariff increase.

### **Sanitation and Impact of Tariff Increases**

A tariff increase of 5.8 per cent for sanitation from 1 July 2015 is proposed. This is based on the input cost assumptions related to water.

The following table compares the current and proposed tariffs:

**Table 7 Comparison between current sanitation charges and increases**

<b>PART 1 : SUPPLY OF SANITATION</b>										
<b>Schedule 6(d) Sewerage Tariffs excluding VAT</b>	<b>Parys/Heibron/Vredefort/Koppies/Edenville</b>									
	<b>Tariff Codes</b>	<b>Services</b>	<b>2010/11</b>	<b>2011/12</b>	<b>2012/2013</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>	<b>2014/2015</b>	<b>2015/2016</b>	<b>VAT%</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Residential:	SE001	Waterborne (per household)	62,11	67,70	71,76	75,78	80,16	84,81	11,87	96,69
	SEBS	Bucket System	31,47	34,30	36,36	38,39	40,62	42,97	6,02	48,99
	SEST	Suction Tank	61,23	66,74	70,74	74,70	79,03	83,61	11,71	95,32
Schools/Government	SE008	Per point	82,86	114,14	120,98	127,75	135,15	142,99	20,02	163,00
Businesses/Hostels	SE002	Per Business/Unit/Empty Business	159,28	219,41	232,56	245,58	259,80	274,87	38,48	313,35
	SEH011	Clover				62 339,75	65 949,22	69 774,28	9 768,40	79 542,68
	SEH012	Simba				1 558,73	1 648,98	1 744,62	244,25	1 988,87
Khaya Ebubhesi	Sundry	Khaya Ebubhesi Per Dumping As Per Council Resolution	246,24	339,19	359,51	379,64	401,62	424,91	59,49	484,40
Small Business (Business From Home)	SEH016	Waterborne per shop	62,11	85,56	90,69	95,76	101,31	107,18	15,01	122,19
Sport Organisations	SE007	Per Point	69,78	96,12	101,87	107,58	113,81	120,41	16,86	137,27
Departmental (Municipal)	SE005	Per Point	61,23	84,35	89,40	94,40	99,87	105,66	14,79	120,46
Vacant Stands	SE000		65,00	89,54	94,90	100,22	106,02	112,17	15,70	127,87
Abattoir	SE003		1 741,89	2 399,45	2 543,18	2 685,60	2 841,09	3 005,88	420,82	3 426,70
Churches and Welfare Organisations	SE013	Fixed basic charge	61,23	84,35	89,40	94,40	99,87	105,66	14,79	120,46
Bulk	SE004	Per point	55,69	76,72	81,31	85,86	90,84	96,10	13,45	109,56
Holiday Resorts/Hotels/Guest Houses	SE006	Per Point	61,53	84,75	89,83	94,86	100,35	106,17	14,86	121,04
Old Aged Homes:	SE009	Clinic/Rooms Per Point	38,27	52,72	55,88	59,01	62,42	66,04	9,25	75,29
	SE010	Flats/Houses Per Unit	62,12	85,56	90,69	95,77	101,31	107,19	15,01	122,19
Interest at the rate of Prime plus 2 (two) percent will be levied on all 60 days outstanding accounts.										

## Waste Removal and Impact of Tariff Increases

It is widely accepted that the rendering of the waste removal service should at least break even, which is currently not the case. The Municipality will have to implement a solid waste strategy to ensure that this service can be rendered in a sustainable manner over the medium to long-term. The main contributors to this deficit are repairs and maintenance on vehicles, hiring of plant, increases in general expenditure such as petrol and diesel and the cost of remuneration. Considering the above, it is recommended that a comprehensive investigation into the cost structure of solid waste function be undertaken, and that this include investigating alternative service delivery models. The outcomes of this investigation will be incorporated into the next planning cycle.

A 5.8 per cent increase in the waste removal tariff is proposed from 1 July 2015. Higher increases will not be viable in 2015/16. Any increase higher than 5.8 per cent would be counter-productive and will result in affordability challenges for individual rates payers raising the risk associated with bad debt.

The following table compares current and proposed amounts payable from 1 July 2015:

**Table 8 Comparison between current waste removal fees and increases**

PART 1 : SUPPLY OF REFUSE										
Refuse			Parys/Heibron/Vredefort/Koppies/Edenville							
Tariffs excluding VAT		Tariff Codes Services	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/2016	VAT%	TOTAL
Residential		RF001	56,12	64,26	68,11	71,92	76,09	80,50	11,27	91,77
Holiday Resorts	/Cottage	RF016	22,08	25,17	26,67	28,17	29,80	31,53	4,41	35,94
Office considered as 1 Cottage	/Caravan Stand	RF017	11,10	12,66	13,42	14,17	14,99	15,86	2,22	18,08
Churches and Welfare		RF018	56,12	63,97	67,80	71,60	75,75	80,14	11,22	91,36
Small Business(Business From Home)		RF020	56,12	63,97	67,80	71,60	75,75	80,14	11,22	91,36
Municipal		RF005	43,12	49,15	52,10	55,01	58,20	61,57	8,62	70,19
Sports Clubs		RE007	18,56	21,16	22,43	23,69	25,06	26,51	3,71	30,22
Industrial	Large	RE009	255,14	290,86	308,29	325,55	344,40	364,38	51,01	415,39
Businesses Restau- rants, café's,	1	RF002	81,40	92,79	98,35	103,86	146,49	154,99	21,70	176,69
	2		122,36	139,49	147,84	156,12	220,21	232,98	32,62	265,60
	3-99999999		183,26	208,91	221,43	233,83	329,83	348,96	48,85	397,81
Government properties	1-999999		183,26	212,58	225,31	237,93	335,61	355,07	49,71	404,78
Hotels, Supermarkets	0-2	RF015	368,99	420,65	445,85	470,81	664,09	702,61	98,37	800,98
Hospitals, Country	3-99999999		55,53	63,30	67,09	70,85	99,93	105,73	14,80	120,53
Club, Guest Houses										
Old Aged Homes	1	RF019	26,15	29,82	31,60	33,37	35,30	37,35	5,23	42,58
Hostels	2-99999999		5,34	6,09	6,45	6,81	7,21	7,63	1,07	8,69
Bulk	1	RF004	350,76	399,86	423,81	447,55	631,28	667,89	93,51	761,40
Government	2-99999999		52,78	60,17	63,77	67,34	94,99	100,50	14,07	114,57
Schools	1	RF008	26,15	29,82	31,60	447,55	631,28	667,89	93,51	761,40
	2-99999999		5,34	6,09	6,45	67,34	94,99	100,50	14,07	114,57

## Overall impact of tariff increases on households

The following table shows the overall expected impact of the tariff increases on a residential household, as well as an indigent household receiving free basic services.

SAMPLE CONSUMER ACCOUNT : RESIDENTIAL									
SERVICE	DETAILS	2011-2012	2012-2013	2013-2014	2014-2015	2015-2016	VAT%	TOTAL	INCREASE
Electricity basic		R -	R -	R -	R -		R -	R -	R -
	400kwh						R -	R -	R -
Elec Consumption		R -	R -	R -	R -		R -	R -	R -
	0 - 400						R -	R -	R -
	395	R 412,48	R 458,20	R 494,86	R 531,43	R 576,00	R 80,64	R 656,64	R 44,57
							R -	R -	R -
							R -	R -	R -
Water basic	Basic Water	R 32,00	R 33,89	R 35,79	R 37,86	R 40,06	R 5,61	R 45,67	R 2,20
	30 kl						R -	R -	R -
		R -	R -		R -		R -	R -	R -
	0 - 20kl	R 90,44	R 95,78	R 101,14	R 107,00	R 161,80	R 22,65	R 184,45	R 54,80
	21 - 30kl	R 45,55	R 48,24	R 50,94	R 53,89	R 57,01	R 7,98	R 65,00	R 3,13
Consumption	31 >	R 21,52	R 22,79	R 24,07	R 25,46	R 26,94	R 3,77	R 30,71	R 1,48
Refuse		R 64,26	R 68,05	R 71,86	R 76,02	R 80,43	R 11,26	R 91,69	R 4,41
			R -		R -		R -	R -	R -
Sewerage		R 67,70	R 71,69	R 75,71	R 80,09	R 84,74	R 11,86	R 96,60	R 4,65
			R -		R -				R -
Rates	Market Value - R 500 000 (1 July 2009)	R -	R -		R -				R -
	Market Value - R 600 000 (1 July 2014)								R -
	R0 - 30 000	R -	R -		R -				R -
	R 570 000	R 363,66	R 385,11	R 406,68	R 428,84	R 453,71			R 24,87
	-10%								R -
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>R 1 097,61</b>	<b>R 1 183,75</b>	<b>R 1 261,04</b>	<b>R 1 340,59</b>	<b>R 1 480,69</b>	<b>R 143,78</b>	<b>R 1 170,75</b>	<b>R 140,10</b>

SAMPLE CONSUMER ACCOUNT : RESIDENTIAL - INDIGENT										
SERVICE	DETAILS	2011-2012	2012-2013	2013-2014	2014-2015	2015-2016	VAT%	TOTAL	INCREASE	
Electricity basic		R -	R -				R -	R -	R -	
	75 kw									
Elec Consumption	0 - 50 Free	R -	R -				R -	R -	R -	
Elec Consumption	25	R 21,07	R 24,44	R 26,39	R 28,34	R 31,80	R 4,45	R 36,25	R 3,46	
					R -		R -	R -	R -	
Water basic	8 kl	R 32,00	R 33,89	R 35,79	R 37,86	R 40,06	R 5,61	R 45,67	R 2,20	
	0 - 6kl Free	R -	R -		R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	
	7 - 20lk		R -		R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	
	2	R 12,92	R 13,68	R 14,45	R 15,29	R 16,17	R 2,26	R 18,44	R 0,89	
Water Consumption			R -		R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	
Refuse		R 64,26	R 68,05	R 71,86	R 76,02	R 80,43	R 11,26	R 91,69	R 4,41	
			R -		R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	
Sewerage		R 67,70	R 71,70	R 75,71	R 80,10	R 84,74	R 11,86	R 96,61	R 4,65	
			R -				R -	R -	R -	
Rates	Market Value - R 30 000	R -	R -				R -	R -	R -	
	R0 - 30000	R -	R -				R -	R -	R -	
							R -	R -	R -	
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>R 197,95</b>	<b>R 211,76</b>	<b>R 224,20</b>	<b>R 237,61</b>		<b>R 35,45</b>	<b>R 288,65</b>	<b>R 12,44</b>	

## Operating Expenditure Framework

The Municipality's expenditure framework for the 2015/16 budget and MTREF is informed by the following:

- The asset renewal strategy and the repairs and maintenance plan (informed by the municipal master plans);
- Balanced budget constraint (operating expenditure should not exceed operating revenue) unless there are existing uncommitted cash-backed reserves to fund any deficit;
- Funding of the budget over the medium-term as informed by Section 18 and 19 of the MFMA;
- The capital programme is aligned to the asset renewal strategy and backlog eradication plan;
- Operational gains and efficiencies will be directed to funding the capital budget and other core services; and
- Strict adherence to the principle of *no project plan no budget*. If there is no business plan no funding allocation can be made.

The following table is a high level summary of the 2015/16 budget and MTREF (classified per main type of operating expenditure):

**Table 9 Summary of operating expenditure by standard classification item**

Description	Ref	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	Current Year 2014/15				2015/16 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	1	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2015/16	Budget Year +1 2016/17	Budget Year +2 2017/18
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>											
Employee related costs	2	119 273	177 184	–	138 928	145 144	145 144	–	165 550	174 655	183 912
Remuneration of councillors		8 615	9 047		10 442	10 442	10 442		11 047	11 655	12 273
Debt impairment	3	49 058	59 461		40 000	40 000	40 000		42 320	44 648	47 014
Depreciation & asset impairment	2	98 144	97 195	–	95 000	95 000	95 000	–	95 000	100 225	105 537
Finance charges		8 995	3 274		3 000	3 000	3 000		1 000	1 055	1 111
Bulk purchases	2	114 069	128 866	–	163 401	163 401	163 401	–	186 080	196 314	206 719
Other materials	8				10 100	10 100	10 100		10 620	11 204	11 798
Contracted services		9 880	8 507	–	15 300	15 825	15 825	–	27 010	28 496	30 006
Transfers and grants		–	–	–	38 526	38 526	38 526	–	40 761	43 003	45 282
Other expenditure	4, 5	94 837	123 696	–	72 766	65 917	65 917	–	77 343	81 597	85 922
Loss on disposal of PPE											
<b>Total Expenditure</b>		<b>502 872</b>	<b>607 229</b>	<b>–</b>	<b>587 463</b>	<b>587 356</b>	<b>587 356</b>	<b>–</b>	<b>656 731</b>	<b>692 852</b>	<b>729 573</b>

The budgeted allocation for employee related costs for the 2015/16 financial year totals R165.6 million, which equals 25.2 per cent of the total operating expenditure. The budget for employee related costs are based on the proposed organogram. An annual increase of 5.5 and 5.3 per cent has been included in the two outer years of the MTREF.

The cost associated with the remuneration of councillors is determined by the Minister of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs in accordance with the Remuneration of Public Office Bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998). The most recent proclamation in this regard has been taken into account in compiling the Municipality's budget.

The provision of debt impairment for the 2015/16 financial year equates to R42.3 million and escalates to R47 million by 2017/18. While this expenditure is considered to be a non-cash flow item, it informed the

total cost associated with rendering the services of the municipality, as well as the municipality's realistically anticipated revenues. The municipality is aware that the provision for debt impairment is understated; the provision will be revised during the adjustments budget period when the municipality's debt book would have been reviewed by the service provider appointed to assist the municipality with the collection of outstanding debt.

Provision for depreciation and asset impairment has been informed by the Municipality's Asset Management Policy. Depreciation is widely considered a proxy for the measurement of the rate asset consumption. Budget appropriations in this regard total R95 million for the 2015/16 financial year and equates to 14.5 per cent of the total operating expenditure. Note that the implementation of GRAP 17 accounting standard has meant bringing a range of assets previously not included in the assets register onto the register. This has resulted in a significant increase in depreciation relative to previous years.

Finance charges consist primarily of the repayment of interest portion on long-term borrowing (cost of capital). Finance charges make up 0.15 per cent (R1 million) of operating expenditure for 2015/16.

Bulk purchases are directly informed by the purchase of electricity from Eskom and water from Rand Water. The annual price increases have been factored into the budget appropriations and directly inform the revenue provisions. The expenditures include distribution losses.

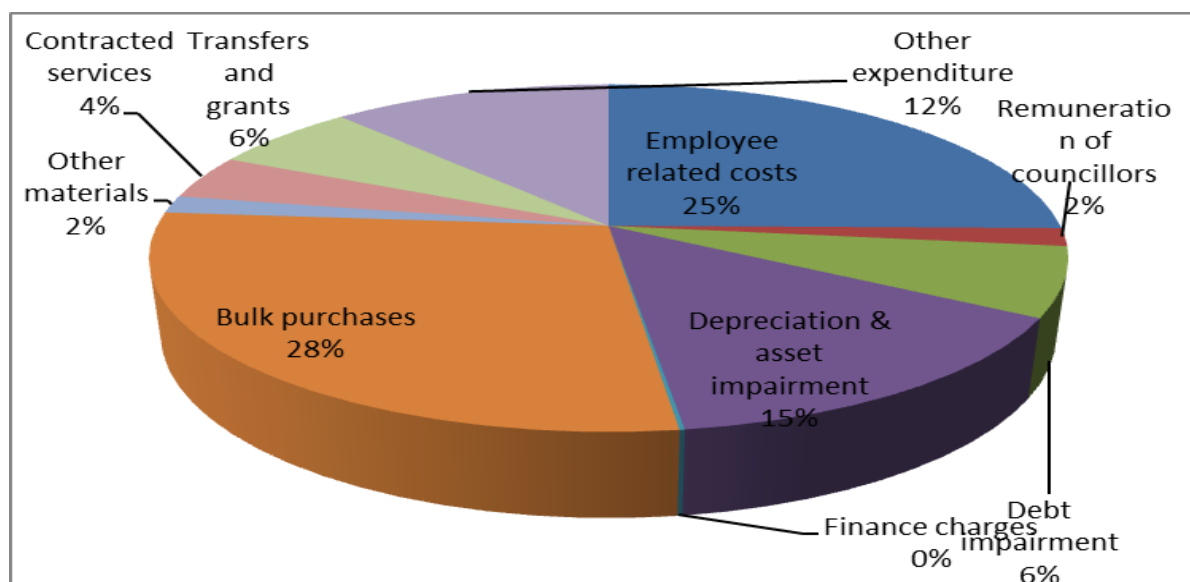
Other materials comprises of the purchase of fuel, diesel, and chemicals. For 2015/16 the appropriation against this group of expenditure is R10.5 million.

Contracted services have been identified as a cost saving area for the Municipality. As part of the compilation of the 2014/15 MTREF this group of expenditure was critically evaluated and operational efficiencies were enforced.

Other expenditure comprises of various line items relating to the daily operations of the municipality.

The following table gives a breakdown of the main expenditure categories for the 2015/16 financial year.





**Figure 1 Main operational expenditure categories for the 2015/16 financial year**

### **Priority given to repairs and maintenance**

Aligned to the priority being given to preserving and maintaining the Municipality's current infrastructure, the 2015/16 budget and MTREF provide for extensive growth in the area of asset maintenance, as informed by the asset renewal strategy and repairs and maintenance plan of the Municipality. In terms of the Municipal Budget and Reporting Regulations, operational repairs and maintenance is not considered a direct expenditure driver but an outcome of certain other expenditures, such as remuneration, purchases of materials and contracted services. Considering these cost drivers, the following table is a consolidation of all the expenditures associated with repairs and maintenance:

During the compilation of the 2015/16 MTREF operational repairs and maintenance was identified as a strategic imperative owing to the aging of the Municipality's infrastructure and historic deferred maintenance.

During the 2013/14 financial year, the municipality had incorrectly budgeted for the purchase of operational assets under repairs and maintenance incorrectly. This was corrected during the 2014/15 budget process, hence the sharp decline in the repairs and maintenance budget compared to the 2013/14 financial year.

The total allocation for 2015/16 equates to R14.3 million, the allocation grows at 5.5 and 5.3 per cent over the MTREF. In relation to the total operating expenditure, repairs and maintenance comprises of 2.1per cent for the 2015/16 financial year.

The table below provides a breakdown of the repairs and maintenance:

**Table 10 Repairs and maintenance**

Repairs and Maintenance	8										
Employee related costs											
Other materials											
Contracted Services				14 940	14 400	14 400		14 300	15 087	15 886	
Other Expenditure		18 582	20 977								
Total Repairs and Maintenance Expenditure	9	18 582	20 977	-	14 940	14 400	14 400	-	14 300	15 087	15 886

## Capital expenditure

The following table provides a breakdown of budgeted capital expenditure by vote:

**Table 11 2015/16 Medium-term capital budget per vote**

Vote Description	Ref	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	Current Year 2014/15				2015/16 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	1	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2015/16	Budget Year +1 2016/17	Budget Year +2 2017/18
<b>Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>											
<i>Governance and administration</i>		1 539	1 342	–	7 500	2 500	2 500	–	21 310	42 175	44 480
Executive and council		759	1 342		5 500	1 500	1 500		21 050	42 175	44 480
Budget and treasury office		–			2 000	1 000	1 000		260		
Corporate services		780				–	–				
<i>Community and public safety</i>		–	–	8 604	12 241	12 398	12 398	–	12 643	–	–
Community and social services		–			6 000	–	–				
Sport and recreation		–		8 604	5 981	8 488	8 488		9 143		
Public safety		–			260	3 910	3 910		3 500		
Housing		–				–	–				
Health		–				–	–		–		
<i>Economic and environmental services</i>		–	–	3 602	2 878	5 511	5 511	–	1 066	–	–
Planning and development		–				–	–				
Road transport		–		3 602	2 878	5 511	5 511		1 066		
Environmental protection		–				–	–				
<i>Trading services</i>		6 741	–	74 689	42 078	45 269	45 269	–	40 628	–	–
Electricity		–		20 000	8 000	13 960	13 960		8 550		
Water		–		19 693	12 676	17 440	17 440		15 696		
Waste water management		6 741		34 996	12 100	13 218	13 218		6 450		
Waste management		–		–	9 303	650	650		7 900		
<i>Other</i>		–		2 394	1 994	1 994	1 994		2 032		
<b>Total Capital Expenditure - Standard</b>	3	8 281	1 342	89 289	66 691	67 672	67 672	–	75 647	42 175	44 480

For 2015/16 an amount of R 43.6 million has been appropriated for the development of infrastructure which represents 57.7 per cent of the total capital budget. *Water Management* receives the highest allocation of R15.7 million in 2015/16 which equates to 35.9 per cent followed by *Electricity infrastructure* at 19.6 per cent, R8.6 million and then *Waste management* at 18.1 per cent, R7.9 million.

Some of the salient projects to be undertaken over the medium-term includes, amongst others:

- Heilbronn: upgrading of sewer treatment works - R 4.8 million
- Parys: Refurbishment and upgrading of water treatment works Phase 3 - R 650 000
- Edenville: Paving of internal roads 1 km - R 300 000
- Koppies: Paving of internal roads 1 Km - R 300 000
- Kwakwatsi: Construction of sports facility - R 5.3 million
- Mokwallo: Construction of sports complex - R 3.7 million
- Phiritona: Construction of the sports complex phase 2 (MIS:227453) - R 200 000
- Heilbron/Phiritona: Paving of internal roads 1km (MIS:226541) - R 315 581.65
- Koppies/Kwakwatsi: Construction of 3.5km storm water channel - R 150 000
- Construction of a solid waste disposal site in Parys - R 7.9 million
- Heilbron: Installation of 511 residential meters and 45 bulk water meters - R 2.4 million
- Parys: Upgrading of the Water Purification plant utilizing a compact plant - R 12.7 million

## CHAPTER SIX (6) : PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS –

### MIG

MIG IMPLEMENTATION PLAN				
MIG Reference Nr	Project Description	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2015/2016	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2016/2017	Planned MIG Expenditure for 2017/2018
MIG/15/4/1/3/1/1	Ngwathe PMU: 2014/2016	2 031 850,00	-	2 224 000,00
MIG/FS0623/S/08/10	Heilbron: Upgrading of sewer treatment works (ID-158007)	4 800 000,00	-	-
MIG/FS0624/S/08/10	Parys: Upgrading of sewer treatment works	-	-	-
MIG/FS0714/W/09/09	Parys: Refurbishment and upgrading of Water Treatment Works Phase 3 (MIS:171059)	650 000,00	-	-
MIG/FS0950/CF/12/13	Koppies: Refurbishment of the tennis court.	-	-	-
MIG/FS0954/R,ST/13/14	Edenville: Paving of internal roads 1km.	300 000,00	-	-
MIG/FS0955/R,ST/13/14	Koppies: Paving of internal roads 1km.	300 000,00	-	-
MIG/FS0991/CF/13/15	Ngwathe (Edenville): Upgrading of sports ground	-	-	-
MIG/FS0992/CF/13/15	Kwakwatsi (Koppies): Construction of sports facility	5 261 935,00	-	-
MIG/FS1030/CF/14/16	Mokwallo: Construction of sports complex (MIS:226058)	3 681 307,00	-	-
MIG/FS1038/CF/15/16	Phiritona: Construction of the sports complex phase 2 (MIS:227453)	200 000,00	-	-
MIG/FS1039/R,ST/15/17	Heilbron/Phiritona: Paving of internal roads 1km (MIS:226541)	315 581,65	-	-
MIG/FS1056/SW/14/16	Koppies/Kwakwatsi: Construction of 3.5km storm water channel (MIS:229616)	150 000,00	-	-
	Construction of a solid waste disposal site in Parys	7 900 000,00	-	-
	Heilbron: Installation of 511 residential meters and 45 bulk water meters	2 371 735,30	-	-
	Construction of a solid waste disposal site in Koppies	-	-	-
	Construction of a solid waste disposal site in Heilbron	-	-	-
	Parys: Upgrading of the Water Purification plant utilizing a compact plant	12 674 591,05	-	-
	<b>Total</b>	R 40 637 000,00	R 42 175 000,00	R 44 480 000,00
		<b>R 40 637 000,00</b>	<b>R 42 175 000,00</b>	<b>R 44 480 000,00</b>

## MUNICIPAL CAPEX PROJECTS

DOE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN							
DOE Reference Nr	Project Description	Planned DOE Expenditure for 2015/2016		2016/17	2017/18		
	ELECTRIFICATION	R	3 000 000,00	R	-	R	-
		R	3 000 000,00	R	-	R	-

PROPOSED INTERNAL FUNDING CAPITAL COSTS - PURCHASES					
Funding Source	Project Description	Planned Expenditure for 2015/16		2016/17	2017/18
Internal Funding	WATER AND SANITATION PURCHASES EQUIPMENT	R	150 000,00	R -	R -
	FENCING OF MAIN OFFICES - PARYS	R	1 000 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	FURNITURE PURCHASES - GENERAL	R	260 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	WATER TANKER 6X6 9000L	R	2 000 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	ELECTRICITY CRANE TRUCK	R	1 000 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	WATER AND SANITATION PURCHASES INFRASTRUCTURE	R	1 500 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	RESCUE PUMPER 4X4 300L WATER 150FOAM	R	1 500 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	ELECTRICFICATION HOUSES KOPPIES	R	3 050 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	PURCHASE OF VEHICLES	R	5 000 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	REFUSE COMPACTOR TRUCKS 1*5	R	7 400 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	GRADERS 1*5	R	5 000 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	TRACTORS 1*10	R	1 500 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	SUNCTION TANK - EDENVILLE	R	300 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	CHERRY PICK - ELECTRICITY 1*5	R	1 500 000,00	R -	R -
Internal Funding	RENOVATIONS - VREDEFORT OFFICES	R	300 000,00		
Internal Funding	RENOVATIONS - MOKWALLO OFFICES	R	200 000,00		
Internal Funding	FENCING OF GRAVEYARD - VREDEFORT	R	250 000,00		
Internal Funding	REFURBISHMENT OF MPCC - HEILBRON	R	100 000,00		
		R	32 010 000,00	R -	R -

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : WATER (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DTS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASE LINE</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015-16</b>	<b>2016-17</b>	<b>2017-18</b>	<b>2018-19</b>	<b>2019-20</b>	
To increase clean water supply in Ngwathe and to improve revenue collection and eliminate water leaks	Installation of 511 residential meters and 45 bulk water meters in Heilbron	To apply for funding at MIG	Installation of 511 residential meters and 45 bulk water meters in Heilbron	Business plan submitted to DWS and MIG for approval	R4,0m					MIG
To increase clean water supply in Ngwathe and to improve revenue collection and eliminate water leaks	Upgrading of water purification plant utilising compact plant	To apply for extra funding	Upgrading of water purification plant utilising compact plant	The contractor is on site	R25,0m	R9.0m				MIG & DWS
To increase water supply in Ngwathe	Purchase of water tanker (6 X 6 9000 L)	To be implemented internally	Purchase of water tanker (6 X 6 9000 L)	For part of our 2015/16 budget	R2m					Internal Budget



<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : SANITATION (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DTS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015-16</b>	<b>2016-17</b>	<b>2017-18</b>	<b>2018-19</b>	<b>2019-20</b>	
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with decent and dignified sanitation that Upgrading of sewer treatment works at Heilbron maintains their dignity.		The project is on implementation stage	Two contractors are on site. Hage project is appointed for Upgrading of sewer treatment works at Heilbron the Clarifier, Proper/ Bryn Construction for the construction of the drying beds		R1,0m	R6.2m				MIG
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with decent and dignified	Upgrading of sewer treatment works at Parys	To apply for funding from DWS "RBIG" for any future phases	The current phase of this project is complete	Upgrading of sewer treatment works at Parys	R0.00					MIG and DWA

fied sanitation that maintains their dignity.										
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with decent and dignified sanitation that maintains their dignity.	Purchase of a suction tank for Edenville	To be implemented internally	For part of our 2015/16 budget	Purchase of a suction tank for Edenville	R300 000					<b>Internal budget</b>

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : ELECTRICITY (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DTS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015-16</b>	<b>2016-17</b>	<b>2017-18</b>	<b>2018-19</b>	<b>2019-20</b>	
To provide access to electricity to residents of Ngwathe	Purchase of electricity crane truck	The crane is with the Municipality	The Province bought 1 crane for the Municipality	Purchase of electricity crane truck	R1m					Internal budget
To provide access to electricity to residents of Ngwathe	Electrification of houses	Electrification will be done when new houses are built	All houses have access to electricity	Electrification of houses	R3m					Internal budget

To provide access to electricity to residents of Ngwathe	Purchase of 5 cherry pickers X 5	To be implemented internally	For part of our 2015/16 budget	Purchase of 5 cherry pickers X 5	R1,5m					Internal budget
--	----------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------	--	--	--	--	-----------------

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : ROADS (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DTS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015 - 16</b>	<b>2016 -17</b>	<b>2017 - 18</b>	<b>2018 -19</b>	<b>2019 -20</b>	
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads and decent Mobility Access	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Koppies	The project is complete	The project is complete	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Koppies	R300,000.00					MIG
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads and decent Mobility Access	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Edenville	The project is under implementation	The contractor is on site to finish off the project	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Edenville	R300,000.00					MIG
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Heilbron	To be implemented in the 2016/17 FY	To be implemented in this FY	Paving of 1 km of internal roads at Heilbron		R6.5m	R300,000.00			MIG

ds and decent Mobility Access	n									
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads and decent Mobility Access	Construction of 3.5km storm water channel at Kwakwatsi	The project is on the implementation stage	The contractor is on site	Construction of 3.5km storm water channel at Kwakwatsi	R150 000					MIG
To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads and decent Mobility Access	Upgrading of gravel to paved roads	To apply for funding from Sasol	To be implemented in 2018/19 FY	Upgrading of gravel to paved roads				R5,5		Sasol Mining

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : WASTE MANAGEMENT (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DC S)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015 - 16</b>	<b>2016 -17</b>	<b>2017 -18</b>	<b>2018 -19</b>	<b>2019 -20</b>	
To provide the residents proper and dignified solid waste	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Parys	To appoint a consultant who will do a study which will clearly i	The business plan is with provincial MIG for	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Parys	R7,9m					MIG

disposal site		identify the scope and costing to the project	registration approval							
To provide the residents proper and dignified solid waste disposal site	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Heilbron	To appoint a consultant who will do a study which will clearly identify the scope and costing to the project	The business plan is with provincial MIG for registration approval	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Heilbron						MIG
To provide the residents proper and dignified solid waste disposal site	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Koppies	To appoint a consultant who will do a study which will clearly identify the scope and costing to the project	The business plan is with provincial MIG for registration approval	Construction of solid waste disposal sites at Koppies						MIG
To provide the residents proper and dignified solid waste disposal site	Licensing of the landfill sites	To appoint a consultant who will do a study which will clearly identify the scope and costing to the project		Licensing of the landfill sites						MISA/DESTE A

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : FIRE (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DCS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015 -16</b>	<b>2016 -17</b>	<b>2017 -18</b>	<b>2018 -19</b>	<b>2019 -20</b>	
	Purchase of rescue Pumper (4 X 4, 300L 150 FOAM)	To be purchased this FY	To be implemented in this fy	Purchase of rescue Pumper (4 X 4, 300L 150 FOAM)	R1,5m					Internal Budget

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : FLEET (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: FINANCE)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015 -16</b>	<b>2016 -17</b>	<b>2017 -18</b>	<b>2018 -19</b>	<b>2019 -20</b>	
To assist workers in quick response with service delivery and also complains from residents	Purchase of Vehicles	To be purchased this FY	Planned in this FY	Purchase of Vehicles	R5m					Internal budget
To assist with equipment to address service d	Purchasing of Graders 1*5	To be purchased this FY	Planned in this FY	Purchasing of Graders 1*5	R5m					Internal budget

elivery issues related to roads										
To assist with equipment to address service delivery issues related to roads	Purchasing of Tractors	To be purchased this FY	Planned in this FY	Purchasing of Tractors	R1,5m					Internal budget

<b>KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : SPORTS AND RECREATION (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE : DCS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015-16</b>	<b>2016-17</b>	<b>2017-18</b>	<b>2018-19</b>	<b>2019-20</b>	
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation. The Municipality also wishes to harness the	Refurbishment of tennis court in Koppies	Development of sports facilities	Complete	Refurbishment of tennis court in Koppies						MIG

socio-economic contributions that can create a better life for our residents										
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation. The Municipality also wishes to harness the socio	Upgrading of sports ground in Edenville	Development of sports facilities	Complete all design and Commence Construction	Upgrading of sports ground in Edenville						MIG
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively Construct of sports field at Mokwallo participate in sports and recreation. The Munic		Project about to go on tender stage for a contractor's appointment	Complete all design and Commence Construction	Construction of sports field at Mokwallo	R3,6m					MIG



ipality also wishes to harness the socio										
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation. The Municipality also wishes to harness the socio	Construction of sports field at Kwakwatsi	Project about to go on tender stage for a contractor's appointment	Complete all design and Commence Construction	Construction of sports field at Kwakwatsi	R5,2m					MIG
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation. The Municipality also wishes to harness the socio	Construction of sports field at Phiritona ( Phase 2)	Project is on implementation stage	The contractor is on site	Construction of sports field at Phiritona ( Phase 2)	R200 000					MIG
Providing opportunities for Ngwathe	Construction of the multi purp	To apply for funding : Sasol		Construction of the multi purpose	R5,5m					Sasol Mining

LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation. The Municipality also wishes to harness the socio	ose center in Mokwallo			center in Mokwallo						
--	------------------------	--	--	--------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

<b>KPA 2: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>										
<b>PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA : MUNICIPAL BUILDINGS (RESPONSIBLE DIRECTORATE: DC OS)</b>										
<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE</b>	<b>KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR (KPI)</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>	<b>STATUS QUO/ BASELINE</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>5 YEAR TARGETS</b>					<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
					<b>2015-16</b>	<b>2016-17</b>	<b>2017-18</b>	<b>2018-19</b>	<b>2019-20</b>	
To provide secure working environment for Ngwathe employees	Fencing of Parys main office	To be implemented with internal funds	On the pipeline	Fencing of Parys main office	R1m					Internal budget
	Renovation to Vredefort municipal offices			Renovation to Vredefort municipal offices	R300 000					Internal budget
	Renovation to Mokwallo municipal offices			Renovation to Mokwallo municipal offices	R200 000					Internal budget

	Fencing of Vredefort g raveyard			Fencing of Vredefort g raveyard	R250 000					Internal budget
	Refurbishment of Phritona MP CC			Refurbishment of Phritona MPCC	R100 000					Internal budget
	Purchasing of Furniture General			Purchasing of Furniture General	R260 000					Internal budget

## CHAPTER SEVEN (7): PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS FROM OTHER SECTOR DEPARTMENTS

<b>Provincial Department</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>Type of infrastructure</b>	<b>Project duration</b>	<b>Total project cost</b>
DESTEA	Youth Jobs in waste	Waste		
DPRT	Rehabilitation of Kroonstad to vredeford road (36 km's)	Roads	January 2014 – October 2015	
	Rehabilitation of Parys through route		1 July 2014 – November 2015	
	Assist 900 Youths to get drivers licences (Koppies and Parys)		January 2014 – March 2016	
	Consultation and data collection in an attempt to resolve transport issues and problems in FDDM area (Parys)		August 2014 - August 2016	
DWS (RBIG)	Bulk sewer	Sewer Plant		20 000 000

	Bulk water supply Phase 2	Water Plant		20 000 000
( ACIP)	Refurbishment of Koppies WWTW	Sewer Plant		2 500 000
DoH	Upgrading the current structure	Mandela Clinic		4 156
		Relebohile Clinic		5 000
		Ward Based Outreach Programme (WBOP)		
COGTA	Appointment of Thebe Ya Ka Consulting to improve the audit report	Support and capacity enhancement to eradicate adverse audit opinion and to achieve an unqualified audit opinion	Feb –November 2015	1 900 000

## **CHAPTER EIGHT (8): ANNUAL OPERATIONAL PLAN (DRAFT SERVICE DELIVERY AND BUDGET IMPLEMENTATION PLAN)**

### **Introduction**

Section 1 of the MFMA defines the SDBIP as:

“A detailed plan approved by the Mayor of a municipality in terms of section 53(1)(c)(ii) for implementing the municipality’s delivery of services and the execution of its annual budget and which must include the following:

- a) Projections for each month of-
  - (i) Revenue to be collected, by source; and
  - (ii) Operational and capital expenditure, by vote;
- b) Service delivery targets and performance indicators for each quarter”.

The Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) gives effect to the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and the Budget of the municipality, this, however is only possible if the IDP and budget are fully aligned with each other, as required by the MFMA.

The SDBIP therefore serves as a “contract” between

- 1. Administration,**
- 2. the Council and**
- 3. the Community,**

**MUNICIPAL MANAGER: SDBIP**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	WARD	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGETS			
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>	To ensure the development and review of credible IDP that complies to IDP framework	IDP	IDP adopted by Council	IDP Timelines adhered to		Credible IDP developed	<b>R150 000</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>
			IDP Ward Profiles developed and adopted		All 20 wards	Implementation of the IDP ward Profiles					
	To ensure performance	PMS	Municipality with approved	PMS not fully		100% implementation of	<b>R100 000</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>

	nce managem ent system for all managers from		PMS Framework	functio nal		the PMS Framework					
			Functional PMS unit established	PMS unit not yet establis hed							
			Number of quarterly performanc e reviews conducted			Performan ce reviewed per quarter					
			Report on annual municipal performanc e in compliance with section 46			Section 46 Report compiled, adopted by Council and submitted to MEC for Local Governme nt					



			Municipal Council Oversight Report submitted to MEC for Local Government			Oversight Report developed, submitted to Council and MEC for Local Government					
			Number of signed performance agreements			All performance agreements signed					
			Approved SDBIP, aligned to the IDP & Budget								

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET / VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
							Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND</b>	To strengthen the institutional	Organisational Structure	Organisational Structure developed,	Organisational structure under	Approved and funded Organisa					

<b>INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	1 capacity of the Municipality.		approved and reviewed	review	tional structure aligned with the IDP and Budget					
	Finalize work study analysis by August 2014 in effort to reduce high vacancy rate by June 2015	Vacant Posts	Number of posts filled as per the approved staff establishment	Vacancies in some directorates	Finalize work study analysis by August 2014					
	Fill critical vacancies by June 2015	Critical Posts	Number of critical posts filled	Only 4 of 8 critical posts are filled	Fill critical vacancies by June 2015					
	Develop and align achievable	Employment Equity	Number of employees employed in		Build the capacity					

	training intervention s to respond to the organizational needs		terms of employment equity targets/Plan		of the employee es					
	To ensure the developmen t and or review of credible IDP that complies to IDP framework	IDP	IDP adopted by Council	IDP Timelines adhered to	Credible IDP develope d	<b>R150 000</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>
	Pilot performanc e manageme nt system for all managers from level 0 – 3 by December 2015	PMS	Municipality with approved PMS Framework	PMS not fully functional	100% impleme ntation of the PMS Framework					
			Number of quarterly		Performa nce					

			performance reviews conducted		reviewed per quarter					
			Report on annual municipal performance in compliance with section 46		Section 46 Report compiled, adopted by Council and submitted to MEC for Local Government					
			Municipal Council Oversight Report submitted to MEC for Local Government		Oversight Report developed, submitted to Council and					

					MEC for Local Governm ent					
			Number of signed performance agreements		All performa nce agreeme nts signed	All Performa nce agreeme nts signed and submitte d				
			Approved SDBIP, aligned to the IDP & Budget							
<b>FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT</b>	Increase revenue collection rate to 85% by June 2015	Revenue	Effective revenue management	Current collection rate is 65%	Collectio n rate to reach 85%					
	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainabilit y	Expenditur e	% of operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP projection s		100% Adheren ce to expendit ure budget					

<b>LED</b>	To continuously create an enabling environment that is conducive to attract investors for business growth	LED Strategy	5 year LED Strategy approved and adopted by Council	LED Strategy in consultation phase	LED Strategy implemented	<b>R1,5m</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>
	To identify & introduce 2 LED drivers by December 2015	Economic Drivers	LED Strategy developed and resourced	Lack of economic drivers	Identified LED drivers effected					
	To create job opportunities	Job Creation	Number of work opportunities created through various interventions	2580 job opportunities created	To create more than 5000 job opportunities					
<b>BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE</b>	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure	Basic Services	Number of households with access to basic services	More than 70% access to services	Basic services provided per	Increase access to more than 95%				

<b>DEVELOPMENT</b>	development for provision and access to services	Infrastructure Development	Capacity of bulk infrastructure developed to secure access to basic services		Infrastructure Projects implemented					
<b>SPATIAL PLANNING</b>	To ensure a coordinated developmental planning and implementation	Spatial Development Framework (SDF)	SDF aligned with the IDP	73% expenditure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SDF and Land Use Management System developed and approved in line with the SPLUMA</li> <li>Spatial Planning and Land Use</li> </ul>					

					Management Act implemented. Municipal tribunal established					
--	--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGETS			
							Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>	Improvement on Audit Outcome	Audit Unit	Functional Internal audit unit established	The unit consist of (1) one Internal Audit manager, (2) two Internal	Permanent filling of one outstanding post (Intern)	<b>R900 000</b>	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %



				Auditors and (1) one Internal Audit intern.						
		audit committee	Functional audit committee established.	The currently uses a shared service with Fezile Dabi District Municipality Audit Committee . The Committee to have (4) four regular meeting as legislated.	To establish our own audit committee	<b>R90 000</b>	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %
		Audit opinion		<b><u>Disclaimer:</u></b> The opinion was mainly	⊕ Management developed a comprehensive action plan to		10 0%			

				<p>due to shortcomings from the municipality's side in the following areas;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>⊕ PPE;</li><li>⊕ Payables from exchange transactions;</li><li>⊕ Service charges ;</li><li>⊕ Consumer receivables from exchange transactions;</li><li>⊕ Consumer receivables from</li></ul>	<p>address the findings on the AG report and management letter.</p> <p>⊕ Internal audit steering committee has been established to monitor the progress on the audit action plan on weekly bases.</p> <p>1. <u>Income - Billing for, Rates, General, Trading and Economic services:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Rates;</li><li>○ Electricity ;</li><li>○ Water;</li><li>○ Refuse;</li></ul>		100%				100%			
							100%							
							100%							

				non-exchange transactions; ⊕ Unauthorized expenditure; ⊕ Employee related cost; ⊕ General expenses; ⊕ Investment property; ⊕ Bulk purchases; ⊕ Depreciation and amortization; ⊕ Impairment loss; ⊕ Irregula	○ Grants – DORA; ○ And Other Income. 2. <u>Risk Management</u> ; ○ Risk Identification and Assessment; ○ Review and update of Risk Register; ○ Functioning of the Risk Committee; ○ Update Audit Charters; ○ Update the Risk based audit			100%			
								100%			

				<p>r expendi ture; ⊕ Commit ments; ⊕ Finance cost; ⊕ Prior period errors; ⊕ Cash flow stateme nt; ⊕ Distrib ution losses and ⊕ Invento ries.</p>	<p>plan. 3. <u>Payroll and Human Resource Management:</u>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Recruitme nts and Appointm ents;</li> <li>○ Terminati ons;</li> <li>○ Leave Managem ent;</li> <li>○ Remunera tion of Staff &amp; Councilor s;</li> <li>○ Overtime Managem ent;</li> <li>○ Successio n Planning; and Staff retention and</li> </ul> </p>		10 0%				10 0%
--	--	--	--	--	---	--	----------	--	--	--	----------

					<p>Knowledge management.</p> <p>4. <u>Purchasing and expenditure:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Requisition and Ordering (Including budget controls);</li> <li>○ Receiving and Invoicing;</li> <li>○ Creditors and Payments;</li> <li>○ Inventory Management;</li> <li>○ Procurement Plans;</li> <li>○ Competitive Bidding Process; and</li> </ul>		100%			100%
--	--	--	--	--	---	--	------	--	--	------

					<p>Contract Managem ent.</p> <p>5. <u>Income - Receipts, receipts through the post and direct deposits:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Receipting - day-end control procedure s;</li><li>○ Cancellati on of receipts not properly controlled ;</li><li>○ Incomplet e financial records;</li><li>○ Remittanc e register;</li><li>○ Unpaid</li></ul>					
--	--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--

					<p>cheques returned by the bank;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ E-Venus cash-up reports not attached to daily cash-up summaries;</li><li>○ Prepaid electricity day-end control sheet not completed and filed with daily cash-up summaries;</li><li>○ Control sheet not utilized at head</li></ul>					
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

					<p>office for money received and banked;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ System backups not made of prepaid electricity customer database;</li><li>○ Access to the e-Venus receipting system and the prepaid electricity system is not protected by password and no instances occurred</li></ul>					
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--



					<p>where the control official worked as a cashier; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Prepaid electricity sales are receipted on a daily basis at the day-end cash-up procedure and reviewed and signed by the control official;</li></ul> <p>6. <u>Fixed assets:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Fixed Asset Register;</li><li>○ Additions</li></ul>					
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

					<p>&amp; Disposals;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ GRAP</li><li>○ Compliance; and</li><li>○ Reconciliations.</li></ul> <p>7. <u>Performance management:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ PMS policy and implementation Review;</li><li>○ Compliance to Municipal Planning Management Regulations;</li><li>○ PMS - Section 57 Management Contracts; and</li></ul>					
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

					<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Quarterly internal audit reviews of PMS information.</li></ul> <p>8. <u>Follow up:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Internal Audit Report; and AG reports.</li></ul> <p>9. <u>Adhoc projects:</u></p> <p>Special audit requests from Management.</p>					
--	--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	PROGRAM/KFA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	WARD	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGETS			
								Q 1	Q 2	Q 3	Q 4
<b>GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>	To ensure the that risk management unit is fully functional	Risk Management	Effective and efficient risk management	The risk unit is not fully functional		Capacitate risk management unit					
			Appoint risk management committee as per the charter	Risk management committee is non-existent		Effective risk management committee					
			Conduct comprehensive risk assessment on quarterly	Risk assessment was conducted ,but		Mitigate risks identified during the					

			basis	the risk identified were not mitigated		assessment as well as emerging risks					
			Review and update risk registers quarterly	Risk registers are in a draft stage		Approved risk registers and updates on quarterly basis					
	Ensure anti-corruption and fraud strategies and plans are in existence	Fraud and Corruption	Conduct fraud risk assessment	Fraud risk register in not existing		Mitigate the fraud risks in the municipality					

			Conduct anti – corruption and fraud awareness at all levels of the municipality	Fraud and corruption awareness campaigns not conducted		Create environment that is free of fraud and corruption					
			Conduct workshops /training councillors, management and employees	Workshop for councillors was conducted		To build a fraud and corruption conscious culture within the organisation					
	Ensure adherence to applicable laws	Policies, Strategies and Plans and By-	Conduct assessments on policies, systems, frameworks , strategies	Check lists were developed but not fully impleme		Comply with all legislative requirements in the					

		laws	and plans following the latest amendments	nted		sector					
	Number of Council meetings held	Council meetings	Number of Council meetings held	4 meetings held	4 Council sittings per schedule						
	Number of Council resolutions implemented	Council Resolutions	Number of Council resolutions implemented		Implementation of all Council resolutions						

# DIRECTOR CORPORATE SERVICES: SDBIP

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
							Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>	Compliance with systems Act and standing rules	<b>Council sittings</b>  Preparations of agenda and items	To ensure that council items and agendas are timeously delivered to the councilors	Approved schedule of meetings for Council and Section 80 Committees	Adherence to council sitting schedule	<b>R1.6m</b>	<b>25 % (1 meeting P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 1 meeting P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 1 meeting P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 1 meeting P/Q)</b>
	Compliance with systems Act and standing rules	Preparations of agenda and items	To ensure that section 80 items and agendas are timeously delivered to the councilors	Approved schedule of meetings for Council and Section 80 Committees	Adherence to section 80 sitting schedule	<b>R1.6M</b>	<b>25 % (3 meeting 3 P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 3 meeting 3 P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 3 meeting 3 P/Q)</b>	<b>25% 3 meeting 3 P/Q)</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	To enhance human capacity & productivity within the municipality	<b>HUMAN RESOURCE</b>  Promotion of employee wellness	EAP Participation in Internal Sports	Annual EAP program	Number of employees assisted  Number of sporting activities held	<b>R350K</b>	<b>0%</b>	<b>100 % 1 EAP event)</b>	<b>0%</b>	<b>0%</b>
		Review all existing policies and	Compliance and implementation of policies and by -	Labour legislations and Collective	Adoption of the by- laws and policies	<b>R1, 35m (Legislation)</b>	<b>10 % (Pre</b>	<b>10% (Sub mis</b>	<b>20% Wor ksh</b>	<b>60% PP and</b>



		<i>promulgation of new by - laws</i>	<i>laws</i>	<i>Agreements</i>			<b>par atio ns)</b>	<b>sion s)</b>	<b>ops)</b>	<b>prom ulga tion)</b>
		<i>Ensure that the system for Leave Days is continually updated</i>		<i>Leave policy</i>	<i>Thorough training of HR personnel regarding updating of system</i>	<i>Implementa tion of service level agree ment with PAYDAY</i>	<i>25% Mon thly mee ting s</i>	<i>25% Mon thly mee ting s</i>	<i>25% Mon thly mee ting s</i>	<i>25% Mont hly meeti ngs</i>
	<i>Promote sound labour relations</i>	<i>All recognized collective bargaining agreements, applicable legislations and policies be implemented</i>	<i>Conduct workshops with all stakeholders. Prepare EE reports</i>	<i>Approved EE plan</i>	<i>Maintain healthy and conducive working environment by reviewing EE plan and report. Submission of EE report to DoL</i>	<b>R1,35m (Legislati on)</b>				<b>100 % (Prep arati on &amp; Sub miss ion)</b>
<b>INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION</b>	<i>To build capacity informed by Workplace Skills Plan (WSP)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Workplace Skills Plan.</li> <li>Skills Audit</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of officials capacitated in terms of the workplace Skills Plan</li> <li>• Number of councillors trained</li> </ul>	<i>Training objectives not fully implemented</i>	<i>100% compliance with WSP</i>	<b>Training R1,5 m</b>  <i>Bursaries R500k</i>	<b>20 %</b>  <b>Planni ng and sub mission s</b>	<b>20% Com pila tion of skil ls aud it</b>	<b>50% Pay men t of serv ices pro vide rs</b>	<b>10% Repo rting</b>

	To submit the Workplace skills plan LGSETA by 30 April annually	•Training committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop the schedule of meeting and adhere to it, compilation of WSP, implementation of the skills plan, reporting and monitoring of progress</li> </ul>	Training Committee established but not functional	100% compliance with legislation	<b>R1,5 m</b>	<b>25 %</b> <b>(3 mee ting s)</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>(3 mee ting s)</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>(3 mee ting s)</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>(3 meet ings)</b>
	To implement the Internship program with the FMG framework conditions	Internships	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of Internships and learnership opportunities created</li> </ul>	Interns are appointed	100% compliance with Treasury regulations for Internships and implementation of budget on experiential learning	<b>500K</b>	<b>25 %</b> <b>Pay men t of mo nthl y stip end s</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>Pay men t of mon thly stip end s</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>Pay men t of mon thly stip end s</b>	<b>25%</b> <b>Pay ment of mont hly stipe nds</b>

<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<i>To ensure legal claims against the municipality are timeously attended</i>	<b>Legal / Administration</b>  <i>Development of monthly schedule</i>	<i>Ensuring that monthly statistics of legal claims are kept and provided</i>	<i>Litigations</i>	<i>High court, Magistrate Courts, Arbitrations as well as Labour Court matters are speedily finalized in a less costly manner. Also dealing with settlements outside Court to save costs</i>	<i>R5,35m</i>	<b>25 % Appoint ment of Attorneys</b>	<b>25% Appoint ment of Attorneys</b>	<b>25% Appoint ment of Attorneys</b>	<b>25% Appoint ment of Attorneys</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<i>Ensure the availability of Archives policy</i>	<b>Records management</b>  <i>Development of the policy</i>	<i>Effective implementation of policy</i>	<i>Archives</i>	<i>Adherence to the policy Computerized filing system</i>	<b>R1,8m</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>
		<i>Timeous distribution and collection of mail</i>	<i>Submission of reports for mail</i>	<i>Archives</i>	<i>Update a register for all mails and/or correspondence received/ distributed</i>	<b>R1,8</b>	<b>25 % Procur ement of stamps and envelopes</b>	<b>25% Procur ement of stamps and envelopes and</b>	<b>25% Procur ement of stamps and envelopes and</b>	<b>25% Procur ement of stamps and envelopes and post op</b>

							<b>and pos top serv ices</b>	<b>post op serv ices</b>	<b>post op serv ices</b>	<b>servi ces</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>		<b>Administration</b>  Printing and duplication of documents and advertising	To ensure that there is adequate stationery for the effective and efficient printing, advertising and duplication of documents	Office material	Printing, advertising and purchasing of stationery	<b>R1,8m</b>	<b>25 % Rental of machines and procurement of printing material</b>	<b>25% Rental of machines and procurement of printing material</b>	<b>25% Rental of machines and procurement of printing material</b>	<b>25% Rental of machines and procurement of printing material</b>
<b>INFRASTRUCTURAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	Ensure that employees, customers & visitors are safe in municipal buildings	<b>Building Maintenance</b>  Repairing & renovations of buildings	Ensuring that buildings are safe and clean	Maintenance plan	Buildings repainted  Walls are refurbished  Fencing of main office	<b>R3,78m (Building)</b>	<b>25 % Procurement of</b>	<b>25% Procurement of</b>	<b>25% Procurement of</b>	<b>25% Procurement of</b>

		<i>cleaning of buildings</i>					<i>of cleaning material and regular repairs and maintenance</i>	<i>cleaning material and regular repairs and maintenance</i>	<i>cleaning material and regular repairs and maintenance</i>	<i>cleaning material and regular repairs and maintenance</i>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<i>Provision of effective and efficient ICT services</i>	<b>ICT</b>  <i>To ensure that all ICT systems are functional and available to users</i>	<i>Update the ICT systems</i>	<i>Information and Technology</i>	<i>Rendering of secure IT environment</i>	<b>R5,m</b>	<b>20 %</b>	<b>40%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>20%</b>
		<i>Compliance to ICT policies with new legislation</i>	<i>Implementation of effective security standards in line with policies</i>	<i>Information and Technology</i>	<i>Review ICT policies</i>	<b>R1 950 000</b>	<b>50 %</b>			<b>50%</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND</b>	<i>Ensure safety of fellow employees, Councillors</i>	<b>Security</b>  <i>Develop a comprehensiv</i>	<i>Submission of report and alerts on security risk envisaged</i>	<i>Safety and Security</i>	<i>Implement and adhere to the security plan</i>	<b>R1.5m</b>	<b>25 % Safety</b>	<b>25% Safety</b>	<b>25% Safety</b>	<b>25% Safety</b>

<b>INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<i>and community members</i>	<i>e security plan for the institution</i>  <i>Proper and effective access control</i>	<i>Provision of safe and secure working environment</i>		<i>Control access in all premises of NLM</i>		<b>ety measures at premises</b>	<b>measures at premises</b>	<b>measures at premises</b>	<b>measures at premises</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<i>Compliance with health and safety Act</i>	<b>Occupational Health and Safety</b>  <i>Promote safety in a work place</i>	<i>Verification of statistics for allocation purpose</i>	<i>COID</i>	<i>Provision of protective clothing for all categories of employees</i>  <i>Training of employees on health and safety issues</i>	<b>R1,2m (PPE and COID)</b>		<b>50% Provision of PPE</b>		<b>50% Provision of PPE</b>
		<i>Ensure the availability of safety file</i>  <i>Ensure the availability of safety committee and ensure availability of safety reps as well as their capacitation</i>	<i>Safe keeping and Updating</i>  <i>Ensuring functionality</i>	<i>COID</i>	<i>Create safety file</i>  <i>Establish safety Committee and appointment of safety reps</i>	<b>R500k</b>	<b>25% payment of COID</b>	<b>25% payment of COID</b>	<b>25% payment of COID</b>	<b>25% payment of COID</b>
<b>LED</b>	<i>Create an environment that</i>	<i>-Ensure that the municipality</i>	<i>Promote labour intensive projects</i>		<i>Expand CWP to other towns within the</i>	<b>R1 097 000</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>

	<i>promotes the development of the local economy and facilitate job creation.</i>	<i>contributes towards the creation of work opportunities</i>			<i>municipality and appoint employees on EPWP projects.</i>					
		<i>Establish where feasible, functional cooperatives at the local level by 2014.</i>	<i>Source funding for LED Projects &amp; Identification of under-utilized property</i>		<i>Consult potential funders for assistance</i>		<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>
<b>Overall financial Management</b>	<i>Improve the overall financial management of the municipality to ensure clean audits and appropriate financing towards the growth and development of the municipality and the province</i>	<i>Adequate internal controls</i>	<i>Improved financial management and accountability in terms of MFMA: 56 of 2003.</i>	<i>MFMA</i>	<i>Sec 71 reports submitted to Council. Credible AFS</i>		<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>25%</b>

**CFO****KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME/STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	WARDS	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Distribution of accounts to consumers	Ensure timeous distribution of the bulk municipal accounts	Monthly Billing	Billing be done by 20 <sup>th</sup> of the month	Billing is currently done after the 20 <sup>th</sup> due to lack of meter reading management	All	Monthly billing statements to be sent out to all consumers		0%	30%	50%	20%
			Start to issue accounts by utilizing email function on the financial system for	There is no accounts that are send by emails to consumers who require the service	All	Monthly billing statements to be sent out to all consumers		20%	50%	25%	5%



			consumer s								
	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	Revenue Enhancement	% of debtors referred to debt collection company for taking action	Currently only business accounts above 90days in arrears are handed over. It is about 7% of the total debt	All	20% of Debtors referred to debt collection company for taking action		<b>1%</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>4%</b>
	Indigent Support	Revenue Enhancement	Review the indigent policy	Indigent policy is reviewed on a monthly basis		100% accurate indigent register by June 2016		<b>50%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>15%</b>	<b>5%</b>

**KPA 2: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME/STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE		ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
					WARDS			Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>KPA 2: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	<b>Fleet Management</b>	Manage and monitor the fleet operations	Ensuring that Municipal fleet is well taken care of.	<p>To ensure compliance and strict management on fleet by implementing the following: Regular maintenance on all vehicles.</p> <p>To ensure that all municipal vehicles are in roadworthy and are well taken care of,</p>		12 monthly reports status of municipal vehicles and repairs and maintenance cost involved are reported to the Accounting Officer and FINCOM monthly.		<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>

				<p>i.e. The municipal vehicles are kept at municipal premises daily after duty.</p> <p>Conduct regular Meetings between drivers and fleet manager</p> <p>Site training and screening of all drivers</p>							
		Assets Management	Management and monitoring of municipal assets	Disposal of redundant municipal assets	To identify all redundant assets and report	To report to the Accounting Officer and FINCOM quarterly		<b>1 report</b>	<b>1 report</b>	<b>1 report</b>	<b>1 report</b>

				Updating assets register on Monthly basis for all newly purchased assets  To workshop all employee on assets management procedures	for council consideration	on all identified redundant vehicles  To workshop employees on assets management at start of the financial year –July and January.		<b>1 workshop</b>		<b>1 workshop</b>	
	SCM Policy Compliance	Compiling accredited database of suppliers	To procure goods and services through proper and transparen	Monitor and co-ordinate adherence to policy and legislatio		Review SCM policy for adoption by council  Develop and					<b>May 2016</b>

			nt processes in line with the approved SCM Policy.	<p>n as per the requirements of the MFMA, Section 116, by:</p> <p>Updating and review current supply chain policy in line with the new legislation</p> <p>Develop and compile an accredited SCM database. Verify informati</p>		compile an accredited SCM database Goods and services to be procured only from the list of accredited service providers listed on the SCM Database.						<b>July 2015</b>
--	--	--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--	------------------

				on of service providers on municipal database.							
--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**KPA 4: MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME/STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	WARDS	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET / VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT</b>	Increase revenue collection rate to 85% by June 2016	Revenue Enhancement	% increase in revenue  Use the online prepaid system to collect for other services	The current collection is 45%	All	Collection rate to reach 85% by end of March 2016		<b>10%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>25%</b>	<b>30%</b>

			Use the sms messages to communicate with consumers on matters related to their accounts								
	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	Revenue Enhancement	Debt impairment and implement the bad debt policy	The debt impairment policy is not implemented in full.	All	100%		<b>30%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>40%</b>	<b>10%</b>
	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	Revenue Enhancement	Implement Debt Credit Control by-law	Debt Credit Control by-law is not implemented	All	100%		<b>20%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>20%</b>

	ity			ted in full							
	Ensure that accurate meter reading is managed	Meter Reading Managem ent									
	Ensure that accurate meter reading is managed  Ensure that the billing is accurate and credible	Meter Reading Managem ent Data purification	Consisten t and accurate monthly meter readings	Meter readings are not accuratel y read. Monthly meter readings are managed manually . There is no meter devices and system to manage the system.	All	100% accurat e monthl y meter reading s by end June 2016		<b>20%</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>10%</b>



				Implement smart meters for all Ngwathe businesses Implement Time of Use on all Commercials and industrials							
			Data purification conducted and credible financial information available for debtors	Data purification was not done for the past 7years	All	100% accurate billing data for all types of debtors on the system by 30		<b>60%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>10%</b>	<b>10%</b>

						June 2016					
	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	Valuation Roll	% Accuracy of the valuation roll	Comparison between the valuation roll and financial systems for 2014/15 has been done and are currently correcting the variances identified	All	100% Accuracy of the valuation roll be implemented by end June 2016.		<b>30%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>10%</b>
			Implement indigent	Indigent write-off	All	Ensure that all		<b>50%</b>		<b>100%</b>	<b>100%</b>

			write-offs on a quarterly basis	are done once a year		the indigen t write- off are done by the end of June 2016					
	<p>To effectively manage finances and improve financial Sustainability.</p> <p><b>Compliance and Reporting:</b></p> <p>Orders above R100 000.00 and Contract entered</p>	Supply chain Management		<p>To ensure that all projects above R100 000.00 are compliant with the MFMA</p> <p>SCM reports submitted to monthly to Provincial and National Treasury</p>	The municipality engaged with provincial Treasury to assist workshop the SCM on reporting method and template on all SCM related	<p>12 SCM monthly reports submitted to</p> <p>The Accounting Officer, FINCO M, Provincial and National Treasury</p>		<b>3 reports</b>	<b>3 reports</b>	<b>3 reports</b>	<b>3 reports</b>
								<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>

	<p>into/ appointed.</p> <p>Register all construction projects adverts on the CIDB i-tender/web site</p> <p>Irregular Expenditure (Deviations)</p> <p>Supply Chain Implementation report</p>			<p>on all orders above R100 000 .00 and contract entered into.</p> <p>To report to FINCOM all construction projects advertised on CIDB i-tender/website</p> <p>To report on deviation</p>	<p>issues.</p>			<p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>1</b></p>	<p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>1</b></p>	<p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>1</b></p>	<p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>3</b></p> <p><b>1</b></p>
--	---	--	--	---	----------------	--	--	---	---	---	---

				<p>s to FINCOM, Provincial and National Treasury.</p> <p>To report to the Accounti ng Officer and Hon. Mayor the Supply Chain Managem ent implemen tation plan on quarterly basis.</p>							
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

		To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	Stores Management	Security and stores management  Stock taking to be performed quarterly	The municipality is engaging with NLM financial system administrator on the method and system for management, compliance and reporting on all stores related issues.	Submit stock tacking to the Accounting Officer and FINCOM bi-annual.		1	1	1	1
--	--	---	-------------------	--	--	--	--	---	---	---	---

	<i>To ensure that Financial Statements are accurate and contain credible information</i>	<i>Financial Management</i>	<i>Drafting and submission of AFS AG and PT</i>	<i>Ensure that a 2014/15 AFS are submitted to AG by 31 August 2015</i>		<i>Ensure timeous submission of AFS</i>		<b>31 Aug 2015</b>			
--	--	-----------------------------	---	--	--	---	--	--------------------	--	--	--

**KPA 5: GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION**  
**BUDGET AND EXPENDITURE**

<i>Bank and Cash Management</i>	<i>Bank Reconciliation</i>	<i>Ensure that monthly bank reconciliation are performed</i>	<i>Bank reconciliation review done on a monthly basis. The following should be performed:</i>  <i>1. Bank reconciliation be printed on hard copies,</i>	<i>Monthly</i>		<i>3 Report</i>	<i>3 Report</i>	<i>3 Report</i>	<i>3 Report</i>
---------------------------------	----------------------------	--	---	----------------	--	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

<i>Expenditure Management</i>	<i>Implement sec65 and 78 of MFMA</i>	<i>Ensure that any unauthorized, irregular, fruitless and wasteful expenditure are managed and prevented</i>	<i>reviewed, signed and properly filed.</i>	<i>Quarterly</i>		<i>1Report</i>	<i>1Report</i>	<i>1Report</i>	<i>1Report</i>
	<i>Payment of Creditors</i>	<i>Ensure that Creditors that are owed by the entity are paid within the legislative prescribed period.</i>	<i>2. Retrieval of bank statements on daily basis.</i> <i>3. Adhere to legislative requirements by reporting on daily cash withdrawals.</i>  <i>The following should be performed:</i> <i>1. % reduction in unauthorised, irregular, fruitless and wasteful expenditure</i>	<i>Monthly</i>  <i>Monthly</i>		<i>3 Report</i>	<i>2% reduction</i>  <i>3 Report</i>	<i>5% reduction</i>  <i>3 Report</i>	<i>5% reduction</i>  <i>3 Report</i>



			<p>e (%)</p> <p><i>The following should be performed:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>1. Creditors to be paid within 30 days of invoice receipt</i></li> <li><i>2. Cost cutting measures be implemented</i></li> <li><i>3. Minimise over/under expenditure</i></li> <li><i>4. Perform an audit of all payment vouchers</i></li> <li><i>5. Prepare and monitor cash flow projections</i></li> </ol>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

			6. <i>Process payments once or twice a week</i>						
	<i>Payroll</i>	<p><i>Ensure salaries, benefits and other third parties are paid on time</i></p> <p><i>Payroll changes should have supporting documents</i></p> <p><i>Accurate capturing of employee's details on the system</i></p>	<p><i>The following should be captured and paid:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>1. Authorized Overtime</i></li> <li><i>2. All subsidies</i></li> <li><i>3. Cellphone allowances</i></li> <li><i>4. Standby allowances</i></li> <li><i>5. Bonuses</i></li> <li><i>6. Leave pay</i></li> <li><i>7. Night shift allowances</i></li> <li><i>8. Acting allowances</i></li> <li><i>9. Medical aid and pension fund contributions</i></li> </ol>	<i>monthly</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>25%</i>	<i>25%</i>	<i>25%</i>	<i>25%</i>

<i>Budget Management</i>	<i>Ensure that budget allocation is in line with approved budget as legislated</i>	<i>Update the departments of the budget status</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>1. Compilation and submission of budget as per approved budget programme – Council Resolution</i></li> <li><i>2. Co-ordination of Budget Steering Committee meeting – Minutes distributed</i></li> <li><i>3. Budget performance report to all departments</i></li> </ol>	<i>Annually</i>					<i>2 Resolutions</i>
				<i>Quarterly</i>		<i>1 Report</i>	<i>1 Report</i>	<i>1 Report</i>	<i>1 Report</i>
				<i>Monthly</i>		<i>3 Reports</i>	<i>3 Reports</i>	<i>3 Reports</i>	<i>3 Reports</i>
<i>Deviation</i>	<i>Ensure that the total number of deviations is continuously reduced.</i>	<i>To appoint panel of service providers on basic services e.g.</i>	<i>To manage and minimize urgent request of goods and or services</i>	<i>Monthly</i>		<i>3 Report</i>	<i>3 Report</i>	<i>3 Report</i>	<i>1 Report</i>

		(water chemicals , pumps).  To enter into a contract with Government garage for procurement of yellow fleet.	To manage and minimize deviations and urgent request on all heavy duty yellow fleet.	Monthly		3Report	3Report	3Report	1Report
Insurance and Accidents	Municipal assets to be insured for safeguarding of assets.	Effect all insurance claims as and when they happen	The following should be performed: 1. Ensure that monthly payment are effected 2. Compile report regarding all the claims	Monthly  Quarterly		1 Report	1 Report	1 Report	1 Report

**DIRECTORATE: TECHNICAL SERVICES**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME/ STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET/ VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGET			
							Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
<b>MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>	Up-skilling of departmental workers	Skills Development	Cumulative <b>No.</b> of infrastructure related workshops, Forums and training attended by municipal workers per quarter	No. of people to whom skills have been transferred	50 Employees attending at least two workshops		3	6	9	12
	Institutional Capacitation	Departmental Structure	Development of Work Break down Structures and allocation of clearly defined roles and Responsibilities	Clearly Defined Departmental leadership structures.	-All PMU employees to be with clear roles  - All Supervisors and acting leadership to be clearly outlined		60 %	75 %	85 %	100 %

	Development Business Plans and mechanisms to seek funding that will enhance infrastructure Development	Infrastructure Business development	Number of Presentations and Solicited funding on the different available Grants as well as attempts to create partnerships with private sectors	2 Business plans per quarter, and at least 2 Presentations from potential solution providers on Infrastructure	6 Business plans and Technical Reports		<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>
	Improve Departmental Reporting Systems and structures	Programme Management	Number of Complaints on late reporting and substandard compared to previous Financial Year	Feed back from Fund Managers (Cogta, MIG, DWA, DoE)	Reduce Complaints by 60% or Requesting for Scoring from funders		<b>35 %</b>	<b>60 %</b>	<b>75 %</b>	<b>100 %</b>
<b>FINANCIAL MANAGE</b>	Ensure all Grants are spent	Programme Management	<i>Fruitfully Utilise all MIG grants</i>	<i>Progress on Grant Expenditure</i>	100% Fruitful expenditure	<b>Mig R41m</b>	<b>20 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>75 %</b>	<b>100 %</b>

<b>MENT</b>	Fruitfully	ent	<i>Utilize all ACIP Grants</i>	<i>Progress on Grant Expenditure</i>	100% Fruitful expenditure	<b>ACIP TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>100%</b>
			<i>Utilize all RBIG Grants</i>	<i>Progress on Grant Expenditure</i>	100% Fruitful expenditure	<b>TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>100%</b>
			<i>Utilize all DME Grants</i>	<i>Progress on Grant Expenditure</i>	100% Fruitful expenditure	<b>R4.mil</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>100%</b>
<b>LED</b>	Increase the scale of EPWP works created by the Infrastructure Department	Job Creation	No of New Jobs	To create at least 300 Jobs this Financial Year	To create at least 300 Jobs this Financial Year					
<b>GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>	To improve the overall governance and effect of the Technical Services department	Improvement on Audit Outcome	No of suggestion from the Audit that have been addressed	To implement or respond to all issues from the auditors	100%					
		Participatory and inclusive	Number of Council meetings, and Sector	3 Meetins Per Quarter	10					

	nt	Governan ce	Meetings held							
		Project Leadershi p	Number of Disputes resolved	How disputes would have hampered service delivery, and achievement of municipal objectives	To minimize all effects on municipality arising from the disputes on Projects					
		Number of Council resolution s implement ed	Value discovery on council resolutions implemented by Technical Services Department	Time taken to effect resolutions by the Technical Services Division and portfolio committee Resolution	Effect Council Resolutions Timorously					
<b>BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>										
	To increase clean water supply in Ngwathe	<b>Water</b>	<i>Parys: Upgrading of the Water Purification plant utilizing a compact</i>	<i>Project Progress</i>	<i>Construction and Commissioning of new 10 Ml/d plant</i>		25 %	50 %	75 %	100 %



	<i>and to improve revenue collection and eliminate water leaks</i>		<i>plant</i>							
			<i>Heilbron: Installation of 511 residential meters and 45 bulk water meters</i>	<i>Number of households provided with water connections</i>	<i>Provide 511 households with water meters and installation of 45 bulk in business sites</i>		<i>25 %</i>	<i>50 %</i>	<i>75 %</i>	<i>100 %</i>
			<i>Parys: Design and Construction of Pipeline to Tumahole reservoir No 2</i>	<i>Project Progress</i>	<i>Complete construction within 12 Months</i>	<b>TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>75 %</b>	<b>100 %</b>
			<i>Parys: Feasibility Study – Sasolburg-Parys Water Pipeline</i>	<i>Project Stage Progress</i>	<i>Prefeasibility and Feasibility Reports and Designs</i>	<b>TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>50 %</b>	<b>75 %</b>	<b>100 %</b>

			<i>Vredefort: Feasibility Study – Parys-Vredefort Water Pipeline</i>	<i>Project Stage Progress</i>	<i>Prefeasibility and Feasibility Reports and Designs</i>	<b>TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>
			<i>Edenville: Feasibility Study – Koppies-Edenville Water Pipeline</i>	<i>Project Stage Progress</i>	<i>Prefeasibility and Feasibility Reports and Designs</i>	<b>TBA</b>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>
	<i>To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with decent and dignified sanitation that</i>	<b>Sanitation</b>	<i>Koppies: Upgrading of sewer treatment plant</i> <i>Edenville: Bucket Eradication</i>	<i>Capacity of the works and the green drop status</i> <i>No. of Buckets Eradicated</i>	<i>Refurbish some elements of the Waste Water Treatment Plants</i> <i>200 Houses to be bucket eradicated</i>	<i>R 3,000,000</i> <i>R 8 000 000</i>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>

	<i>maintains their dignity.</i>		<i>Koppies: Eradication of Spillages in Kwakwatsi Section</i>	<i>Minimized Spillages</i>	<i>Zero Spillage</i>	<i>R 5 000,000</i>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>
			<i>Parys: Eradication of Spillages in Mbeki and Tokoloho Section</i>	<i>Minimized Spillages</i>	<i>Zero Spillage</i>	<i>R 5 000 000</i>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>
	<i>To provide residents of Ngwathe LM with Roads and decent Mobility Access</i>	<b>Roads, Bridges and Storm Water channels</b>	<i>Heilbron:Regravelling of Various Street</i>	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Length Regravelled</i>	<i>R 500 000</i>	<b>25 %</b>	<b>5 0 %</b>	<b>7 5 %</b>	<b>10 0%</b>
			<i>Edenville: Regravelling of Various Street</i>	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Length Regravelled</i>	<i>R 500 000</i>				
			<i>Koppies: Regravelling of Various Street</i>	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Length Regravelled</i>	<i>R 500 000</i>				
			<i>Vredefort: Regravelling</i>	<i>%Progress on</i>	<i>Length Regravelled</i>	<i>R 500 000</i>				

			<i>of Various Street</i>	<i>Project</i>						
			<i>Parys: Regravelling of Various Street</i>	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Length Regravelled</i>	<i>R 500 000</i>				
	<i>Providing opportunities for Ngwathe LM's residents to actively participate in sports and recreation . The Municipality also wishes to harness the socio-economic contributions that</i>	<b>Sports and recreation</b>	Edenville Sports Complex	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Complete all design and Commence Construction</i>	<i>R 8 Million</i>				
			Kwakwatsi Sports Complex	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Complete all design and Commence Construction</i>	<i>R 8Million</i>				
			Vredefort Sports Complex	<i>%Progress on Project</i>	<i>Complete all design and Commence Construction</i>	<i>R 8Million</i>				

[illegible]

**DIRECTORATE: COMMUNITY SERVICES**

KPA	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	PROGRAMME	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	BASELINE	ANNUAL TARGET	BUDGET / VOTE	QUARTERLY TARGETS			
							Q 1	Q 2	Q 3	Q 4
<b>Basic Service Deliver and infrastructure Development</b>	To ensure accessibility to sports facilities to the Community	<b>Sports and Recreation:</b>	Three sports facility will be ungraded.	Koppies	To have	R200 000.	5	5	2	2
				Refurbishment of sports complex	refurbished 3 sport facilities in:	00	0	0	5	5
				Phiritona		R3 681 307.00	2	2	2	2
				Fencing of Munmec Sports Facility Vredefort		5.00	5	5	5	5
				Phiritona Construction of Sports Complex.	Kwakwatsi.	R5 261 935.00	2	2		

	To promote sustainable human settlement	. <b>Housing</b> : .	New Township establishment	Kwakwatsi 1764  Tumahole 890  Phiritona 1368  Mokwallo 327  Ngwathe 513	To have completed pegging of 5300 erven throughout NLM		2 5	2 5	2 5	2 5
<b>Spatial Development</b>	To ensure a coordinated developmental planning and implementation	<b>Spatial Development Plan and Land use Management</b>	SDF aligned with the IDP	Approved SDF	Establishment of Municipal Planning Tribunal (MPT) and implementation of	R 140 000.00	2 5	2 5	2 5	2 5

	tion				Spluma					
<b>Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development</b>	To have sustainable fire and rescue services	<b>Fire and Rescue:</b>	Skills developed for Fire Officers.	Training of Fire Officers on First aid	10 Fire officer trained	R100 000.00	25	25	25	25
	To provide sustainable traffic management within Ngwathe Local Municipality	<b>Traffic:</b>	Procurement of portable number plate recognition equipment	Purchasing of portable number plate recognition equipment	One per quarter	R150 000.00	50		50	



<b>LED</b>	To diversify the agricultural sector by introducing one small scale fishery by November 2014	<b>Agriculture :</b>	Organise capacity training for emerging farmers	Organise training on commonage by-laws, operation of auction pan and crop farming	1 Per town	R200 000.00	25	25	25	25
		<b>Nurseries:</b>	Establishment of nurseries	1 Parys, 1 Vredefort, 1Koppies, 1Heilbron, 1 Edenvill	Establishment of 5 nurseries	R360 000.00	25	25	25	25
	Quarterly bring initiatives to create an enabling environment that is	<b>SMME's:</b>	Organise capacity training for emerging farmers	Organise coaching and mentoring for SMME on how to make	On-going	R100 000.00	25	25	25	25

	conducive to attract more investors for business growth			business sustainabl e						
		Re- establishm ent of Juice factory and Printing Plant Project	Organise training for new beneficiaries on how to operate new project	Juice factory and printing plant re opened & operational	Re- establishm ent of juice factory and printing plant	R350 000.00	2 5	2 5	2 5	2 5
		Establish ment of business forum	organise business community	Organise capacity building workshop for effective	On - going	R100 000. 00	2 5	2 5	2 5	2 5

				functionality of the forum						
	To identify and implement two events to promote tourism within the jurisdiction of the NLM by December 2015	<b>Tourism:</b>	Organize tourism stakeholders for purpose of establishing a forum and production of promotional pamphlets and brochures	Tourism forum established	Launching of Tourism Forum in September	R30000.00	25	25	25	25
<b>Financial Viability</b>	To effectively manage sustainability finances	<b>Revenue</b>	Contribution towards municipal revenue	Set annual targets for traffic section			25	25	25	25

	and improve financial									
<b>Good Governance and Public Participation</b>	Improveme nt on Audit Outcome		Less Audit queries	Disclaimer	Contribute towards clean audit		2 5	2 5	2 5	2 5

## **CHAPTER NINE (9) MULTI YEAR PROJECT PLANNING /CIP ( UNFUNDED PROJECTS)**

**The section indicates the challenges faced by the municipality in terms of the projects that have to be completed in the outer years**

### **KPA .1.BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY & INFRASTRUCTURE INVESTMENT**

<b>PROJECT NO</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>POSSIBLE FUNDING SOURCE</b>
WA1	Construction of a water pipeline	EDENVILLE	DWS MIG NLM
WA2	Upgrading of the water purification works.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PARYS</li><li>• KOPPIES</li><li>• VREDEFORT</li></ul>	& NLM
WA3	Upgrading of the pump equipment and pipe lines between the reservoirs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Parys</li></ul>	MIG
WA5	Upgrading the pump stations and equipments.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All towns</li></ul>	MIG

WA8	Implement audit system to monitor water usage and losses (including bulk water meters)Scada& telemetry systems)	All towns	NLM, FDDM
WA9	Implementation of maintenance plan for bulk and network water infrastructure	All towns	NLM
WA10	To provide house connections for the following erven :		MIG; NLM
WA11	Installation of a water reticulation network for envisaged extensions.	All towns	MIG & NLM
WA12	Proper needs assessment of networks to be upgraded.	All towns	NLM
WA13	Upgrading of pipelines according to assessment	All towns	FDDM
WA14	Replacement of old reticulation systems and networks. ( old asbestos pipes, meters etc)	All towns	NLM
WA15	Implement comprehensive awareness campaign on water conservation.	All towns	NLM

SAN1	Installation of water borne sewer systems with a toilet structure. (bucket eradication )		MIG, NLM FDDM
SAN3	Maintenance of sewerage works and equipping each sewer pump station with a generator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Parys</li> <li>▪ Heilbron</li> <li>▪ Koppies</li> <li>▪ Edenville: (oxidation pond.)</li> </ul>	MIG, NLM FDDM

SAN4	The upgrading of internal and bulk networks:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Vredefort : upgrading of the Green street pipeline and Water Street pipeline</li> <li>▪ Mokwallo: Installation of bulk sewerage line and pump station</li> <li>▪ Heilbron: upgrading of the network along Langmark, President and EerwaardeKok Streets</li> <li>▪ Phiritona : upgrading of existing system</li> <li>▪ Sandersville : upgrade the network and pipeline due to</li> </ul>	MIG,FDDM & NLM
------	--	--	----------------

		<p>continuous blockages</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ General: Lifting of sewerage manholes</li> <li>▪ Koppies: Upgrading of the system</li> </ul>	
SAN8	Provision of public toilet facilities.	All towns in Ngwathe ( high traffic public areas)	NLM, FDDM
SAN9	Upgrade current toilet facilities within municipal facilities	All municipal facilities	FDDM, NLM

SAN11	Upgrading/ Rehabilitation of Sewerage purification plants.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Parys, Heilbron, Koppies</li> </ul>	FDDM, (National Sanitation Strategy
SAN 12	Construction collapsed sewer pipeline.	Vredefort	NLM, MIG
SAN13	Upgrading waste water treatment works	Koppies	NLM, MIG
San 14	Procuring a suction tanker	All towns	



<b>Project No</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>POSSIBLE FUNDING SOURCE</b>
H1	Complete RDP and PHP houses	All towns	FDDM, NLM
H2	.Annual review of the Housing Sector Plan		DRDLR
H3	Formulate and adopt Land Use Management Scheme	All towns	NLM

H4	Conduct Land use Audit	All Towns	FDDM, NLM
H5	Conduct a survey of municipal properties and related occupations for formulation of a property register & maintenance plan thereof	All towns	NLM,

<b>Project No.</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
SSW1	Upgrading of all trafficable gravel to paved with storm water drainage roads in and to all areas on a	All Towns	NLM

	prioritized basis according to master plan:		
SSW2	Development and Implementation of roads master plan.	All towns	NLM, FDDM
SSW3	To establish mobile weighbridges in identified areas by Provincial Government)	Parys & Heilbron	DRP&T

SSW4	Provision of street names( plates ), traffic signs to all streets, road markings and parking meters	All towns	NLM
SSW5	Provision of traffic lights and other traffic control measures and calming measures such as Street Humps where necessary	All towns	FDDM, NLM, DPRT
SSW6	To provide trafficable streets and storm water drainage networks including the following bridges and acquire heavy equipment according to the master plan  Roads Resealing  Pot holes repairs	Where needed	MIG/ De beers

SSW7	Provision and upgrading of adequate taxi ranks strategically situated in all town areas according to Business Plan	All towns (Parys phase 1 done)	NLM  Sasol
Ref1	Implement the household recycling system	All towns	NLM
Ref2	Implementation of a community awareness program regarding refuse dumping to promote a clean and healthy environment.	All towns	FDDM, NLM
Ref3	Legalize landfill site	Edenville and Vredefort	NLM
Ref4	Rehabilitation of old landfill sites and quarries	All towns	FDDM, COGTAHS

<b>PROJECT No.</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>POSSIBLE FUNDING SOURCE</b>
Ref 5	Provision of refuse bins	All towns	NLM
Ref 6	Acquire waste handling equipment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All towns</li> </ul>	NLM

<b>Project No.</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
CEM 1	Establishment of new cemeteries according to the SDF	All towns	NLM, FDDM
CEM 2	Sytemic upgrading that includes, greening,fencing walkways ,ablution blocks, water provision. Number plates.	All towns	NLM
PARK 1	Greening: Nurseries, Land scaping, Cleansing of parks, Food gardens, Fisheries	All towns	NLM, FDDM, Other sponsors
<b>Project No.</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
SPORT1	To upgrade and maintain all current sport facilities)	Sckonckenville, Sandersville Edenville & Vredefort Stadiums	NLM/ Lottery,

SPORT2	Development and promotion of other sporting codes(CYCLING ,NETBALL,SWIMMING,CRICKET etc	All towns	NLM DSAC
--------	---	-----------	-------------

## **KPA 2. FINANCIAL VIABILITY & FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

<b>Project No.</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION,</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
FV1	Data purification on consumer accounts	All towns	MSIG FDDM
FV2	Key changes on pre-paid meters	All towns	NLM
FV6	Development updating of movable assets register	All towns	MSIG, FDDM, NLM

## **KPA 3. LED**

<b>PROJECT NO</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION PROJECT</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
LED1	Provide incentives for industrial - business development	All towns	NLM

LED2	Facilitate the establishment of Business Service Centers and tender advice centre.	All towns	FDDM, DTEEA, NLM
LED3	Identification of unutilized council properties for economic development purposes	All towns	NLM
LED4	Investigation of utilization of efficient of the air field	Parys	NLM

**KPA 4: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT KPA .**

<b>PROJECT NO</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION PROJECT</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FUNDING SOURCE</b>
MTID1	Appointment and acquisition of suitable ( electronic) security system for buildings & entrance control system for the municipal offices /& cashier points	All towns	NLM
MTID2	Development and enforcement of relevant by laws	All towns	NLM FDDM
MTID3	Upgrading and development of ICT, telephone operation system and website	All towns	NLM FDDM
MTID4	Development of GIS system civil engineering software (maintenance plans, etc)	All towns	NLM FDDM
MTID5	Implementation of language policy	All towns	NLM
MTID6	Building the Council Chamber	Parys	NLM

MTID 7	Fencing of all municipal buildings	All towns	NLM
MTID 8	Establishment of Thusong centers	All towns	DSACR , DoP
MTID9	Implementation of the electronic clocking system	All towns	

#### **KPA 5. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PATICIPATION**

<b>Project No.</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>Funding Source</b>
COM1	Relaunching of Ngwathe news letter and quarterly publications	ALL TOWNS	NLM
COM2	Marketing and branding of Ngwathe Local Municipality	All towns	NLM
CSS3	Assist indigents & child headed families with change of ownership	All towns	NLM
CSS4	Reclaiming abandoned sites	All towns	NLM
CSS5	Assist communities with the acquisition of Birth certificates & ID's	All towns	NLM



<b>Project No.</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>Funding Source</b>
POV1	Support to organizations conducting poverty alleviation projects	All towns	NLM
POV2	Investigate for an establishment of a regional career centre	All towns	NLM
POV3	Provide support for emerging farmers	All towns	DoA
POV4	Establish food security projects ( food gardens) for needy communities	All towns	NLM
POV5	Completion of Phehellang Bakery	Edenville	DSD, FDDM, NLM
POV 6	Homes for the elderly & homeless children	All towns	NLM

<b>Project No.</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>Funding Source</b>
YOUTH1	Development of Ngwathe Youth Development Policy	All towns	NLM

YOUTH 2	Youth awareness campaigns	All towns	NLM, FDDM
YOUTH 3	Development and promotion of youth entrepreneurial programs.	All towns	FDDM, FYC, DTEEA

<b>Project No</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>Funding Source</b>
GND1	Implement skills development programs benefiting women and people with disabilities  (SKILLS DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMS NOT YET IMPLEMENTED)	All towns	
GND2	Facilitation of gender development programs and workshops	All towns	

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Learnership for motor mechanics</li> <li>• Mageu making project</li> </ul>	<b>EDENVILLE</b>	FDDM, LGSETA, NLM
--	---	------------------	-------------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assistance with events management skills</li> <li>• Providing security services to the municipality</li> <li>• Provision for commonage land for agricultural projects</li> <li>• Establishment of a plant for building material</li> <li>• Sewing and embroidery centre</li> <li>• Cemetery cleaning and maintenance</li> <li>• Establishment of a laundry</li> <li>• Establishment of a sports complex</li> <li>• Increase a number of sports fields</li> <li>• Establishment of a cultural village</li> <li>• Computer training centre</li> <li>• Assistance with broadcasting</li> </ul>		
--	--	--	--

	skills (Hlalele) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of an ambulance for youth to volunteer</li> <li>• Control centre for after hours calls for municipal services</li> </ul>		
--	--	--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cemetery cleaning and maintenance</li> <li>• Facilitate for the bentonite mine plant to be established locally</li> <li>• Learnership for motor mechanics</li> <li>• Provision of industrial sites</li> <li>• Disposable nappies project</li> <li>• Establishment of the art centre</li> <li>• Improvement of the existing sports facilities in town</li> <li>• Learnerships and internships</li> </ul>	<b>KOPPIES</b>	FDDM, LGSETA, NLM
--	--	----------------	-------------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meetings with unemployed graduates</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Learnership for electricity</li> <li>• Establishment of a brick making plant</li> <li>• Provision for commonage land for agricultural projects</li> <li>• Cemetery cleaning and maintenance</li> <li>• Provision of bottle making machine</li> <li>• Educate local residents about the Dome</li> <li>• Establishment of a sports complex</li> <li>• Skills transfer on electricity</li> <li>• Provision of motivational speakers for Love Life projects</li> <li>• Provision of information on different skills</li> </ul>	<b>VREDEFORT</b>	FDDM, LGSETA, NLM

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coffins making project</li> <li>• Brick making plant</li> <li>• Cemetery cleaning and maintenance</li> <li>• Provision for commonage land for agricultural projects</li> <li>• Bakery</li> <li>• Streets naming project</li> <li>• Building of a mall</li> <li>• Establishment of arts and culture centre</li> <li>• Establishment of the stadium</li> <li>• Establishment and upgrading of existing swimming pools</li> <li>• Assistance of emerging companies to prepare business plans</li> <li>• Establishment of parks</li> </ul>	<b>HEILBRON</b>	FDDM, LGSETA, NLM
--	---	-----------------	-------------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assistance of Let Live Together project on gardening and chicken abattoir project</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cleaning of cemeteries</li> <li>• Purchase unutilized farms within Ngwathe Local Municipality for farming projects</li> <li>• Cleaning of ward</li> <li>• Technical Training</li> <li>• Computer Training Centre</li> <li>• Safety and Security Project</li> <li>• Cooperatives</li> <li>• Job placement agency</li> <li>• Career guidance</li> <li>• Sports development centre</li> <li>• Brick laying project</li> <li>• Sewing projects</li> </ul>	<b>PARYS</b>	FDDM, LGSETA, NLM

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hydroponics</li><li>• Ngwathe youth rejuvenation programme</li><li>• Upgrade graduate database</li><li>• Ngwathe youth commission</li><li>• Revival</li></ul>		
--	---	--	--



## **CHAPTER TEN (10) :PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM FRAMEWORK**

### **( PMS)**

#### 1. Introduction

The Municipal System Act (MSA) of 2000 mandates municipalities to establish Performance Management Systems, and the Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001 describes the municipality's Performance Management System as consisting of a framework that articulates and represents how the municipality's cycle and processes of performance planning, monitoring, measurement, review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organized, managed and to determine the roles of different stakeholders. Furthermore, the MSA Municipal System Act 32 of 2000 and the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003 (MFMA) requires that the 5-year strategy of a municipality, the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), must be aligned to the municipal budget and be monitored through the annual Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP). Thus, the IDP, the budget and the municipality's performance systems are intertwined.

#### 2. PMS Framework

Ngwathe municipality does have a PMS Framework which was adopted by Council on the 30<sup>th</sup> of September 2014.

#### 3. Policy and legal context for performance management

Legislative enactments, which govern performance management in municipalities are found in the Batho Pele Principles; the White Paper on Local Government; Municipal Systems Act, 2000; Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations 2001; Municipal Finance Management Act 2003; Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers Directly Accountable to Municipal Managers, 2006; the Framework on Managing Performance Information and lastly the Directive: Performance Information Public Audit Act, 2004 published under Notice 646 of 2007.

Although it is not considered necessary to go into detail in respect of all the legislation it is important to give a brief overview of the most important legislative provisions set out in:

- The Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000
- The Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 7 of 2013
- The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001
- The Municipal Finance Management Act, No. 56 of 2003; and

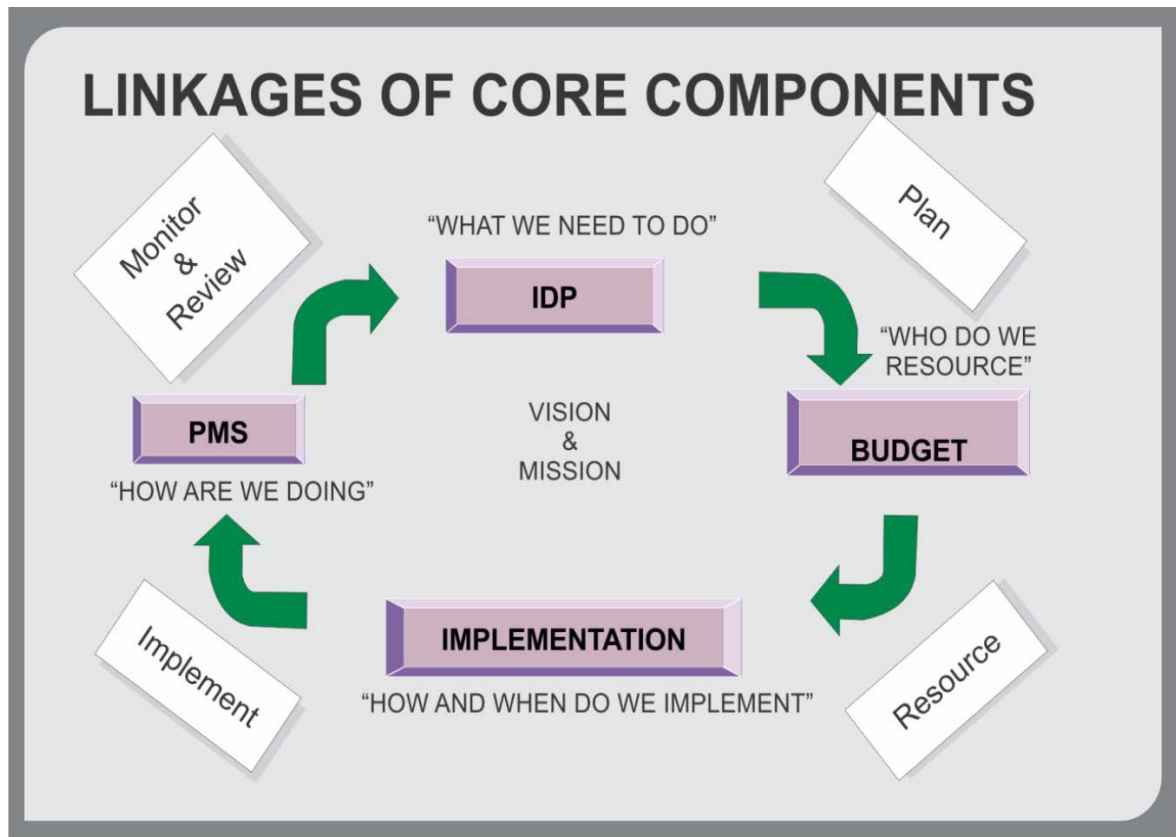
- The Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers Directly Accountable to Municipal Managers, 2006.

#### 4. Objectives of Performance Management System

The general objectives of managing performance are, inter alia to:

- Facilitate increased accountability
- The PMS should provide a mechanism for ensuring increased accountability between:
  - The citizens of the Local Municipality and the Municipal Council;
  - The political and administrative components of the Municipality; and
  - The Office of the Municipal Manager and each municipal department.
- Facilitate learning and improvement
- The PMS must also provide a platform for learning and improvement. It should enable the Municipality to assess which approaches and methods are having the desired impact and in this way enable the Municipality to make the necessary improvements that will lead to more effective service delivery. It should form the basis for monitoring implementation, evaluating and improving the IDP.
- Provide early warning signals
- The PMS should provide managers and supervisors at all levels, the Municipal Manager, Portfolio Committees and the Council with early warning of performance targets that are not going to be reached and thus adversely affecting the implementation of the IDP. It is important that the system informs decision makers of areas of delivery that are lagging behind so that they can intervene and take corrective action as required.
- Facilitate decision making
- The PMS should provide suitable management information that will allow for efficient, effective and informed decision making, particularly on the allocation of resources.
- The objectives listed above are not exhaustive, but briefly summarize the intended benefits of the PMS that is to be reviewed and implemented. These intended objectives, together with other criteria, should be used to evaluate the PMS at the end of each financial year.

The following is a linkage of the core components



## 5. Principles of performance management

The following principles are proposed to inform and guide the review and implementation of the Ngwathe Local Municipality's PMS:

- a. Simplicity
- b. Politically driven
- c. Incremental implementation
- d. Transparency and accountability
- e. Integration
- f. Objectivity.

## 6. Delegation of Responsibilities

The Municipal Systems Act (2000) places the responsibility of adopting a Performance Management System (PMS) on the Council, while holding the Mayor responsible for its implementation.

The Mayor of Ngwathe Local Municipality delegates the responsibility for the development and management of the PMS to the Municipal Manager. The development of the system is a once-off activity and the Municipal Manager

submits the system to the Mayor, who in turn forwards it to the full council for approval. The responsibility of implementation and management of the system remains with the Municipal Manager as part of his core functions as provided for in Section 55(1) of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000.

## **7. The Relationship between Integrated Development Planning (IDP), the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) and Performance Management**

Integrated development planning, as defined by the Municipal Systems Act, is a process by which municipalities prepare a 5 year strategic plan that is reviewed annually in consultation with communities and stakeholders. This strategic plan adopts an implementation approach and seeks to promote integration. By balancing the economic, ecological and social pillars of sustainability without compromising the institutional capacity required in the implementation and by coordinating actions across sectors and spheres of government, the IDP delivers a number of products that translate to the formulation of the municipal budget, the development of an annual Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan and an organizational performance scorecard for the municipality.

## **8. Performance Measurement Model**

### **What is a Performance Measurement Model?**

Performance management is defined as a strategic process to management (or system of management), which equips leaders, managers, employees and stakeholders at different levels with a set of tools and techniques to regularly plan, continuously monitor, periodically measure and review performance of the organization in terms of indicators and targets for efficiency, effectiveness and impact.

### **The Balanced Scorecard Performance Model**

The widely used performance model is the Balanced Scorecard. The Balanced Scorecard ensures that there is balance in the set of indicators being compiled. It was developed as a means to measure performance by combining both financial and non-financial indicators to create a balance between financial and other critical functional areas in organizations. By combining financial indicators and non-financial indicators in a single report, the Balanced Scorecard aims to provide managers with richer and more relevant information about the activities that they are managing than is provided by financial indicators alone.

## SCORECARD FOR THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER

### ***KPA 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY***

***WEIGHT: 20%***

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	MEASURABLE OBJECTIVE/ OUTPUT  (Activity)	PERFORMANCE MEASURES  / INDICATOR	Year under Review								COMMENTS	OWN RATING (1-5)	RATING BY PANEL MEMBER (1-5)
			Q1		Q2		Q3		Q4				
			Target	Actual	Target	Actual	Target	Actual	Target	Actual			
Copy from Measurable Objective/Output	Identify Projects and Activities										Challenges, Successes, Planned Measures	Self Assessment	

											<i>for Impr ovem ent</i>		
To coordi nate and monito r infrast ructur e develo pment for provisi on and access to service s		<i>Numbe r of house holds with access to basic service s</i>											

## 8. PMS MANAGEMENT CYCLE

### Phase 1: Planning

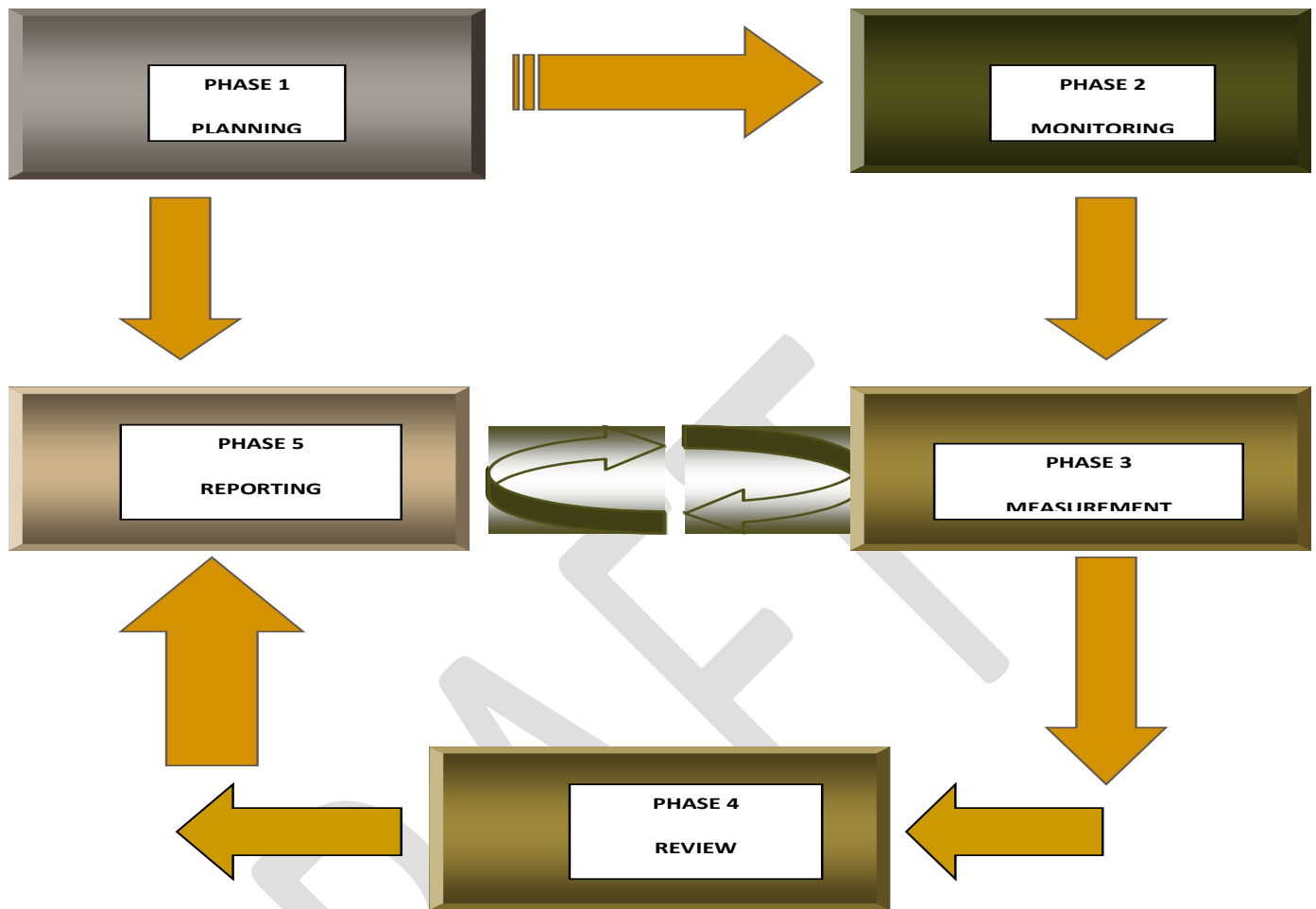
Planning for performance simply means developing and reviewing the IDP annually in preparation for continuous implementation. Municipal performance planning is part of the IDP strategic planning processes. The IDP process and the performance management process are seamlessly integrated.

## **Phase 2: Monitoring**

Monitoring of performance is done an on-going process throughout the year and will run parallel to the implementation of the IDP. Monitoring will be conducted within each department. Ngwathe Local Municipality will use a paper-based and report-based monitoring mechanism. Different role players are allocated tasks to monitor and gather information that would assist the municipality to detect early indications of under-performance and take corrective measures on time. Information management plays a central role during this phase.

Ngwathe Local Municipality's monitoring system places responsibility on each Department, Division/Section and Individual employee to collect relevant data and information to support the monitoring process. Evidence of performance will be gathered, stored by each department and presented to substantiate claims of meeting (or not meeting) performance standards. This evidence is stored on files (both manual filing and electronic filing, where possible). The Heads of the Departments will allocate responsibility in their offices for information management, as these performance information files must be separate from normal registry filing. Even though registry will have all the data and file it as per their filing system, the performance information will be filed according to key performance area and key performance indicators. These files will be regarded as portfolio of evidence kept for purposes of performance measurement, performance review and audit in the other phases.

Figure : The Organizational Performance Management Cycle



**The roles and responsibilities for monitoring are allocated as follows:**

- **Line Managers** – Each line manager will be responsible for monitoring and reporting on each indicator in their departmental scorecards. They will monitor performance of their direct reports under their functional areas and report as per the indicator that has been set to measure that functional area. This monitoring occurs on a daily basis, with reports being submitted to line managers by direct reports on a weekly basis. The line manager is responsible for compiling section reports on each of the indicators, collect the relevant data related to each project and indicator and facilitate proper storage of the data in files.
- **Admin Officers** – The Admin Officers in each section has a responsibility of managing indicator information files as per the municipality's monitoring system. They are also responsible for collating this information in preparation for submission of performance reports to departmental heads by line managers. This responsibility is carried out on a weekly basis.



- **Departments or Directorates and Teams** – The departments will receive progress reports on progress into the implementation of their departmental scorecards from line managers on a bi-monthly basis. The bi-monthly reports are compiled into monthly reports that are discussed at the Management meetings.
- **The Management Team** – The management team discusses the departmental performance progress on a monthly basis and need to reflect on whether targets are being met, reflect on the reasons being provided by departments for targets not being met and suggest corrective action. The purpose for a performance-driven management team is to instill a culture of collective management and eliminate the silo mentality.
- **Section 79/80 Committees** – These committees will monitor performance of their respective services against departmental scorecards. They will receive reports on a monthly basis and must appraise themselves on progress on performance of their service areas against set targets. Where targets are not being met, the Section 79 Committees should ensure that the reasons for poor performance are satisfactory and sufficient to address whatever delays, and corrective strategies are sufficient to address the poor performance.
- **The Mayor** – The Municipal Manager will submit monthly progress reports on all the indicators in the organisational scorecard to the Mayor in order for her to monitor if targets are being achieved and where they are not, that proper corrective strategies are put in place to keep to the timelines set for achieving each indicator and targets.
- **Municipal Council** – Performance reports will be submitted to the council twice a year. A mid-term report and an annual report are the two reports that will be submitted to council.

### **Phase 3: Measurement and Analysis**

Performance Measurement is essentially the process of analysing the data provided by the above Performance Monitoring System in order to assess performance. At organisational level, Performance Measurement is formally executed on a monthly and quarterly basis, whilst Performance Measurement at individual level is done quarterly.

For purposes of evaluating the annual performance of the **municipal manager**, an evaluation panel constituted of the following persons is established

Mayor;

Chairperson of the performance audit committee or the audit committee in the absence of a performance

audit committee;  
Member of the executive committee  
Mayor and/or municipal manager from another municipality; and  
Member of a ward committee as nominated by the Mayor.

For purposes of evaluating the annual performance of **managers directly accountable to the municipal managers**, an evaluation panel constituted of the following persons is in place -

Municipal Manager;

Chairperson of the performance audit committee or the audit committee in the absence of a performance audit committee;

Member of the executive committee;

and Municipal manager from another municipality.

#### **Phase 4: Performance Reviews**

Performance review is a process where the municipality, after measuring its own performance as detailed in the previous phase, assesses whether it is giving effect to the IDP. It is a phase where it will assess whether it is doing the right thing, doing it right and better, or not. Performance reviews will be conducted through the municipality's scorecard model by assessing performance against the 6 Key Performance Areas (KPA's), indicators, and targets.

#### **Phase 5: Reporting on Performance**

Reporting requires that the municipality take its key performance areas, its performance objectives, indicators, targets, measurements and analysis, and present this information in a simple and accessible format, relevant and useful to the different stakeholders for review

### **9. Reporting**

#### **Who Reports to Whom?**

The reporting process follows the lines of accountability as detailed in the performance monitoring, measurement and review phases above. Reports are submitted to the following stakeholders during the timelines outlined in the municipality's performance process plan as shown under the **Performance Cycle** section:

- Ngwathe Local Municipality reporting to communities , including quarterly reporting to Ward Committees;
- Mayor reporting to Council;
- Municipal Manager reporting to the Mayor;
- Directors reporting to the Municipal Manager and Section 80 Committees;
- Line Managers reporting to their relevant directors
- Supervisors reporting to their Regional Manager;
- Employees reporting to their respective Supervisors.

#### **10. Aligning Employee Performance to the Organizational Performance Management System**

The performance of an organisation is integrally linked to that of its employees. If employees do not perform an organisation will fail. It is therefore important to manage both the organizational and employee performance at the same time. The relationship between organisational performance and employee performance starts from planning, implementation, monitoring and review. All the 5 phases in the organizational performance apply to the management of employee performance. The monitoring system using weekly, bi-monthly, monthly and quarterly reports is informed by individual activities at sectional and departmental levels. However, employee performance reviews differ from organizational reviews.

#### **11. Rewarding Performance**

This phase establishes the link between performance and reward. It aims to direct and reinforce effective work behaviours by determining and allocating equitable and appropriate rewards to employees.

The performance reward system applied to Section 57 Employees is different from the performance reward system applied to Permanent Employees who are not Section 57 Employees. Section 57 employees reward system is clearly spelt out in the 2006 Performance Regulations and these rewards are in the form of performance cash bonuses that are allocated after the tabling of the receipt of the audit report and tabling of the annual report, i.e. in February of each year.

In terms of Regulation 8 of the 2006 Municipal Performance Regulations, a performance bonus, based on affordability, may be paid to the Section 57 Managers, after -

- (1) the annual report for the financial year under review has been tabled and adopted by the municipal council;
- (2) an evaluation of performance in accordance with the provisions of regulation 23; and
- (3) approval of such evaluation by the municipal council as a reward for outstanding performance.

Regulation 32 sets out the following provisions with regard to managing evaluation outcomes and rewarding performance for Section 57 Employees:

- (1) The evaluation of the employee's performance will form the basis for rewarding outstanding performance or correcting unacceptable performance.
- (2) A performance bonus ranging from 5% to 14% of the all-inclusive remuneration package may be paid to an employee in recognition of outstanding performance. In determining the performance bonus the relevant percentage is based on the overall rating, calculated by using the applicable assessment-rating calculator; provided that -
  - (a) a score of 130% to 149% is awarded a performance bonus ranging from 5% to 9%; and
  - (b) a score of 150% and above is awarded a performance bonus ranging from 10% to 14%.

In the case of unacceptable performance, the employer shall -

- (a) provide systematic remedial or developmental support to assist the employee to improve his or her performance; and
- (b) after appropriate performance counselling and having provided the necessary guidance and/or support and reasonable time for improvement in performance, and performance does not improve, the employer may consider steps to terminate the contract of employment of the employee on grounds of unfitness or incapacity to carry out his or her duties.

Ngwathe Local Municipality is obliged to abide by these provisions when dealing with outcomes of performance evaluation and in rewarding performance to Section 57 Employees.

If an employee is a permanent employee of Ngwathe Local Municipality and is thus covered by the conditions of service of the municipality, performance is not directly linked to pay. Currently permanent employees receive an annually bargained increase determined by the South African Local Government Bargaining Council (SALGBC). Permanent employees who perform outstandingly will receive non-cash rewards, until such time as a national remuneration policy dictates otherwise.

Examples of non-cash rewards appear in **Table** below.

**Table 2: Examples of Non-Cash Rewards**

<b>Performance levels</b>	<b>Examples of non-cash reward</b>
<b>Outstanding/above</b>  <b>performance levels 90 – 100</b>	<p>A. Employee is granted three “free” leave days. There has to be an agreement on the dates and such leave must be taken within three months of it being awarded otherwise it will be forfeited.</p> <p>B. Merit Awards</p> <p>C. Mayoral Excellence Awards</p> <p>D. Special Opportunities, e.g. scholarships/</p> <p>E. Seminars/ conference relevant to his/ her work and study tours ( the amount spent on this exercise including travelling should not exceed the rand value of three days leave i.e the rand value of three days of employee’s total package.</p> <p>F. Promotion ( w/a)</p>
<b>Performance above expectation 80 – 89</b>	<p>One and a half free leave days: There has to be an agreement on the dates and such leave must be taken within three months of it being awarded otherwise it will be forfeited.</p> <p>Seminars/ conference relevant to his/ her work and study tours ( the amount spent on this exercise including travelling should not exceed the rand value of one and a half days leave i.e the rand value of one and a half days of employee’s total package.</p> <p>A work tool that will enhance the employee’s work</p>
<b>Average performance 61 - 80</b>	No specific reward
<b>Below average performance &lt;60</b>	Compulsory performance counseling

	and monthly coaching sessions by manager/supervisor
--	---

## 12. Monitoring and Evaluation

### 12.1. Introduction

A monitoring and evaluation system is a set of organisational structures, management processes, standards, strategies, plans, indicators, information systems, reporting lines and accountability relationships which enables national and provincial departments, municipalities and other institutions to discharge their M&E functions effectively. In addition to these formal managerial elements are the organisational culture, capacity and other enabling conditions which will determine whether the feedback from the M&E function influence the organisation's decision-making, learning and service delivery.

Principles of M & E

M & E should contribute to improved governance	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transparency</li> <li>• Accountability</li> <li>• Participation</li> <li>• Inclusion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All findings are publicly available unless there are compelling reasons otherwise</li> <li>• Use of resources in open to public scrutiny</li> <li>• Voice is provided to historically marginalised people</li> <li>• Traditionally excluded interests are represented throughout M&amp;E processes</li> </ul>
M&E should be rights based	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill of Rights</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A rights based culture is promoted and entrenched by its value base for all M&amp;E processes</li> </ul>
M&E should be developed-oriented-nationally , institutionally and locally	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pro-poor orientation</li> <li>• Service delivery</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poverty's causes ,effects and dynamics are highlighted and the interests of poor people are prioritized above those of more advantaged groups</li> <li>• Variables reflecting institutional performance</li> </ul>

and performance	and service delivery are analysed and reviewed, links are identified and responsive strategies are formulated
M&E should be undertaken ethically and with integrity	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confidentiality</li> <li>• Respect</li> <li>• Representation of</li> <li>• Fair reporting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promises of anonymity and non-identifiability are honoured and relied upon.</li> <li>• Dignity and self-esteem is built amongst stakeholders and affected people.</li> <li>• There is skilful and sensitive implementation of M&amp;E processes.</li> <li>• Those engaged in monitoring and evaluation fairly represent their competence and the limitations of their reports.</li> <li>• Reporting provides a fair and balanced account of the findings.</li> <li>• Processes ensure the responsible use of personal and sensitive information.</li> </ul>
M&E should be utilisation oriented	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Defining and meeting expectations</li> <li>• Supporting utilisation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M&amp;E products meet knowledge and strategic needs.</li> <li>• A record of recommendations is maintained and their implementation followed up.</li> <li>• An accessible central repository of evaluation reports and indicators is maintained.</li> </ul>
6. M&E should be methodologically sound	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consistent indicators</li> <li>• Data/evidence based</li> <li>• Appropriateness</li> <li>• Triangulated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Common indicators and data collection methods are used where possible to improve data quality and allow trend analysis.</li> <li>• Findings are clearly based on systematic evidence and analysis.</li> <li>• Methodology matches the questions being asked.</li> <li>• Multiple sources are used to build more credible findings.</li> </ul>
7. M&E should be operationally effective	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planned</li> <li>• Scope</li> <li>• Managed</li> <li>• Cost effective</li> <li>• Systematic</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As an integrated component of public management, M&amp;E is routine and regularized.</li> <li>• The scale of M&amp;E reflects its purpose, level of risk and available resources.</li> <li>• Conscientious management of the function leads to sustained on-time delivery of excellence.</li> <li>• The benefits of M&amp;E are clear and its scale is appropriate given resource availability.</li> </ul>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Robust systems are built up that are resilient and do not depend on individuals or chance.</li> </ul>
--	--

### **The aim of GWM & E**

The overarching Government-wide Monitoring and Evaluation system aims to:

provide an integrated, encompassing framework of M&E principles, practices and standards to be used throughout Government, and function as an apex-level information system which draws from the component systems in the framework to deliver useful M&E products for its users.

### **M & E in Ngwathe Local Municipality**

The M & E unit has not been established within the municipality, the function is performed by the Strategic Executive Support

Services within the Municipal Manager's office. Support is derived mainly from the M & E unit of the district.

## **CHAPTER (ELEVEN)11: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**

### **Introduction**

Chapter 4 Part A (12) (1) of the Spatial Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) no 16 of 2013 states that spheres of national, provincial and each municipality must prepare a Spatial Development Framework.

Such SDF must inter alia:

- interpret and represent the vision of responsible sphere and competent authority,
- be informed by long term spatial development vision statement and plan,
- represents the integration and trade-off of all sector policies and plans,
- guide planning and development decisions across all sector departments.

The SDF is informed by the following principles on spatial planning, land development and land use management:

- Spatial justice,
- Spatial sustainability,
- Efficiency,
- Spatial resilience,
- Good administration

### **Availability of the SDF**

FDDM appointed LMV to review the NLM SDF

All departments were afforded an opportunity to make inputs. All inputs were accommodated in the final draft and it was made available for public comments and it was also advertised approved by the Department of RDLR as well as GOGTA.

The reviewed SDF is hereto attached attached.

The development of NLM SDF was informed by FSPSDF

### **What is an FSPDF**

The Free State PSDF is a provincial spatial and strategic planning policy that responds to and

complies with, in particular, the National Development Plan (NDP) Vision 2030. This policy

document encourages all spheres of government to prepare spatial development plans and frameworks (such as the PSDF) that promote a developmental state in accordance with the principles of global sustainability as is advocated by, among others, the South African Constitution and the enabling legislation.

Provincial spatial and strategic planning policy that gives effect to all applicable contextual directives (NDP in particular) and traditional local knowledge.

Spatial and strategic supplement to the FSGDS with specific reference to the *Provincial Strategic Growth and Development Pillars*.

Spatial and strategic directive that indicates:

- What type of land-use should be undertaken at any particular location.
- How such land-use should be undertaken.
- Who should undertake or facilitate such land-use.

Section 17 of the Spatial Planning and Land-Use Management Bill stipulates that:

(1) A provincial spatial development framework comes into operation upon approval by the

Executive Council and publication to that effect in the Provincial Gazette.

(2) All provincial development plans, projects and programmes must be consistent with the

provincial spatial development framework.

(3) The provincial spatial development framework cannot confer on any person the right to use

or develop any land except as may be approved in terms of this Act, relevant provincial

legislation or a municipal land-use scheme.

The categories of development frameworks in the Free State include the following:

Provincial Spatial Development Frameworks,

Regional Spatial Development Frameworks,

District Spatial Development Frameworks,

Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks,

Local Spatial Development Frameworks.

#### FREE STATE VISION 2030

The PSDF gives effect to the Free State Vision 2030 as cited in the FSGDS. The vision, the FSGDS

and the PSDF collectively respond to the need for the province to describe and map its future

destiny through long-term development planning, and to forge a common and shared

development agenda across a wide spectrum of service delivery mechanisms.

This relates to the

interconnectedness between development imperatives and the capacity of the various forms of

capital vested in the province and to ultimately bring about a better life for all.

#### **Land Area (in square kilometres [km<sup>2</sup>])**

	Land Area (km <sup>2</sup> )

RSA	1 220 813
FREE STATE	129 825
FDDM	21336.13
NLM	7055.0277

**NGWATHE IDP**  
**SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**  
**2015 / 2016**



REVISED SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK FOR THE NGWATHE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY IN  
TERMS OF  
SECTION 34 OF THE MUNICIPAL SYSTEMS ACT, 2000 (ACT 32 OF 2000)

Sponsored by the  
**FEZILE DABI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY**



Prepared by the IDP Steering Committee of the Ngwathe Local Municipality  
and



☎ (056) 2152260 📠 (056) 2123381

---

## CONTENTS

---

### **PART A**

- I. GLOSSARY**
- II. APPROVAL**
- III. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**
- IV. ALIGNMENT MEASURES**
- V. ALIGNED SPATIAL RELATED PROJECTS**

### **PART B**

- 1. INTRODUCTION**
- 2. CONSULTATION PROCESS**
  - 2.1 Legislative Context
  - 2.2 Guidelines
  - 2.3 Participation Structure
  - 2.4 Alignment
  - 2.5 Methodology
    - 2.5.1 Implementation
    - 2.5.2 Critical Milestones and Deliverables
- 3. ISSUES, VISION & DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES**
  - 3.1 Community and Stakeholder Analysis
    - 3.1.1 Housing

- 3.1.2 Environment
- 3.1.3 Sport and Recreation
- 3.1.4 Public Transport
- 3.2 Vision
- 3.3 Development Objectives

#### **4. STATUS QUO: SOCIO ECONOMIC**

- 4.1 Demographic Realities
- 4.2 Regional Gender and Age Distribution
- 4.3 Current Development Initiatives
- 4.4 Regional Economic Tendencies
- 4.5 Long-Term Economic Prospects
- 4.6 Unemployment and Economic Difficulties

### **PART C : SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**

#### **5. NGWATHE RURAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK**

- 5.1 Historical Rural Development
- 5.2 Growth Points and Growth Potential
- 5.3 Influencing Factors
- 5.4 Ngwathe Rural SDF

#### **6. URBAN SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORKS**

- 6.1 Spatial Planning Tools
- 6.2 Cross Cutting Issues applicable to Urban Areas and Rural Areas

#### **7 PARYS/ TUMAHOLE/ SCHONKENVILLE URBAN AREA**

#### **8 HEILBRON/ PHIRITONA/ SANDERSVILLE URBAN AREA**



**9 KOPPIES/ KWAKWATSI URBAN AREA**

**10 VREDEFORT/ MOKWALLO/ VREDESHOOP URBAN AREA**

**11 EDENVILLE/ NGWATHE URBAN AREA**

**12 FRAMEWORK FOR IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND EVALUATION**

**LIST OF TABLES:**

Table 1:	Summary of Housing Needs in Ngwathe per Urban Area
Table 2:	Summary of Economic- and Urban Growth Potential in Ngwathe
Table 3:	Summary of Social Amenities in Ngwathe
Table 4:	Population: Ngwathe Region
Table 5:	Population and Households as Percentage of the District & Population Growth
Table 6:	Age Structure and Sex Ratio
Table 7:	Application of Agricultural Land: Ngwathe Region
Table 8:	Labour Market & Dependency Ratio
Table 9:	Ngwathe Projected Population Growth
Table 10:	Summary of Economic - And Urban Growth Potential in Ngwathe
Table 11:	Summary of Housing Needs in Ngwathe per Urban Area
Table 12:	Future Urban & Regional Road Requirements : Ngwathe Region
Table 13:	Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area
Table 14:	Provision of Social Amenities in Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area
Table 15:	Bulk Services Provision Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area
Table 16:	Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area
Table 17:	Provision of Social Amenities in Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area
Table 18:	Bulk Services Provision Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area

Table 19:	Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area
Table 20:	Provision of Social Amenities in Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area
Table 21:	Bulk Services Provision Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area
Table 22:	Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Urban Area
Table 23:	Provision of Social Amenities in Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Urban Area
Table 24:	Bulk Services Provision Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Urban Area
Table 25:	Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area
Table 26:	Provision of Social Amenities in Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area
Table 27:	Bulk Services Provision Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area

### **LIST OF FIGURES:**

Figure 1:	Average Application of Agricultural Land : Fezile Dabi Region
Figure 2:	Alignment Measures
Figure 3:	Horizontal Alignment
Figure 4:	Fezile Dabi District : Population Distribution
Figure 5:	Ngwathe Local Municipality
Figure 6:	Ngwathe Projected Population Growth
Figure 7:	Average Application of Agricultural Land : Fezile Dabi Region
Figure 8:	Ngwathe Regional Perspective : Level of Service Provision
Figure 9:	Infill Planning between Parys, Schonkenville and Tumahole
Figure 10:	Ngwathe Regional Road Requirements
Figure 11:	Ngwathe Regional Spatial Framework
Figure 12:	Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Social Amenities
Figure 13:	Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Infrastructure Services: Water
Figure 14:	Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Infrastructure Services: Sanitation
Figure 15:	Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Infrastructure Services: Electricity
Figure 16:	Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Spatial Framework
Figure 17:	Suggested Approach Angles and Safety Zones Associated with the Heilbron Airfield

Figure 18: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Social Amenities  
Figure 19: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Infrastructure Services: Water  
Figure 20: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Infrastructure Services: Sanitation  
Figure 21: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Infrastructure Services: Electricity  
Figure 22: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Spatial Framework  
Figure 23: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Social Amenities  
Figure 24: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Infrastructure Services: Water  
Figure 25: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Infrastructure Services: Sanitation  
Figure 26: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Infrastructure Services: Electricity  
Figure 27: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Spatial Framework  
Figure 28: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Social Amenities  
Figure 29: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Infrastructure Services: Water  
Figure 30: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Infrastructure Services: Sanitation  
Figure 31: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Infrastructure Services: Electricity  
Figure 32: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Spatial Framework  
Figure 33: Edenville/ Ngwathe Social Amenities  
Figure 34: Edenville/ Ngwathe Infrastructure Services: Water  
Figure 35: Edenville/ Ngwathe Infrastructure Services: Sanitation  
Figure 36: Edenville/ Ngwathe Infrastructure Services: Electricity  
Figure 37: Edenville/ Ngwathe Spatial Framework

**LIST OF ANNEXURES:**

Annexure 1:Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site

Annexure 2:Summary of Planning Policies - Spatial Related Drivers and Objectives

## GLOSSARY

---

CARA Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act  
CBD Central Business District  
CSIR Council for Scientific and Industrial Research  
DAFF Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries  
DFA Development Facilitation Act  
DMR Department of Minerals Resources  
du/ha dwelling units per hectare  
EMF Environmental Management Framework  
EMZ Environmental Management Zones contained in the VDWHS EMF  
GDP Gross Domestic Product  
GLA Gross Leasable Area  
GRP Gross Regional Product, i.e. for district or local Municipality  
GVA Gross Value Added  
I&AP Interested and Affected Parties  
IDP Integrated Development Plan  
LDT Long Distance Taxi  
LFPR Labour Force Participation Rate  
LUMS Land Use Management Schemes  
NGO Non-Governmental Organisations  
NSDP National Spatial Development Perspective  
PGDS Provincial Growth and Development Strategy  
PSDF Provincial Spatial Development Framework  
STATS SA Statistics South Africa  
SDF Spatial Development Framework  
SDP Spatial Development Plan

SDT Short Distance Taxi  
SEA Strategic Environmental Assessment  
SPC Spatial Planning Category  
SPLUMA Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013  
VDWHS Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site  
VDWHS EMF Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site Environmental Management Framework (Including EMFs for the Ng and Moqhaka Municipalities)  
STDI Small Towns Development Initiative  
TPS Town Planning Scheme  
WPW Water Purification Works  
WWTW Waste Water Treatment Works

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

---

### Standard Planning Categories

In preparing the Ngwathe Municipal SDF, the Standard Planning Categories (SPCs), with their subcategories, will be implemented. Implementation will be in alignment with the Free State Provincial SDF (PSDF) by *“facilitating the land use classification of the entire land surface of the province in a standard format in accordance with defined Spatial Planning Categories, which are based on a broad spectrum of environmental parameters and a system of value and ethics”*, including:

- A : Core Conservation Areas
- B : Natural Buffer Areas
- C : Agricultural Areas
- D : Urban Related Areas
- E : Industrial Areas
- F : Surface Infrastructure

### A : CORE

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
--------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------	------------------	---------------------------

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville	Ngwathe Rural Area
<b>Core - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF <sup>6</sup></li> <li>No activities in environmentally sensitive areas</li> <li>All development application have to be assessed in terms if the management zones proposed in the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF</li> <li>Riparian areas are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which often experience substantial development pressures. They should be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them</li> <li>No mining activities without relevant mining permits/ rights</li> </ul>					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Small portion of the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site (3 farms)</li> <li>Vaal River and tributaries</li> <li>The Parys islands system</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eland Spruit and tributaries</li> <li>Uniefees Dam</li> <li>S7: Heilbron Conservancy</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Water to the Koppies agricultural scheme</li> <li>Koppies Dam, Koppies Dam Resort and Koppies Dam Nature Reserve</li> <li>Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site</li> <li>S1: Lesotho Spruit</li> <li>Large pan, covering 6 km<sup>2</sup> believed to be the centre of the dome (referred to</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E1, E2 &amp; E3: Environmentally sensitive area (colonies of Sun Gazer Lizards)</li> <li>Rooikraal Spruit</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No activities in environmentally sensitive areas</li> <li>No development on high potential agricultural land</li> <li>Protection of riparian and wetland areas</li> <li>Restrictions</li> </ul>

<sup>6</sup> **VDWHS Environmental Management Framework & Ngwathe Environmental Management Framework 2013** (Source: Department of Environmental Affairs). The VDWHS is located within the North-West and Free State Provinces and falls under the jurisdiction of the Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District and Tlokwe Local Municipalities in the North-West Province and the Fezile Dabi District and Mqohaka and Ngwathe Local Municipalities in the Free State Province.

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Oudewerf Spruit</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Renoster River</li> <li>▪ Leeuw Spruit</li> </ul>	as the “Inland Sea”)		on the alteration of natural veld into cultivated

#### **Management Zones proposed in the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF**

To aid strategic environmental management in the area, environmental management zones were delineated by grouping areas which share same characteristics together. Areas were grouped based on their current use (e.g. Agriculture, Residential, Natural, etc.) and their sensitivity to different types of activities. The five (5) management zones are:

- Zone A: Sensitive terrestrial features in a natural or near-natural state;
- Zone B: Sensitive aquatic features in a natural or near-natural state;
- Zone C: Areas modified by agriculture;
- Zone D: Areas modified by residential development and tourism; and
- Zone E: Natural or near-natural areas that are less sensitive than Zones A and B.

#### **B : BUFFER**

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<b>Buffer - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive, further development will be subject to EIA procedures</li> </ul>					

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The current VDWHS buffer zone, especially between Vredefort and Parys impedes on development – reconsideration inevitable</li> <li>▪ Apart from above amendment, the buffer zone must be maintained.</li> <li>▪ The buffer must, however, be cadastre linked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Area around Eland Spruit and Unieffes Dam must remain conservation areas</li> <li>▪ Protection of riparian and wetland areas</li> <li>▪ S6 &amp; S7: Several large wetland areas, must be protected from pollution</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Prevention of pollution of water provision to the Koppies agricultural scheme</li> <li>▪ Protection of riparian and wetland areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S6: VDWHS (refer to Parys)</li> <li>▪ S2: Rehabilitation of wetland adjacent Mapetla extension</li> <li>▪ Protection of riparian and wetland areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ E1, E2, &amp; E3: Protection of Sun Gazer Colony (Red Data specie)</li> <li>▪ Protection of riparian and wetland areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Refer to “Core” proposals</li> <li>▪ Support Leisure Residential and Resort developments<sup>7</sup></li> </ul>

<sup>7</sup> Subdivisions of agricultural land will be considered for formal development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments* according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate’s *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines. No development allowed on high potential agricultural land.



## C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort & Edenville
<p><b>Urban Agriculture - Cross Cutting Issues:</b>  <i>To promote the long term sustainable use and conservation of natural agricultural resources and the protection and preservation of agricultural land and its productive use in order to ensure long-term national and household food safety and security and profitable agricultural economic output <sup>8</sup>.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li> <li>▪ Identification of suitable lost open spaces for urban agriculture practises</li> <li>▪ In partnership with the private sector and DAFF, conduct community awareness to promote food production on residential properties</li> <li>▪ Minimum area of smallholdings is 4 ha</li> <li>▪ Subdivision of smallholding in more than 3 portions (remainder and two subdivisions), will necessitate Township Establishment</li> <li>▪ Smallholdings not to be considered for any other form of permanent housing than single residential purposes</li> <li>▪ The subdivision or development of riparian farmland, where permissible, must allow a minimum 100 m waterfront to the remaining portion thereof</li> </ul>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R7: Pistorius Rust smallholdings proposed for low density high cost extensions/ agriculture</li> <li>▪ R8: Inclusion of small farms and smallholdings adjacent</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Highlands smallholdings proposed for low density high cost extensions/ agriculture</li> <li>▪ Inclusion of small farms and smallholdings adjacent</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Small scale farming areas form part of the substantial Koppies irrigation scheme</li> <li>▪ Fezile Dabi nursery project (Weltevrede Smallholdings)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ No small scale farming land uses</li> </ul>

<sup>8</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort &amp; Edenville</b>
to the urban area in the TPS ▪ F1: the existing grazing camp system will be impeded on to accommodate new developments and access roads	to the urban area in the TPS		present

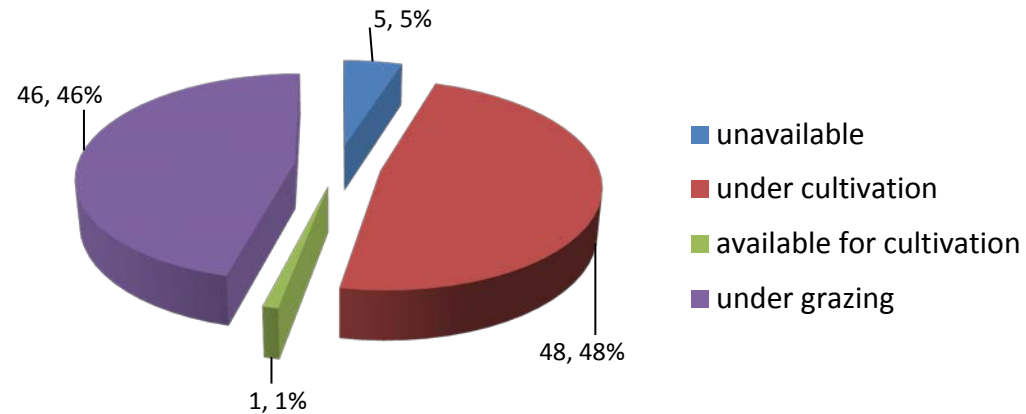
<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<b>Commonage - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li> <li>▪ Refer to applicable “Urban Agriculture” cross cutting issues</li> <li>▪ No development on high potential agriculture land</li> <li>▪ Proper planning and management of all commonage land is required</li> <li>▪ Optimal utilisation, apart from current grazing and low intensity farming activities must be investigated</li> <li>▪ Implementation of well-planned and managed food gardens</li> </ul>					

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Several farms were acquired to the southeast</li> <li>F2 &amp; F3: Continual urban sprawl onto commonage will necessitate acquiring of additional land, east of Tumahole</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>F1: Several farms were acquired to the north of Phiritona</li> <li>Urban extension not proposed further north</li> <li>Appropriate management required</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plot 1014 - 1016 acquired, southeast of Kwakwatsi</li> <li>Commonage required as a consequence of new precincts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- F2: Rem and Sub 1 of Lionriver 154,</li> <li>- F3: Sub 1 of Goedverblyf 208,</li> <li>- F4: Plots 1017 – 1019</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Several farms were acquired to the east of Mokwallo</li> <li>Urban extension not proposed further north</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>F1, F2 &amp; F3: Several farms were acquired to the west, north and east of Ngwathe</li> <li>Future urban extensions on Stilledal 1/53, will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Possibility to establish additional smallholdings</li> <li>Involvement of Governmental Departments acquiring additional commonage in the instances of urban sprawl</li> </ul>
<b>Region Agriculture - Cross Cutting Issues :</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No development must be allowed on high potential agriculture land</li> <li>Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li> <li>Development on agriculture may not commence prior to approval from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Permission must be obtained from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries regarding land, formally to be excluded from agricultural land, as pertained in the approved SDF</li> </ul>					

The region accommodates predominantly agricultural related activities. Only a restricted percentage of the region is unavailable for agriculture purposes (5%). A fairly significant portion of the region (48%) is currently under cultivation, which is attributed to the average rainfall in the area and the general availability of water for irrigation purposes.

**Figure 1**

### Average Application of Agricultural Land : Fezile Dabi Region



- The only formally developed irrigation scheme exists adjacent Koppies
- Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, and Irrigation Schemes etc.)
- The Free State Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (during 2009) in “*A Study to Investigate Opportunities for Value Add Agriculture in the Free State Province*”, identified the following significant agriculture practises for the Northern Free State Region, the most agricultural active region in the province:
  - Soya Beans (dairy replacement production/products)
  - Sunflower (biofuel, oil and secondary products i.e. margarine, mayonnaise etc. such as the currents refinery at Villiers)
  - Cattle Farming (primary production in the north-eastern Free State, feedlots and diversify products)
  - Game Farming (venison and biltong products, secondary tourism)
  - Limited opportunities for poultry abattoirs (area currently comprises several abattoirs and market deemed saturated)
  - Niche Sector : honey production
- Current restrictions on the alteration of natural veldt into cultivated fields should be adhered to

- Subdivisions to riparian properties must ensure a minimum waterfront of 100 m for subdivisions and the remainder
- Subdivisions of agricultural land will be considered for formal development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments*<sup>9</sup> according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines

#### D : URBAN RELATED

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<b>Land Use Management Schemes - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all urban related land uses</li> <li>▪ Absence of approved TPSs in Koppies, Vredefort, Vredeshoop and Edenville complicates land use management and “open title deeds” are not conducive for orderly urban development</li> <li>▪ Land use management in Tumahole, Phiritona, Kwakwatsi, Mokwallo and Ngwathe are still conducted in terms of Act 4 of 1984 <sup>10</sup> ( ‘Annexure F’ of the Township and Land Use Regulation, No 1897 /1986)</li> <li>▪ The Local Municipality embarked on the process of preparing an Integrated Land Use Management System (LUMS). The Draft Ngwathe Town Planning Scheme has since been prepared, lack in funding resulted in the document not being completed</li> </ul>				
Scheme Nr 1	Scheme Nr. 1	No TPS	No TPS	No TPS

<sup>9</sup> LEISURE RESIDENTIAL DWELLINGS – means dwelling houses developed under sectional title or share block scheme mostly in (but not limited to) peri-urban and rural settings of environmental significance, nature conservation area or with vistas on or with access to settings of environmental significance, with or without access to leisure, recreational and sports facilities and features such as golf-courses, hiking trails, river fronts and the like.

<sup>10</sup> Act 4 of 1984 was since repealed in 1994, regulation dealing with *Township and Land use* were not revoked.

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
of 1965	of 1959			
<b>Urban Fringe:</b>				
The “urban fringe” represents the outer limits or boundary for urban development. The proposed urban fringe should not be considered as an exact line but as a conceptual boundary to prevent further urban extension. The principle for identifying the urban fringe is primarily to discourage continuous urban sprawl and to promote integration and more compact towns.				
The former boundary of the town lands of Parys/ Tumahole determines the fringe to the northwest, northeast and the Vaal River to the north. Long-term development proposed to the southeast, once eastern extensions (R5) are planned and occupied. The urban fringe includes the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings	Phiritona precinct is engulfed by urban development. Heilbron and Sandersville precincts do not comprise land for urban extension. The long term residential zone proposed west of Phiritona precinct, on Nil Desperandum 1166. Timely purchasing of additional land is inevitable.	Former municipal boundary that was recently extended to include newly planned areas south of Kwakwatsi. Depending on the option opted for urban extension , either further south on several smallholdings (F4) or north of Kwakwatsi on farm portions and the Weltevrede Smallholdings (F3)	Former municipal boundary, long-term development, extension of fringe to include subdivisions 8 and 9 of the farm Vredefort 148 (only if extension eastward is considered)	Former municipal boundary, long-term development, extension of fringe to include Subdivision 1 of the farm Stilledal 53

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
and the remaining subdivisions of the farm Pistorius Rust 288 (R6) for residential extension	Future relocation of the WWTP, downstream will ensure developable land within the urban boundaries. The Highlands Smallholdings and small farms are proposed for inclusion within the urban fringe.(F2)			

**Table 1**  
**Summary of Housing Needs in Ngwathe per Urban Area**  
 (Source Municipality, 2014)

<u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u>	<u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u>	<u>ERF REQU IREM ENTS (Deter mined by Counc il)</u>
Parys	2 376	667	3 043	None
Tumahole	10 263	1 863	12 238	None
Schonkenville	733	-	733	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>13 372</b>	<b>2 530</b>	<b>16 014</b>	<b>None</b>
Heilbron	806	25	831	None
Phiritona	6 091	2381	8 472	None
Sandersville	367	-	367	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>7 264</b>	<b>2 406</b>	<b>9 670</b>	<b>None</b>
Koppies	338	116	454	None
Kwakwatsi	3 019	2153	5 172	1000
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>3 357</b>	<b>2 269</b>	<b>5 626</b>	<b>1 000</b>
Vredefort	480	25	505	None
Mokwallo	4 400	806	5164	None
Vredeshoop	96	-	96	None



<u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u>	<u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u>	<u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u>	<u>ERF REQU IREM ENTS (Deter mined by Counc il)</u>
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>4 976</b>	<b>831</b>	<b>5 765</b>	<b>None</b>
Edenville	250	60	310	None
Ngwathe	2223	491	2 714	500 erven in 2014/ 15
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>2 473</b>	<b>551</b>	<b>3 024</b>	<b>500</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>31442</b>	<b>8 587</b>	<b>40099</b>	<b>1500</b>
The rural area comprises 2332 farms (excluding the subdivisions of agricultural land adjacent the Vaal River). The current tendency is for most rural families to rather reside in the urban areas with only the labourer's residing on the farms during the week. A substantial migration occurred the past few years from the rural to the urban areas.				
<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<b>Residential - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Funding for completion of the draft Land Use Management Scheme as high priority project</li> <li>▪ Densification relating to subdivision is restricted to the minimum erf sizes determined in the respective TPS</li> <li>▪ Except for areas proposed for infill planning and where a TPS is implemented, the minimum erf size is 900 m<sup>2</sup> and in high density precincts, 350 m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul>				

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Densification by means of               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Townhouses (unless otherwise indicated i.e. existing scheme, only on erven larger than 1 850 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 30 du/ha)</li> <li>- Maisonettes (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 50 du/ha)</li> <li>- Flats (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 80 du/ha)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 1975 erven in reserve</li> <li>▪ R1: limited long term infill planning opportunity will become available once the realigned Dover Road is constructed.</li> <li>▪ R2: Possible high income, holiday related housing associated with the adjoining</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 2406 erven in reserve.</li> <li>▪ Heilbron further eastward towards Uniefees Dam</li> <li>▪ Sandersville at capacity</li> <li>▪ R1: Short term residential extension, northeast of Phiritona. Extension is not proposed further northwards on commonage land.</li> <li>▪ R3: Phiritona long-term extension will necessitate the purchasing of additional land namely:</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ No erven in reserve</li> <li>▪ R1: Koppies limited extension southwards</li> <li>▪ Infill planning on old show grounds</li> <li>▪ R2: Land between Koppies and Kwakwatsi (mixed use area suited for inclusionary housing and commercial</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 806 erven in reserve</li> <li>▪ Recent infill planning ensured integration between Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and Vredefort</li> <li>▪ R2: Vredefort limited extension north and northwest ward towards Viljoenskroon Road</li> <li>▪ R1: Mokwallo short-term options</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ No erven in reserve</li> <li>▪ Environmentally “no go” area (colonies of Sun Gazer Lizards) not suitable for urban extension</li> <li>▪ R1: Long-term extension of Edenville, north and northeastward</li> <li>▪ Ngwathe, all developable land exhausted</li> <li>▪ R2: Remaining integration option, (short-term)</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>Parys Golf and Country estate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R3: Is proposed for a mixed use area, associated with the airport (“Fly In” estate), comprising limited commercial/ service industrial opportunities and high cost mixed density residential opportunities.</li> <li>▪ R6: Schonkenville: south-eastward possible</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Weltevreden 257</li> <li>- Mayville 960</li> <li>- Subdivision 1</li> <li>- Modderfontein 122</li> <li>▪ R2: Limited infill adjacent the Oranjeville Road, including formalisation of <i>Mooi Dorpie</i> settlement</li> <li>▪ Relocation of portions located on an old landfill site is deemed imminent</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary housing site identified in the newly planned extension of Phiritona</li> <li>▪ Integration successfully achieved</li> </ul>	<p>activity; especially adjoining 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R4: Kwakwatsi medium to long-term, preferably northwards on several smallholdings and Goedverbluf 1/208 (all to be acquired) <u>or</u>: R3: Commence with negotiations for the purchasing of Plot 1019 (as immediate priority)</li> </ul>	<p>further eastward</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R3: Long-term extension northwest beyond Viljoenskroon Road</li> <li>▪ Existing oxidation ponds inhibit remaining integration option between Mokwallo and Vredefort (towards the Parys Road) – relocation should be considered, also releasing land for industrial developments</li> </ul>	<p>eastward towards Edenville</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R3: Long-term, northward on Stilledal 1/53 commonage land</li> <li>▪ R4: Densification and infill planning on existing vacant erven located west of Edenville</li> <li>▪ Integration will in future successfully be achieved</li> <li>▪ Inclusionary housing not identified</li> </ul>

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<p>(sub 9 of the Farm Pistorius Rust 288 to be acquired)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recent infill planning ensured integration between Schonkenville, Tumahole and Parys and formalisation of Abazimeli settlement - no other options exist</li> <li>Inclusionary Housing identified in Parys (Old Commando Offices : erven 322</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>all possible infill opportunities since developed</li> </ul>	<p>and Plots 1017 and 1018</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Elsewhere, integration was successfully achieved</li> <li>Inclusionary housing not identified</li> </ul>	

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
-329)				
<b>Central Business District (CBD) and Development Nodes - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Due to absence of TPS, CBDs of Koppies, Vredefort and Edenville are not delineated - LUMS to indicate delineation</li> <li>▪ Development in these CBDs is dispersed with open erven available for future business development/densification</li> </ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The current linear ribbon<sup>11</sup> like phenomenon of the CBD must be prohibited and care must be taken to prevent continuous development thereof</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ B1: Extension of the CBD is proposed further south, not further than Voortrekker Street</li> <li>▪ Corridor development permissible for adjoining properties in Lang Markt Street</li> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> - A1: Entrance</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ CBD is ill-defined and encroaches in residential areas</li> <li>▪ Main business activities adjacent Station, Dirkie Uys and 3<sup>rd</sup> Street (access to Kwakwatsi)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Corridor Development adjoining Plein Street (former N1) will continue</li> <li>▪ Similar development adjoining Oranje Street</li> <li>▪ A1: Business corridor (Oranje</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ CBD is ill-defined, business development exceedingly latent</li> <li>▪ A2 &amp; A3 : Main business activities adjacent Haefele Street (also the main access to Ngwathe) and limited activities in</li> </ul>

<sup>11</sup> CBD with a long, narrow shape, opposite of a main arterial or main road. The practice became seen as inefficient use of resources and a precursor to CBD intrusion of residential precincts. The resulting towns are often difficult to service efficiently. Often, the first problems noticed by residents is traffic congestion as people compete to move along the narrow urban corridor while ever more people join the ribbon further along the corridor. CBD delineation is a solution to encourage growth towards a more compact urban form.

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>adjacent to the main road through town.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ B1, B2 &amp; B3: Delineation proposed, not further west than Van Coller Street, parallel to Loop Street (mid-block) not further east than Paulsen Street, parallel to Breë Street, not further west than Grens Street, include area</li> </ul>	<p>from Sasolburg Road (Lang Markt Street)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ2: Further down Lang Markt Street</li> <li>- Δ3: Centre of Phiritona</li> <li>- Δ4: north of Sandersville</li> <li>- Δ5: New Phiritona residential precinct (further east)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ B1: Long-term business development is proposed eastward towards 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue to coincide with a mixed use commercial zone and inclusionary housing between Koppies and Kwakwatsi</li> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adjacent to the Kwakwatsi clinic</li> <li>- Adjacent</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Street east) on route to Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop must be enhanced</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- intersection of Viljoenskr oon/ Parys Road (land privately owned), north of Vredefort</li> <li>- centre of Mokwallo as convenient centre</li> <li>- Smaller future node between Thambo and Mapetla precincts</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Wessels and Mentz Street</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Long-term extension of the CBD not proposed, infill in the existing business zone should occur and node development in Ngwathe</li> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ1: adjacent to the Haefele Street at Ngwathe entrance</li> <li>- Δ2: in recent extension, west of Ngwathe</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>between existing school, sport fields, Philip Street, and light industrial area</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Aerodrome node (R3)</li> <li>- Δ1: Schonkenville entrance</li> <li>- Δ2: South of Father Barlink Street in Tumahole</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		<p>t to the Kwakwa tsi Secondary School</p>		
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provision of sheltered embarking points along</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provision of sheltered embarking points along main collector roads and at</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A need exists for a SDT rank in Kwakwat si;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T1: A proper LDT rank is required in the Vredefort</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A proper LDT rank is required</li> <li>▪ I3: Possible utilisation of</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<p>main collector roads and at prominent community facilities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T4: Provision of a second node in the Tambo extension</li> <li>▪ T2: Provision of an accessible LDT rank in Parys (Dwars Street possibility)</li> <li>▪ T5: Formalisation of informal taxi rank in Tumahole.</li> </ul>	<p>prominent community facilities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T1: LDT rank located in Heilbron</li> <li>▪ A7: Upgrading of the road is proposed for suitable configuration to allow for embarking and disembarking of passengers.</li> </ul>	<p>especially considering the new extensions further north-westward</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T1: LDT rank located in Koppies (opposite the Paradys Hotel)</li> </ul>	<p>CBD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T2: Upgrading of the existing SDT rank in Mokwallo (covered areas and ablution facilities) is deemed a high priority</li> </ul>	<p>undeveloped testing centre for a proper LTD rank</p>



**Table 2**  
**Summary of Economic - And Urban Growth Potential in Ngwathe**  
 (Source Department Rural Development & Land Reform, 2014)

<b><u>Town s</u></b>	<b><u>Ngwathe Economic - And Urban Growth Potential <sup>12</sup></u></b>			
	<b><u>Economic Potential of Towns</u></b>	<b><u>Economic Potential of the Local Municipality</u></b>	<b><u>Urban Growth Potential of Towns</u></b>	<b><u>Urban Growth Potential of the Local Municipa lity</u></b>
Parys	Medium	Low	Medium	Medium
Schonkenville	Medium		Medium	
Heilbron	Low		Low	
Koppies	Low		Low	
Vredefort	Low		Low	
Edenville	Low		Low	

<sup>12</sup> An assessment of the development potential of urban areas in the Free State Province was endeavoured by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform during 2014 of which a summary is herewith included

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<b>Urban Open Spaces - Cross Cutting Issues</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Refer to Core and Buffer areas, also depicting urban open spaces</li> <li>▪ Urban greening is almost non-existent in high density residential precincts and attempts in this regard, in liaison with the DAFF, must be deemed a priority</li> <li>▪ Continuous subdivision of functional and formal open spaces to accommodate social amenities and business land uses must be prohibited</li> <li>▪ Provision of open spaces should be maintained according to CSIR Guidelines for the Provision of Social Facilities in South African Settlements – Medium Towns (First Edition: August 2012)</li> <li>▪ Several smaller functional open spaces in all urban areas, are not developed and are proposed for leveling and gravel surfacing to establish informal sports areas</li> <li>▪ Lost urban space and brownfields<sup>13</sup> not being core, buffer or functional open spaces, could be utilised for infill planning purposes</li> <li>▪ Total provision of functional and formal open spaces has to be at least 0.5 ha/1 000 people, 40% of this allocation is for strategic (regional) and district facilities and 60% for community, urban and neighbourhoods parks, play lots, etc.</li> <li>▪ Current and old excavated areas do not represent functional open spaces, unless properly rehabilitated and landscaped</li> <li>▪ Sand and gravel exploitation in urban areas is not conducive and detract from the amenity of convenience of residential precincts; these activities should be ceased and open cast pits, rehabilitated</li> <li>▪ Old exploited areas should similarly be rehabilitated</li> <li>▪ Maintenance of existing infrastructure is deemed a priority</li> </ul>				

<sup>13</sup> Brownfields are defined as sites that:

- Have been affected by former uses of the site or surrounding land uses
- Are derelict or underutilised
- Are mainly in fully or partly developed urban areas
- Require intervention to bring them back to beneficial use and
- May have real perceived contamination problems

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S3: Fezile Dabi sport terrain established in Tumahole</li> <li>▪ S2: Schonkenville sport terrain in process of being upgraded</li> <li>▪ S4: Continuation of landfill in Abazimeli area and landscaping to establish a neighbourhood sport facility</li> <li>▪ S9: Need for a future regional sport facility housing larger events</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>: - Vaal River and</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S2/S3: Sport terrain in Phiritona and Sandersville in the process of being upgraded</li> <li>▪ S4: Final rehabilitation of the site should promptly be completed</li> <li>▪ S5: Decommissioned night soil trenches, not suitable for future development</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>:</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S1: Development of centrally located facility in mixed use area (between Koppies &amp; Kwakwatsi) in association with Koppies sport terrain</li> <li>▪ S2: Development of the existing sport terrain in Kwakwatsi</li> <li>▪ C2/S4: An informal soccer field located on proposed extension of cemetery</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S7: Development of the existing sport terrain in Mokwallo</li> <li>▪ S3: Neighbourhood sport facility earmarked in Mapetla</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>: - Lesotho Spruit and tributaries</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S2: Development of the existing sport terrain in Ngwathe</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>: - E1, E2, &amp; E3: Areas containing red data species - Rooikraal Spruit and tributaries</li> </ul>

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<p>riparian for tourism related recreational development and conservation purposes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Vaal River island system</li> <li>- Oudewerf Spruit and tributaries</li> <li>▪ Wetland areas crossing through Tumahole restrict movement of pedestrians and vehicles, bridging thereof is considered urgent to ensure functioning of precinct</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- S6: A “green belt” is proposed</li> <li>- S7: Surrounding areas to the dam must be reserved for tourism related recreational development and conservation purposes.</li> <li>- The dam must be protected to minimise water pollution.</li> </ul>	<p>to be relocated to adjacent park erf 1596</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S4: Erf 1597, proposed for a school, transferred back to the municipality, ideally located for an urban food garden, extension possibilities on adjoining erf 1596</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- north of Kruger Street (formerly planned,</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
		undeveloped area) - S5, S6 & S 7: South of 6 <sup>th</sup> Avenue towards the Renoster River - Leeuw Spruit and tributaries		

### **Regional Tourism:**

Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010. The industry needs to grow to levels as experienced in the province which has a contribution of 5,9% of GDP. Tourism in the district has been growing steadily at 3,4% per annum. As could be expected, the Ngwathe area has the highest levels of tourism at 9,7% of GDP, while the Metsimaholo area has only a 1,7% contribution to GDP. There is a potential for growth in the tourism sector and needs to be exploited, especially in terms of the domestic market.<sup>14</sup>

<b>Parys &amp; Region</b>	<b>Heilbron &amp; Region</b>	<b>Koppies &amp; Region</b>	<b>Vredefort &amp; Region</b>	<b>Edenville &amp; Region</b>
---------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

<sup>14</sup> LED Report, 2013

Parys & Region	Heilbron & Region	Koppies & Region	Vredefort & Region	Edenville & Region
<b>Resorts and Tourism - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <i>To promote the optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Ngwathe region, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.<sup>15</sup></i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs</li> <li>▪ Similar to the Fezile Dabi District, the region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the VDWHS, game ranches and guesthouses on farms</li> <li>▪ Support Leisure Residential and Resort developments<sup>16</sup></li> </ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ VDWHS</li> <li>▪ Mimosa Gardens and Rotary Resort</li> <li>▪ Vaal de Grace, Island 13 and Parys Golf &amp; Country Estates</li> <li>▪ Afri-dome</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Unieffes Dam</li> <li>▪ As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Koppies Dam and Koppies Nature Reserve</li> <li>▪ Rooipoort Dam private resort</li> <li>▪ The R82 Anglo Boer Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands,</li> <li>▪ Rooiwal Battlefield (Koppies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ VDWHS</li> <li>▪ S5: Dome Interpretation Centre</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Old Limestone mine</li> </ul>

<sup>15</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<sup>16</sup> Development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments* according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines. No development will, however, be allowed on high potential agriculture land.

<b>Parys &amp; Region</b>	<b>Heilbron &amp; Region</b>	<b>Koppies &amp; Region</b>	<b>Vredefort &amp; Region</b>	<b>Edenville &amp; Region</b>
equestrian centre ▪ Scenic routes parallel to the Vaal River in the VDWHS (Koepel & Vaal Eden Scenic Route)	area) ▪ The recently established <i>Francolin Creek Conservancy</i> (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 road) and Ghoya Africa Conservancies	District) ▪ Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district) ▪ Bentonite mining area		

**Cemeteries - Cross Cutting Issues:**

- Cleaning, fencing and maintenance of existing and old cemeteries must be done
- Greening of cemetery premises is long overdue and must be attempted
- Highly dependent on cultural practices (for instance the acceptability of cremation, choice of separate sites and the like) and other factors such as the incidence of HIV/Aids.
- The site selection of suitable land for burials is critical and requires prior geological and groundwater level (if applicable) studies.

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
▪ C1: Sections of the industrial area have	▪ C4: A new site was recently established	▪ C2: The cemetery in Kwakwats	▪ C6: Extension of the Mokwallo	▪ C1: Long term extension possibilities

<p>been utilised for the new cemetery</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R10/C7 &amp; R6: Long term development to the south and east of the Schonkenville and Tumahole precincts will necessitate purchasing of additional land, these extension, must provide a new regional cemetery.</li> </ul>	<p>north of the Phiritona precinct (on commonage land)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Smaller premises needs to be identified for Heilbron and Sandersville</li> </ul>	<p>i is to reach capacity in 3 years.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S4: An informal soccer field located on proposed extension of cemetery to be relocated to adjacent park erf 1596</li> <li>▪ C4: An area northeast of Kwakwatsi (on Rem of the Farm Leeuwspuit 79) is earmarked as a long-term regional</li> </ul>	<p>cemetery could be considered north-eastward</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C7: Long term extension possibilities exist for the Vredefort cemetery</li> <li>▪ C5: Protection of historical significance site adjacent the Parys road</li> </ul>	<p>es exist for the Edenville cemetery</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C2: New development of 500 erven provided for limited extension of the existing Ngwathe cemetery</li> <li>▪ C3: Long term extension is identified for expansion of the old Ngwathe cemetery further north to Heuning Spruit road.</li> </ul>
---	--	--	---	--



		cemetery		
--	--	----------	--	--

<b>Airfields</b>		
<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Parys Aerodrome is well developed</li> <li>▪ Future expansion of runways may be costly</li> <li>▪ R3: Commercial activities or an area of mixed uses (possibility of a “fly in estate”) relevant to aviation and an effective transport node is proposed</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Recent urban extension northwest of the runway (Extension 9 &amp; 10), encroached into safety zones</li> <li>▪ Safety compromised due to high density residential, mining and non-aviation related activities</li> <li>▪ Development adjacent thereto should be allowed</li> <li>▪ Relocation to a more appropriate location (northwest of Heilbron)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Koppies comprises a registered airfield, not properly maintained</li> </ul>

<b>Other Social Amenities</b>
-------------------------------

**Environmental Health** is a District Municipality function co-ordinated from the Sasolburg Head Office. Although Environmental Health is managed and co-ordinated from Sasolburg, Environmental Health officers are spread out geographically to render services in all the towns in the District. Environmental Health deals mainly with ensuring a safe and healthy environment in the whole district (both urban and rural areas). The Environmental Health department focuses on the provision of municipal health services as defined in the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003). Control over the sustainable delivery and maintenance of infrastructure services for all rural developments is also the responsibility of the department. In this regard, high density and other developments adjacent the Vaal River that is becoming more popular, need to adhere to specific health standards set by the Department.

### **Education**

The provision of school buildings in **rural areas** is primarily facilitated by the Education Act (Act 84 of 1996). The Free State Department of Education prescribes that a rural school should service a radius of not larger than 10 km. Schools are not provided on a spatial basis only, but also on a density base. More than 1 school per 10 km radius may thus be provided should the density of pupils justify the provision. Farm schools are further unique since they represent public schools on private land. The Education Department will assess private schools and take account of their capacity when new schools are to be provided.

**Table 3**  
**Summary of Social Amenities in Ngwathe**  
(Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

<u>Town</u> <u>ns</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>School</u> <u>ls</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>School</u> <u>ls</u>	<u>Primary</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Community</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private</u> <u>Hospital</u> <u>Ward</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate</u> <u>Office</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
Parys	1	4	1	4	1	1	1	1	1	1
Tumahole	1	4	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Schoonerville	2	4	1	1	1	1	3	1	1	1

<sup>17</sup> Concern has been expressed by the SDF Task Team that the provision of clinics in Tumahole and Koppies is not adequate.

<sup>18</sup> License granted, construction to commence

<u>Towns</u>	<u>Urban Schools</u>		<u>Rural Schools</u>		<u>Primary Health Clinic</u>	<u>Health Centre</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private Hospital</u>	<u>Worship Centre</u>	<u>Police Stations</u>	<u>Rural Police Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate's Office</u>	<u>and places of</u>
					0							1	
Heilbron	4	1			4		1		6	1		1	1
Phiritona	10	4							8				
Sandersville	1								2				
Koppies		1				1			3	1		1	
Kwa kwatsi	8	2			1				11				
Vredfort		1			1	1			3	1		1	
Mokwall o	3	2			2				16				
Vredeshoop	1								1				
Edevill	1				1				2	1		1	

<u>Town</u> <u>ns</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>Schools</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Schools</u>	<u>Primary</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private</u> <u>Hospital</u> <u>Centres</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate</u> <u>Office</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
e										
Ngwathe	2	1		1			9			
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>2</b>

The Department naturally monitors school standards of these institutions. In order to provide reasonable facilities to schools, the Department adopted a policy of so called “Green Patches”. The green patch concept refers to a larger school that is provided with facilities such as telephones, faxes, copiers, etcetera, which will serve smaller surrounding schools. The following is apparent:

- Farm schools, especially primary schools are spatially well-distributed in the region. Present data shows that there are a total of 226 schools in the rural area of the Fezile Dabi Region.
- The Department of Education indicated that in the Free State in general, the number of pupils in the rural area has decreased considerably with approximately 43% since 1996. This is primarily attributed to urbanisation to urban centres, the tendency of farm workers to settle in urban areas in order to be in closer proximity of facilities and services, as well as the long term impact of HIV/ AIDS.
- Considering the above, it can be expected that the number of pupils per teacher could further decrease with the result of an even more acceptable teacher/ pupil ratio in the rural areas.
- A much required need for establishing a special school has been expressed by leaders of the various communities.
- School sites in urban areas are provided according to set standards (recently published CSIR Guidelines for the Provision of Social Facilities in South African Settlements, First Edition: August 2012). Adequate school sites were provided in all the involved urban communities. No need is therefore experienced in this regard. The situation differs drastically when school buildings are considered. A number of schools follow the platooning system, indicating an under provision.

- Similar to the situation in the rural area, the Department of Education indicated that a decrease in the number of pupils in the urban areas occurs in the Free State. The number of pupils in the urban schools has declined to such an extent that the current number of pupils in the Free State is just below the total number of pupils in 1992.
- Tertiary institutions are restricted to the larger urban areas and in the Fezile Dabi Region, one tertiary institution exists (Flavius Mareka FET College) with one campus in Sasolburg and two campuses in Kroonstad.

## E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<b>Industries - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all urban industrial related land uses.</li> <li>▪ Provision of new/ relocation of existing industrial areas must focus on road accessibility and proximity to the predominant labour forces</li> </ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I1 &amp; I2: The Industrial zones are isolated, surrounded by residential precincts</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The capacity of the existing industrial area is inadequate and provision for future industrial extension will have to be made shortly</li> <li>▪ I3: Proper well located</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R2: Replanning of dormant industrial area, separating Koppies and Kwakwatsi, for residential development, since occurred</li> <li>▪ I3: Limited number of</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I5: Noxious Industrial area is isolated, surrounded by residential precincts</li> <li>▪ I2: Long term industrial activities must be established further north of</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I2: A formal industrial zone is not earmarked for Edenville, limited number of undeveloped erven are available in Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ Accommodation of future light industrial development should occur on open business</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I4: Relocation of the inaccessible industrial area adjacent to Sasolburg Road in relation with the “Steel City” initiative and Aerodrome nodal development</li> <li>▪ I3: Limited</li> </ul>	<p>and accessible industrial node is urgently required, proposed northwest of Heilbron (adjacent Sasolburg Road)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Continuous development of the industrial related corridor adjacent the main entrance (extension of Lang Markt Street) into Heilbron (from the Sasolburg Road)</li> </ul>	<p>light industrial/ mixed use properties were retained adjacent to 3<sup>rd</sup> Street (main access road into Kwakwatsi)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Additional mixed land use area is proposed opposite 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue</li> <li>▪ I2: Existing light industrial area (adjacent station) comprises several open erven with extension possibilities further northwest</li> </ul>	<p>the existing industrial area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Relocation of the existing waste water treatment plant further northeast is required to allow for a single accessible industrial area</li> <li>▪ R4: The possibility exists to utilise Propnet land for residential purposes (existing dwellings already present)</li> <li>▪ I1: Limited number of</li> </ul>	<p>premises in Edenville or on properties earmarked in Ngwathe(I2)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I3: Development of the testing centre never commenced, it could be utilised as future taxi rank/ industrial/ commercial premises</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
extension, infill and densification in the existing light industrial area are feasible		(towards silos) ▪ I4: Agri-industrial corridor adjacent to the main access road into Koppies (from the Sasolburg Road) is proposed	light industrial erven (adjacent Kroonstad Road) is earmarked for a “mixed use” area	

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining) - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <i>To promote new mining activities that does not threaten the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS <sup>19</sup></i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all surface extractive activities</li> <li>▪ Current and old excavated areas do not represent functional open spaces, unless properly rehabilitated and landscaped</li> <li>▪ Old exploited areas located in the urban areas, must be rehabilitated.</li> </ul>					

<sup>19</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Sand and gravel exploitation in urban areas are not conducive for a quality living environment and detract from the amenity of convenience of residential precincts; these activities should be ceased and open cast pits, rehabilitated</li> <li>▪ Unless otherwise indicated, gravel are mostly exploited in urban areas for municipal road building, construction and maintenance purposes only</li> </ul>					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G3: Gravel should preferably be obtained from a substantial existing open cast pit adjacent the Parys / Sasolburg Road.</li> <li>▪ G4 &amp; G5: Exploited</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Gravel obtained from a substantial existing open cast pit near Phiritona (northern expansion is feasible)</li> <li>▪ Exploited portion, however, to be rehabilitated as a matter of urgency</li> <li>▪ S4: Final rehabilitation of old quarry is</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G2: Gravel obtained from subnational existing open cast pit in on the Rem of the Farm Leeuwspuit 79 (further expansion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Gravel, for municipal use only, exploited north-west of Vredefort</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Gravel obtained from existing open cast pit in Ngwathe, north-western expansion is feasible</li> <li>▪ Exploited portion, however, to be rehabilitated as a matter of urgency</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Gravel obtained from several open cast pits for construction or road building purposes</li> <li>▪ Bentonite deposits at Koppies</li> <li>▪ Granite formations at Parys</li> <li>▪ Sand winning along the Vaal River (Parys vicinity)</li> <li>▪ Alluvial diamonds are</li> </ul>



<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
<p>ted open cast pits in urban areas need to be rehabilitated</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G2: Exploitable sand deposits found adjacent the Vaal River, rehabilitation of exploited</li> </ul>	<p>deemed immanent (utilised as a sport facility)</p>	<p>nsion is feasible)</p>			<p>exploited, isolated locations of Vaal River riparian</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Volcanic pipes<sup>20</sup> are mined in the region at Voorspoed (De Beers) and Lace Mines (Private)</li> <li>▪ Future exploitation of rich coal deposits in the Koppies vicinity is highly</li> </ul>

<sup>20</sup> Volcanic pipes are [subterranean geological](#) structures formed by the violent, [supersonic](#) eruption of deep-origin [volcanoes](#). Volcanic pipes are composed of a deep, narrow cone of solidified [magma](#) (described as "carrot-shaped"). Volcanic pipes are relatively rare. They are well known as the primary source of [diamonds](#), and are mined for this purpose.

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Ngwathe Rural Area</b>
areas deemed urgent ▪ S4: Continuation of landfill in Abazimeli area and landscaping					likely

## **F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS**

<b>Railway Lines and Stations</b>				
<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	
▪ I4: Revitalisation of station possible, especially considering the “Steel City” initiative	▪ Railway line non-functional, no railway contact with surrounding towns ▪ Section of line	▪ Main railway line between Bloemfontein and Gauteng stretches through the urban area ▪ Station situated	▪ Industrial area no longer serviced by means of a siding linking with main railway line at Dover station.	

<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Possibility exists for an industrial railway siding into industrial area</li></ul>	<p>between Heilbron and Sasolburg, through Wolwehoek station, been decommissioned and removed</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Station utilised by Senwes for storage</li></ul>	<p>west of Koppies, functioning at present (goods &amp; passengers)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Anticipated coal mining in the region substantiates the strategic importance of the line</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Station building utilised for business activities</li></ul>	
<p><b>Landfill Sites - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <i>Agricultural activities seem to be the biggest potential contributor to water pollution in the study area, followed by faulty sewage treatment facilities and <u>unsafe landfill sites</u>. These activities, and their related activities, should be managed to ensure minimum pollution risk<sup>21</sup></i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all surface extractive activities</li><li>▪ Daily maintenance and operations at landfill sites are not in all instances addressed, resulting in intolerable pollution of the surrounding areas</li><li>▪ Illegal dumping, especially at exploited rehabilitated excavation pits, located within residential areas is a prominent health risk and cleaning and rehabilitation of the areas to address illegal dumping must be addressed with resolve</li><li>▪ Clear and caution signage at all illegal dumping areas, prohibiting utilisation as landfill sites/ dumping</li><li>▪ Residential developed is not allowed within 500 m of a landfill site</li></ul>				
<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ D: Located adjacent Dover Road, in</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ D1: Located west of urban</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ D: Located west of Koppies</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ D1: Located adjacent gravel road</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ G1: Refuse duping in quarry west of the</li></ul>

<sup>21</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<p>proximately of Tumahole precinct</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Capacity for next 2 years</li> <li>▪ Relocation must be considered in the immediate future to an appropriate location</li> </ul>	<p>area (Greenlands Road)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Capacity for medium to long-term</li> <li>▪ Relocation of the informal settlement <i>Mooi Dorpie</i>; especially portions located on an old landfill site is deemed imminent</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Comprise adequate capacity for ensuing 5 years</li> </ul>	<p>to Potchefstroom, north of Vredefort</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Comprise adequate capacity for ensuing 5 years</li> <li>▪ G2: Rehabilitation of the old quarry site, east of Mokwallo, must be completed</li> </ul>	<p>Ngwathe precinct, must cease</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ D1: Former landfill site, should be re-utilised</li> <li>▪ Site comprises capacity with long term extension possibilities</li> <li>▪ Repair of site fence and upgrading of access road will be necessary</li> </ul>
---	--	--	--	--

## Bulk Service Provision

Parys	Heilbron	Koppies	Vredefort	Edenville
<b>Water Purification</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Raw water supply: Vaal River</li> <li>▪ Adequate purification capacities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Raw water supply: water is pumped from Rand Water Purification works (Phiritona), remaining area from Unieffes Dam</li> <li>▪ Adequate purification capacities</li> <li>▪ New bulk water supply pipelines and pump stations will be required for future</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Raw water supply: Koppies Dam</li> <li>▪ Adequate purification capacities</li> <li>▪ Will require additional reservoir capacity to provide potable water</li> <li>▪ New bulk water supply pipelines and pump stations will be required for future urban</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Raw water supply: pumped from Vaal River</li> <li>▪ Adequate purification capacities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Raw water supply: Boreholes</li> <li>▪ Adequate purification capacities</li> <li>▪ Will require additional reservoir capacity to provide potable water</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
	urban extension.	extension.		
<b>Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW)</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adequate capacity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WWTW capacity will have to be increased to allow for new extensions</li> <li>Pump stations and pipelines will be required to allow for new extensions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pump stations and pipelines will be required to allow for new extensions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adequate capacity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WWTW capacity will have to be increased to allow for new extensions</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No spare capacity - future developments will not be provided with electricity until</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Process of upgrading of bulk electricity supply</li> <li>Upon completion it will be adequate to service</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bulk electricity provision under strain, installed capacity from ESKOM is 5 MVA ,</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No spare capacity - future developments will not be provided with electricity until increase in</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No spare capacity - future developments will not be provided with electricity until</li> </ul>

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
increase in bulk	future development	current actual load is 6,25 MVA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Funding applied to upgrade supply to 10 MVA.</li> </ul>	bulk	increase in bulk

### **Infrastructure Services**

#### **Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville**

<b>Tumahole</b>	<b>Schonkenville</b>	<b>Parys</b>
<b>Water Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with water network</li> <li>Extension 7: Process of establishment</li> <li>New Extension (infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole &amp; Abazimeli): Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with water network</li> <li>Portion of Extension 15 Oudewerfpark: established, water network installed, not occupied.</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with sewer network</li> <li>Extension 7: Process of establishment</li> <li>New Extension (Infill planning between</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provided with sewer network</li> <li>Portion of Extension 15 Oudewerfpark: established, sewer network partially</li> </ul>

Schonkenville, Tumahole & Abazimeli): Process of establishment		installed, not occupied.
<b>Electricity Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 7: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ New Extension (Infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole &amp; Abazimeli): Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Portion of Extension 15 Oudewerfpark: established, electricity network partially installed, not occupied</li> </ul>

### Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville

<b>Phiritona</b>	<b>Sandersville</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>
<b>Water Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 9: Water network installed individual connections not provide</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		



<b>Phiritona</b>	<b>Sandersville</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 9: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>

### **Koppies/ Kwakwatsi**

<b>Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Koppies</b>
<b>Water Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network, water bourn sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>	

<b>Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Koppies</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>

### **Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop**

<b>Mokwallo</b>	<b>Vredeshoop</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
<b>Water Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 2: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 3: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>		

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>
---	---	---

### **Edenville/ Ngwathe**

<b>Ngwathe</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<b>Water Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extension 4: Water network installed individual connections not provided</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Existing Urban Area: Due to water shortage, no water borne sewer, either VIPs or suction pits installed</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Buckets to be replaced with either VIPs or suction pits</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Due to water shortage, no water borne sewer, either VIPs or suction pits installed</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>

### **Road and Access Requirements**

<u><b>Region</b></u>	<u><b>Road Requirements</b></u>	<u><b>Access Requirements</b></u>
<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access Requirements - Cross Cutting Issues:</b>		

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The deteriorating condition of gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area</li> <li>▪ Gravel roads, linking urban areas, ensuring administrative linking, is in a dilapidated and unsafe condition, contributing to the difficulties of integrating the Municipality.</li> </ul>	
<b>Parys</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route (now R59) through the CBD</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Parys/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>▪ R723 Upgrading of the gravel road between Parys and Heilbron.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: Access to the Parys/ Sasolburg road ( through the exiting grazing camp system, F1) to accommodate long term developments further northeast, also allowing for the Steel City initiative and linking with a major collector road in Tumahole (A2) providing access to Mandela, Lusaka &amp; Sisulu precincts and long term residential developments, further eastward (R10).</li> <li>▪ A3: Timely construction of a new access route through Oudewerfpark to Tumahole, to ensure appropriated accessibility the northern precincts and town centre of Tumahole.</li> <li>▪ A4: Long-term future access is foreseen on the Parys/ Vredefort road (opposite the existing access to the Vaal De Grace golf estate and Island 13 (R12) wildlife estate; especially should urban extensions occur further westward.</li> <li>▪ A5: Apart from the existing access to the Golf and Country estate, envisaged developments associated with the Parys Aerodrome (R3), will necessitated additional access onto the Parys Sasolburg/ Road.</li> </ul>
<b>Heilbron</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Completion of upgrade of the Heilbron /Frankfort Road.</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the</li> </ul>	<p><i>Phiritona is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Heilbron urban area. Phiritona is inaccessible during flooding of the Eland Spruit (A6).</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1, A2 and A3: Access to Heilbron via the three</li> </ul>

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
	<p>gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and newly established Koppies Dam Resort.</p>	<p>existing access roads is adequate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A4 &amp; A7: Additional collector roads are required to provide access to the previous extensions of Phiritona.</li> <li>▪ A5: New access points proposed on the Oranjeville Road to provides adequate access to the eastern extensions of Phiritona</li> <li>▪ A6: Imperative upgrading of the existing access between Phiritona and the Heilbron CBD via the non-noxious industrial area, in view of new extensions further northeast.</li> <li>▪ A8: Access between Sandersville and Phiritona must be established to connect urban collector roads and increase accessibility to Phiritona.</li> <li>▪ A9: Long term extension north-eastward will necessitate new accesses onto the Moedersdeel Road. The latter will ensure more direct access onto the Heilbron /Frankfort Road.</li> </ul>
<b>Koppies</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R82: Imperative upgrading of the Koppies/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and newly</li> </ul>	<p><i>Kwakwatsi is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Koppies urban area</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A4: An additional access road to the western portions of Kwakwatsi (onto Station Street) will improve accessibility</li> <li>▪ A5: Current proposed urban extension south-eastward will necessitate a new access onto the Koppies Dam Road</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the present access road from Koppies to the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and Resort</li> <li>▪ A6: Long-term extension further north will likely</li> </ul>

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
	<p>established Koppies Dam Resort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Upgrading of sections of the present access road from Koppies to the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and Resort.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> </ul>	<p>necessitate a new access onto the Koppies/ Sasolburg Road</p>
<b>Vredefort</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route through the CBD.</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Vredefort/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: A weak business corridor (Oranje Street east) main access and on route to Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop must be enhanced.</li> <li>▪ A2: A proper well-constructed access from the Greenland's Road to the Thambo and Mapetla precincts is deemed a priority.</li> <li>▪ A3: Planning of the southern precincts of Mokwallo allowed for a direct link (crossing the Dover siding) to the existing main access road to Mokwallo.</li> <li>▪ A4 &amp; A5: Additional and a more direct access from the Vredefort/ Parys road is proposed to the industrial area and the Vredeshoop precinct, ultimately also to the Mokwallo precinct.</li> <li>▪ It will imply a crossing over the Lesotho Spruit but will further provide a more direct access to Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and cemetery.</li> <li>▪ A6: Long term extension further north will necessitate a new access onto the Vredefort/ Viljoenskroon Road.</li> </ul>

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
<b>Edenville</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Apart from the main road between Heilbron and Kroonstad, dividing the precinct of Ngwathe and Edenville, there are no major road requirements.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> <li>▪ A1, A2: There are two access roads to Edenville from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road. One access road is across the Ngwathe access road and the other access across the Heuning Spruit Road. The above-mentioned secondary roads to Steynsrus and Petrus Steyn, directly link to Edenville.</li> <li>▪ A3: Only one access road exists to Ngwathe from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road.</li> <li>▪ A4: An additional access to Ngwathe will improve accessibility from the major road network, specifically with the residential extension to the south of Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ A5: Existing informal accesses from the Heuning Spruit Road is proposed to be formalised, also allowing direct access to the proposed new cemetery.</li> <li>▪ A6: Long- term extension further north will likely necessitate a new access onto the Edenville/ Heilbron Road.</li> </ul>	

## ALIGNMENT MEASURES

### Alignment Measures

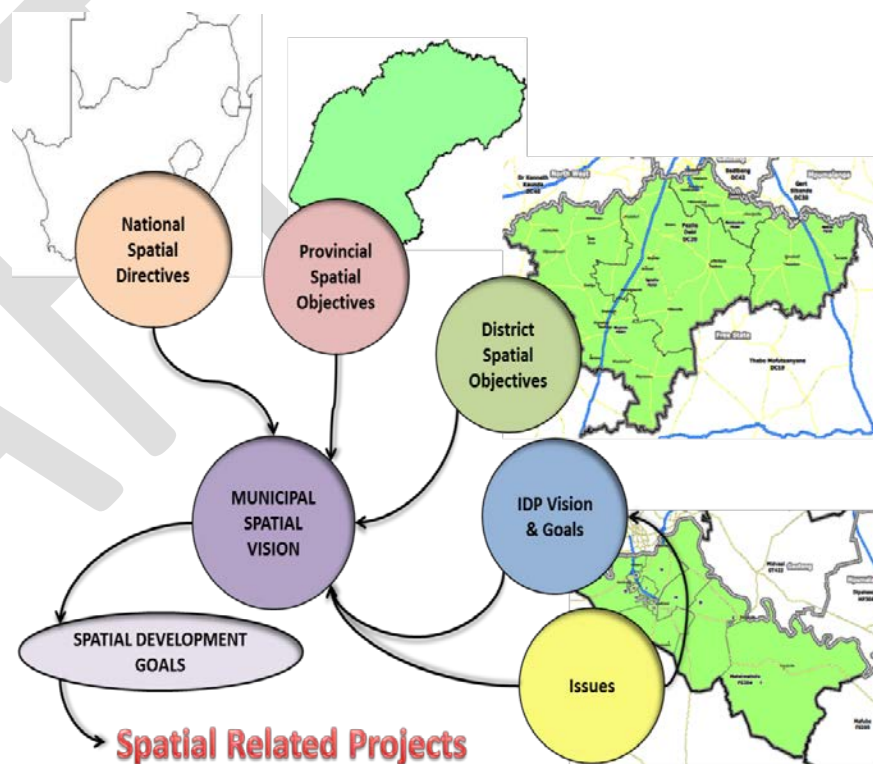
The vertical and horizontal alignments between the Ngwathe SDF and the other planning policies affecting and affected by this SDF are illustrated in this section.

### Vertical Alignment

The vertical alignment shows the relationship and alignment between the proposals and policies of the National Development Plan (NDP), Mid Term Strategic Framework of the NDP (MTSF), Free State Provincial SDF (PSDF), Free State Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (FSPGDS) and Municipal IDP.

In attempting vertical alignment, several policies were assessed; especially the spatial related aspects thereof and spatial development goals and drivers, portrayed in these documents were summarised (refer to detailed tables in Annexure 2) to illustrate alignment between the spatial related projects identified in the Ngwathe SDF and assessed policies.

Figure 2





## **Horisontal Alignment**

The horisontal alignment attempts to illustrate the relationship between the Ngwathe Municipality and the abutting municipalities and provinces. The main proposals affecting the abutting and overarching mentioned policy instruments are (refer to Figure 3):

- continuous restructuring of settlements.
- protect existing intensive agriculture from demands to convert it to urban development,
- biodiversity conservation including ecological river corridors,
- priority roads linking from surrounding municipalities to be carried through into the Ngwathe Municipality,
- Tourism - Similar to the Fezile Dabi District, the region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the VDWHS, game ranches and guesthouses on farms,
- Industrial Decentralisation – It is argued that the market based urban system, dependent on a few metropolitan cities, need not be the only paradigm of development available to the region. A strategy for balanced urban development could also be built by taking into consideration the experiences of a large number of small and medium towns and their growth potentials. A development strategy, designed by taking into consideration these factors and the strength of local level institutions, will indeed create a more dispersed urban system in the Province, which will be an alternative to the global model of urban industrial development, based on a few large cities.
- ‘Dying small town syndrome’ - A number of regional problems have surfaced over recent decades that have demanded the attention of planners and developer’s in so far as economic development of small and rural towns, in the broader Free State context is concerned. The ‘dying small town syndrome’ seems both the most intractable and the one that continues to capture the public’s concern. Small towns face considerable economic development challenges. Development initiatives, at large, do not focus on the plight of the Regional Free State, losing population or businesses, not thriving economically and there is widespread evidence that many small towns are in trouble. The problems include:
  - the sudden economic shocks caused by downturns in ‘one industry towns’ because of economic restructuring,
  - the continued ‘emptying’ of rural areas,
  - the ongoing (and increasing) domination of larger urban areas,

- increasing disparities within and between regions across a wide range of social and economic indicators.

### **Metsimaholo SDF**

- controlled development adjacent the Vaal River and development adjacent the Vaal River Barrage
- because of the important role played by the Vaal Dam and the Vaal-Barrage in providing potable water to the economic heartland of the republic, everything possible must be done to restrict the pollution of these sources to the minimum,

### **North West Province**

North West Province and KwaZulu-Natal Corridor : The strategic location of Parys as an important link between North West and the Free State Provinces, necessitates further long term road planning that is closely related to the need for a link from KwaZulu-Natal to the North West Province. An overall view, therefore, indicates that a need exists for a direct route between North West Province (adjacent to Botswana) and KwaZulu-Natal (harbour opportunity). The construction of a tarred road between the Vaal River and Heilbron will complete one of the missing links in the route. Parys is thus directly concerned and will somehow have to be incorporated in any long-term road strategy. The significance of the corridor should also be reviewed in terms of the Maputo Corridor that has of late emphasised other harbour opportunities.

### **Cross Border Issues**

The Ngwathe municipality borders the North West Province. It also shares the VDWHS with the North West Province and the Moqhaka Municipality. Only three of the farms (and the adjacent buffer areas) included in the VDWHS, fall into the Ngwathe Municipality. Several small farms and plots, tourist

attractions and other rural amenities (general dealer, rural school etc.) on the Vaal River riparian, are located directly across from Parys. Although the properties are not in the Ngwathe Municipality, Parys is the nearest centre thereto and various renders various services here. Parys is also the “port of entry” for numerous tourists to the area.

### **Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District and Tlokwe Local Municipalities**

VDWHS is located within both the North-West and the Free State Provinces. It falls under the jurisdiction of the Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District and Tlokwe Local Municipalities in the North-West Province and the Fezile Dabi District and Moqhaka and Ngwathe Local Municipalities in the Free State Province.

### **Mafube and Nketoana SDF**

Apart from overarching issues mentioned, amongst other significant road linkages and agriculture related aspects, no specific horizontal alignment issues were identified with the Mafube and Nketoana SDFs.

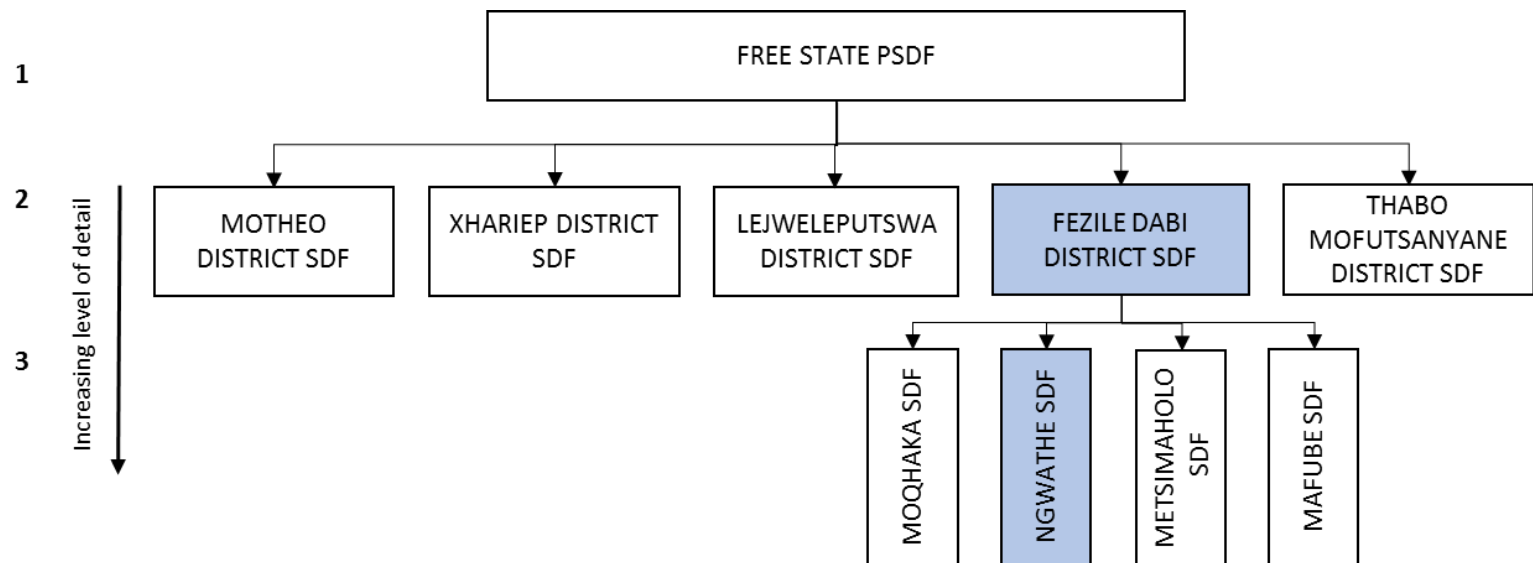
## **Moqhaka SDF**

The area is underlain with rich coal and the gradual exploitation of coalfields in the Sasolburg vicinity will evidently lead to these areas being mined<sup>22</sup>. The Free State Department of Mineral Resources indicated that several prospecting rights have, of late, been granted for the areas located between Kroonstad and Parys. Future mining will necessitate a holistic approach regarding infrastructure provision.

---

<sup>22</sup> The Vereeniging-Sasolburg coalfield ranks third in South Africa in order of importance, while the Free State supplies a saleable output of 10,5 % of the national coal output. Two mines are producing, namely the New Vaal Colliery and Sigma Mine, both exploiting bituminous coal.

The area of jurisdiction of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality includes Metsimaholo Municipality (Sasolburg, Deneyville & Oranjeville), Mafube Municipality (Frankfort, Tweeling, Cornelia & Villiers), Moqhaka Municipality (Kroonstad, Steynsrus & Viljoenskroon) and Ngwathe Municipality (former Parys, Heilbron, Koppies, Edenville & Vredefort). The area comprises nearly 2000 privately owned farms and is approximately 222 210 square kilometres in extent.

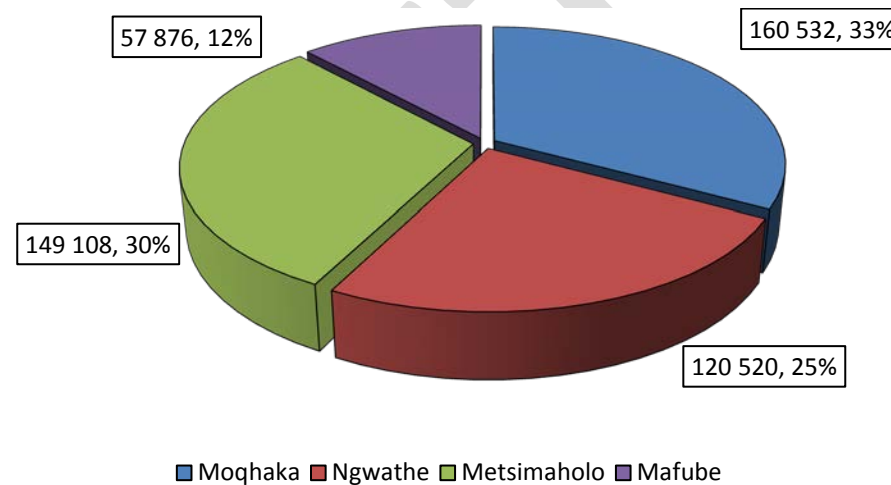


The area of jurisdiction of the Ngwathe Local Municipality is situated in the northern part of the Fezile Dabi District Municipality Region. The total estimated residents in the Ngwathe Region is 120 520 (Census, 2011):

- constituting 4,4 % of the population of the Free State (total population: 2 745 590),
- presents 25,6% of the Fezile Dabi District comprising a total of 37 102 households,

- The general tendency of migration from rural to urban areas is also occurring in the area (82% urban and 18% rural), as is the case in the rest of the Free State Province. The majority of the rural population is active within the agricultural sector.

**Figure 4**  
**Fezile Dabi District : Population Distribution**  
 (Source: Census 2011)



The Parys urban area is situated approximately 38 km west of Sasolburg and 60 km south of the Gauteng Metropolitan Area, adjoining the Vaal River (border between the Free State and the North West Provinces). The unique nature and environmental assets of Parys present, and the nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site (VDWHS), an exceptional tourism potential. The ideal location of Parys in a regional context, regarding the close proximity to the Gauteng Metropolitan Area and North West Province, further contributes to this fact.

The Vredefort Dome is a significant topographical feature of international significance and was recently proclaimed as a World Heritage Site (see Annexure 1). The site is largely situated in the Moqhaka region with portions thereof situated in the Parys and Vredefort Districts and a significant portion in the North

West Province. On the Free State side, the larger part of the Vredefort Dome is situated in the Moqhaka Local Municipality and an exceedingly small portion in the Ngwathe Local Municipality. The Vredefort urban area is located approximately 50 km west of Sasolburg, 72 km south of the Gauteng Metropolitan Area and 76 km from Kroonstad. The former N1 primary access route between Kroonstad and Parys extends through Vredefort. The Heilbron urban area is located approximately 53 km south of Sasolburg and 320 km north-east of Bloemfontein. Other larger centres such as Vereeniging, Vanderbijlpark and Kroonstad are all within 100 km from Heilbron. The primary access route between Sasolburg and the Eastern Free State stretches adjacent to Heilbron. The Bethlehem/ Vereeniging railway line additionally links the industries of Heilbron to the Gauteng area.

The communities of Koppies and Kwakwatsi are situated approximately 70 km south of Sasolburg, 61 km north of Kroonstad and 280 km north of Bloemfontein. Other larger centres such as Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark are all within 90 km from Koppies. The strategic national railway line from the Cape Provinces to the Gauteng Province stretches through Koppies. A large number of the inhabitants of Kwakwatsi are also employed in the Sasolburg area. Kwakwatsi can thus be labelled as a satellite residential town to the surrounding industrial areas. Edenville is situated approximately 42 km north-east of Kroonstad and 40 km south-west of Heilbron. Other small towns like Steynsrus, Lindley, Koppies and Petrus Steyn are all within 50 km from Edenville.

The Vaal River forms the northern boundary of the area, which also serves as the boundary between the Free State, Gauteng and the North West Province. Other prominent topographical features include the Vredefort Dome, a fascinating exposure of ancient granites emerging from the thick cover of the later Karoo sediments. The VDWHS is located within the North-West and Free State Provinces and falls under the jurisdiction of the Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District and Tlokwe Local Municipalities in the North-West Province and the Fezile Dabi District and Moqhaka and Ngwathe Local Municipalities in the Free State Province. The form of the dome consists of a central cone of granite surrounded by

concentric ridges of quartzite belonging to the Witwatersrand System<sup>23</sup>. The Renoster River also drains through the region and is dammed up in the vicinity of Koppies in a series of dams namely Weltevrede, Rooipoort and Koppies dams. The above rivers together with the respective dams are prominent water sources for agricultural purposes in the region.

---

<sup>23</sup> Some 2-billion years ago a meteorite 10 kilometers in diameter hit the earth about 100 km southwest of Johannesburg, creating an enormous impact crater. This area, near the town of Vredefort in the Free State, is known as the Vredefort Dome. The meteorite, larger than Table Mountain, caused a thousand-megaton blast of energy. The impact would have vaporised about 70 cubic kilometres of rock - and may have increased the earth's oxygen levels to a degree that made the development of multicellular life possible. The world has about 130 crater structures of possible impact origin. The Vredefort Dome is among the top three, and is the oldest and largest clearly visible meteorite impact site in the world. Vredefort's original impact scar measures 380 km across and consists of three concentric circles of uplifted rock. They were created by the rebound of rock below the impact site when the asteroid hit. Most of these structures have eroded away and are no longer clearly visible. The inner circle, measuring 180 km, is still visible and can be seen in the beautiful range of hills near Parys and Vredefort. It is this area that was named a World Heritage site



## 2.1 Legislative Context

The Municipal Systems Act (MSA), Section 34 is also clear in stating that “A *municipal council (a) must review its integrated development plan annually according to changing circumstances and (b) may also amend an existing integrated development plan*”. Considering the Act, it is evident that the municipality should promptly consider procedures to, as part of the annual reviewing of their IDP, also review the SDF. Similar to the IDP revision, the SDF revision will in principle deal with the following:

- *Comments from the MEC:*

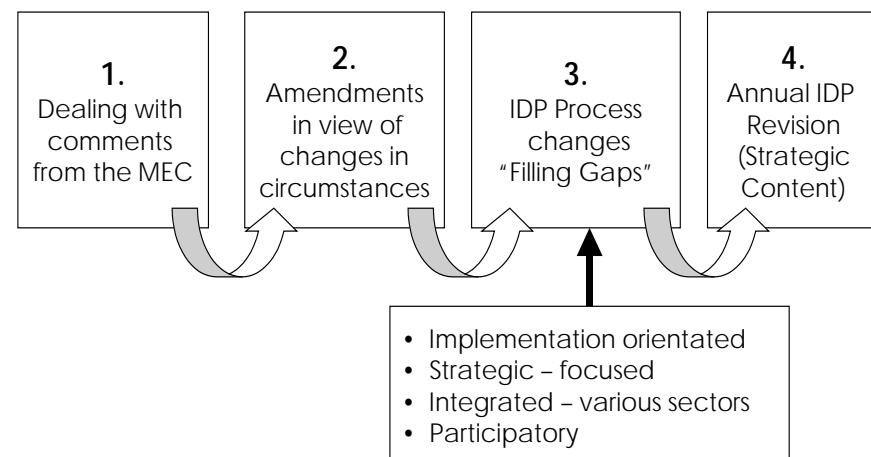
The MEC commented on the Council-adopted IDP and these comments should involve consideration of amendments to the IDP.

- *Amendments in Response to Changing Circumstances:*

The MSA (section 34) makes provision for the amendment of the IDP to the extent that changes in circumstances require. This means that while changes in circumstances are taken into account as part of the annual review, Municipalities are not prevented from making amendments throughout the year if circumstances require it.

- *Improving the IDP Process:*

Especially after the first round of IDP, many process related issues and prepared plans and programmes, may not be resolved or may require refinement. It may be necessary to effect institutional, process or content related changes to ensure that the review process incorporates those changes or amendments that are necessary to ensure that the Integrated Development Planning Process is strategic, implementation orientated, participatory and integrated.



## 2.2 Guidelines

*Comprehensive guidelines prepared by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform during 2010, the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (2013) and specific requirements by the Provincial Government served as point of the departure for the preparation of the Ngwathe SDF.*

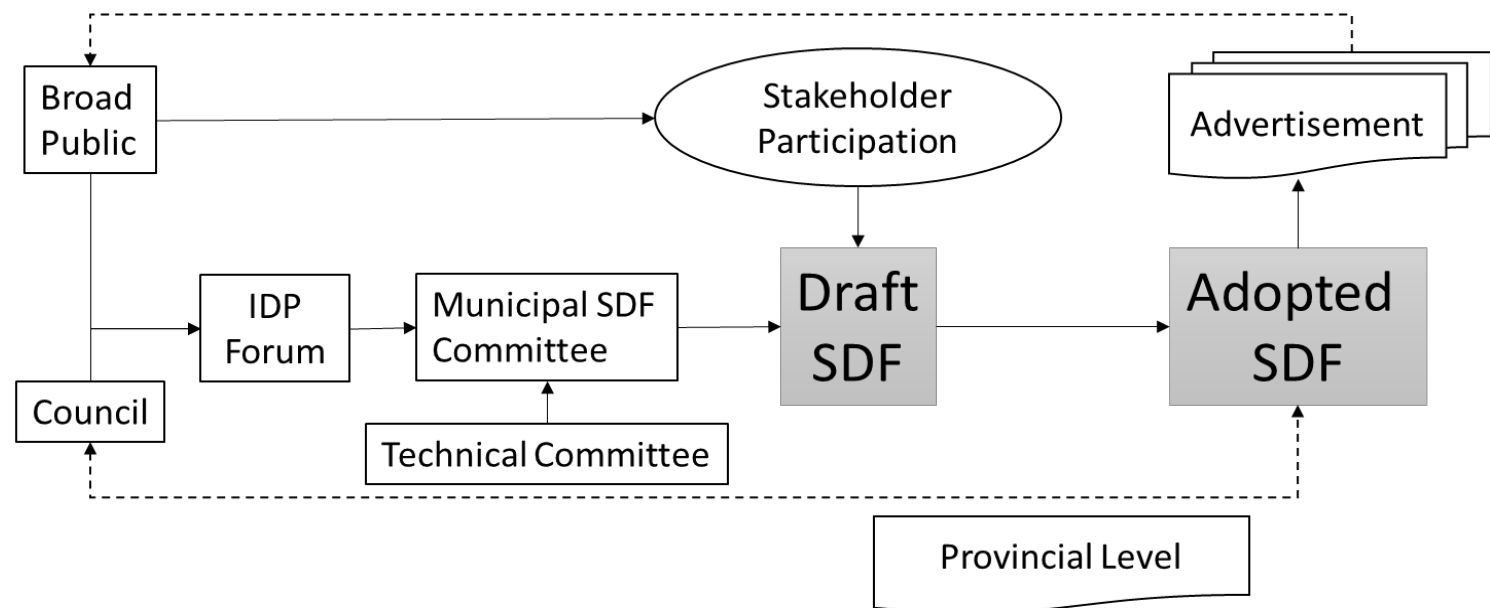
The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) intended to show desired patterns of land use, directions for future growth, indicate the alignment of urban edges, and depict other special development areas. The impact of the SDF is limited to providing policy to guide and informing land development and management. It does not change or confer real rights on land. The SDF plays an important role in guiding appropriate future change and providing motivations as to the need and desirability, or not, of proposed land use changes. Because of the guiding and informing nature, the SDF also has a number of other important roles, amongst other:

- To give effect to norms and standards and the development principles contained in the SPLUMA,
- Setting out objectives that reflect the desired spatial form over a 5 year and longer term (10-20 years),
- Defining strategies and policies to achieve these objectives that must indicate, amongst others:
  - the desired pattern of land use,
  - optimise the use of resources and infrastructure,
  - how spatial reconstruction will be addressed, and,
  - providing strategic guidance in respect of the location and nature of development.
- Include a strategic assessment of environmental pressure, opportunities and spatially indicating environmental sensitivities and high potential agricultural land,
- Reflect on agricultural land to be enclosed in the urban area,
- Identify programs and projects for development of land and set out a capital investment framework for development programs,

- Achieve alignment with neighbouring Municipal SDF's, the Fezile Dabi District SDF and the Free State Provincial SDF (PSDF),
- Reflect on National, Provincial, District and Municipal policy (Ngwathe Municipality IDP),
- Provide a visual representation of the designed spatial form with the Municipality in the form of a map(s)

### 2.3 Participation Structure

The existing IDP Steering Committee is considered the official structure to give effect to the SDF process. It is, however, deemed necessary to establish a SDF structure on municipal level, the Municipal SDF Steering Committee, including a joint Technical Committee. Said steering committee will, amongst other, guide and co-ordinate the process and propose a Draft SDF for ultimate adoption by the Council, ensure that key deliverables are completed within the time frames and process, summarise and document outputs.



In order to ensure continuity, it is not deemed necessary to establish additional structures to deal with the SDF review process. A needs analysis was endeavoured with the involved communities as part of the review process. Alignment with District Municipality will be achieved by attending formal alignment sessions scheduled by the District Municipality. Review of the Municipality's SDF is thus seen as an inclusive process involving the larger community and ensuring a uniform and holistic approach by means of continuous consultation with the District Municipality.

## **2.4 Alignment**

The SDF will be a reflection of the competitive advantage of the municipality in such a way that the proposed spatial vision of a municipality reflects the role and function of the particular municipality within the regional and in certain cases national space economy. Such an approach may inform and be informed by other sector departments initiatives thereby achieving alignment. The vertical and horizontal alignments between the Mafube Local Municipality SDF and the other planning policies affecting and affected by this SDF are illustrated below and amongst other will include:

### **i. National Policy**

- SPLUMA Principles (2013)
- National Planning Commission: Key Driving Forces
- NSDP Spatial Guidelines,
- National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (2005),
- Regional Industrial Development Strategy.

### **ii. Provincial Policy**

- Free State Provincial SDF (2013),
- Free State Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (2012).
- Approved Environment Management Framework of Ngwathe Municipality and the VDWHS

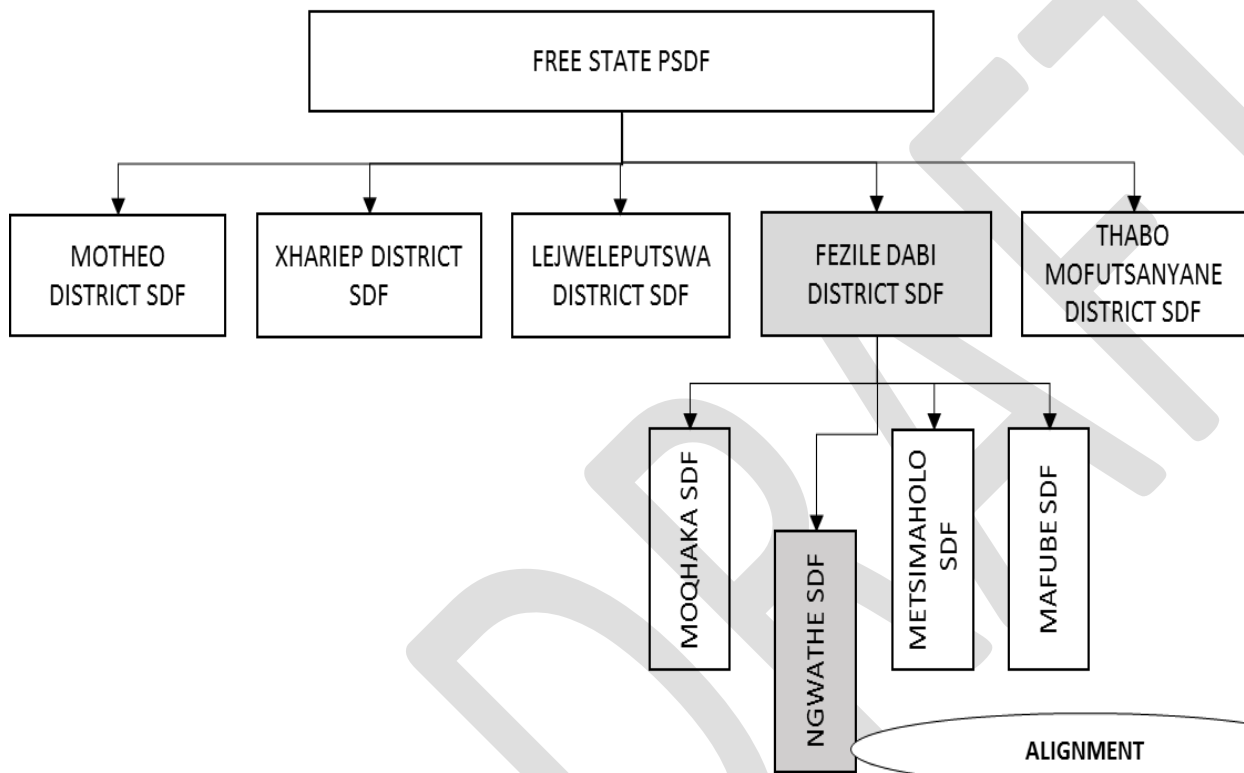
### **iii. District Policy**

- Fezile Dabi District SDF (2013),

- Fezile Dabi District IDP (2013),
- Fezile Dabi District LED Strategy (2012),
- Adjacent Municipal SDFs.

**iv. Municipal Policy**

- Ngwathe Local Municipality IDP (2014),
- Ngwathe Local Municipality SDF (2008/09).



#### NATIONAL POLICY

- SPLUMA Principles (2013)
- National Planning Commission: Key Driving Forces
- NSDP Spatial Guidelines
- National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (2005)
- Regional Industrial Development Strategy

#### PROVINCIAL POLICY

- Free State Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (2012)
- Free State Provincial SDF (2013)

#### APPROVED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORKS

- Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF (2013)
- Ngwathe Municipality EMF (2013)

#### DISTRICT POLICY

- Fezile Dabi District SDF (2013)
- Fezile Dabi District IDP (2013)
- Fezile Dabi District LED Strategy (2012)
- Adjacent Municipal SDFs

#### MUNICIPAL POLICY

- Ngwathe Local Municipality IDP (2012/13)
- Ngwathe Local Municipality SDF (2008/09)

## 2.5 Methodology

### 2.5.1 Implementation

The following distinctive implementation phases will be followed in preparing the SDF:

▪ <b>Phase 1:</b> Start up	Project Plan and Agreeing on Structure, First IDP Steering Committee Session.
▪ <b>Phase 2:</b> Issues and Vision	Phase 2 is a review of the public consultative process through which issues and a vision are obtained from the local council, internal departments, the public, other municipalities and government departments. A summary of the issues and vision will be produced. This gives a broad perspective of the spatial issues of concern.
▪ <b>Phase 3:</b> Status Quo (Analysis)	Produce a status quo report which documents a “Spatial Analysis” of the municipality. This will involve analyses of the applicable policy informants; existing sectoral plans; natural; socio-economic; and built; and will include the issues and vision from the previous phase.
▪ <b>Phase 4:</b> Synthesis and Draft SDF	Produce the Draft SDF containing objectives, a conceptual framework and sub-area proposals suitable for public consultation.
▪ <b>Phase 5:</b> Achieving Support for the SDF	Public consultative process to obtain inputs/ comments from the various stakeholders on the draft SDF from Phase 4.
▪ <b>Phase 6:</b> Finalisation and Approval of the SDF	Produce a final SDF which incorporates the comments obtained on the draft SDF in Phase 5 as well as produce an implementation plan and a monitoring and evaluation framework.
▪ <b>Phase 7:</b> Implementation	This phase, usually not part of the consultant’s brief to prepare the SDF, is conducted by the municipality. It involves actual implementation; ongoing monitoring and evaluation of the SDF; and its updating and review where required.

### **2.5.2 Critical Milestones and Deliverables**

Deliverables will include an *Executive Summary*, aligned *Spatial Projects*, a *Vision* and spatial related *Development Goals* (Phase 2), *Status Quo Analysis* (Phase 3), an interim *Draft SDF* (Phase 4) and the *Final SDF* (Phase 6); all accompanied with relevant plans and development proposals.



### **3.1 Community and Stakeholder Analysis**

The following spatial related issues were identified by the community

#### **3.1.1 Housing:**

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Address backlog in erven and housing</li> <li>▪ Maintenance of hostels</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Small farming development</li> <li>▪ Development of self-help housing schemes</li> <li>▪ Additional land for future residential extensions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Land for residential extension</li> <li>▪ Land for common age development</li> <li>▪ Quality of houses</li> <li>▪ Land for small farmers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Development of existing commonage land</li> <li>▪ Criteria for allocation of subsidy houses</li> <li>▪ Provision of land for emerging farmers</li> <li>▪ Quality of RDP housing structures</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Low cost housing development in Mokwallo of approximately 2500 erven</li> <li>▪ Additional commonage land</li> <li>▪ Land ownership / tenure</li> </ul>

#### **3.1.2 Environment:**

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
--------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------	------------------

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Pollution of the river and spruit area</li> <li>▪ Pollution along provincial and local roads</li> <li>▪ Community education</li> <li>▪ Development of parks as functional open areas</li> <li>▪ Greening and tree planting in urban areas</li> <li>▪ Control of animals in the urban areas</li> <li>▪ Management of landfill site</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Maintenance of public spaces</li> <li>▪ Continuous development of public spaces</li> <li>▪ Greening of the area</li> <li>▪ Cleaning campaigns</li> <li>▪ Recycling of refuse</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Environment conservation</li> <li>▪ Uncontrolled tree felling</li> <li>▪ Control of stray animals</li> <li>▪ Grazing camps system as part of commonage</li> <li>▪ Greening and tree planting</li> <li>▪ Community awareness to promote environmental conservation</li> <li>▪ Regulated development of nature areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Community awareness</li> <li>▪ By-laws relating to environmental health</li> <li>▪ Visits by SPCA in urban and rural areas</li> <li>▪ Greening and tree planting programs</li> <li>▪ Cleaning campaign</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Community awareness</li> <li>▪ Greening and tree planting</li> <li>▪ Rehabilitation of old dumping areas</li> <li>▪ Refuse removal</li> </ul>

### 3.1.3 Sport and Recreation:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Multi-purpose (indoor) sport facility</li> <li>▪ Maintenance</li> <li>▪ Upgrading sport facilities</li> <li>▪ Accessibility to all</li> <li>▪ New facilities where not provided</li> <li>▪ Detailed needs analysis</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Multi-purpose facility</li> <li>▪ Swimming pool accessible to all</li> <li>▪ Maintenance</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Multi-purpose facility</li> <li>▪ Maintenance</li> <li>▪ Development of existing parks and public areas</li> <li>▪ Upgrading and maintenance of community hall</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Multi-purpose facility</li> <li>▪ Development of open spaces</li> <li>▪ Maintenance</li> <li>▪ Swimming pool</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Multi-purpose facility</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of existing facilities</li> <li>▪ Maintenance of existing facilities</li> <li>▪ Development of parks and public places</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the existing swimming pool</li> </ul>
--	--	--	--	---

### 3.1.4 Public Transport:

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
--------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------	------------------

<b>Parys</b>	<b>Heilbron</b>	<b>Koppies</b>	<b>Edenville</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Parking in the Parys CBD</li> <li>▪ New taxi rank for Parys</li> <li>▪ Embarking and disembarking points</li> <li>▪ Public transport in rural areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Development of a well-equipped truck stop</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of existing taxi ranks</li> <li>▪ Public transport in rural areas</li> <li>▪ Embarking and disembarking points</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of primary roads to improve public transportation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Proper development of the existing taxi ranks including ablution facilities</li> <li>▪ Sheltered embarking and disembarking points along all main roads</li> <li>▪ Public transport for farming communities including school children</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Establishment of a taxi rank in Edenville or Ngwathe</li> <li>▪ Transportation to farm school children</li> <li>▪ Availability of bus services</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Upgrading of taxi rank in Mokwallo</li> <li>▪ Establishment of a taxi rank in CBD in Vredefort</li> <li>▪ Additional facilities at taxi ranks</li> <li>▪ Investigate a bus service for public transport</li> <li>▪ Transport to farming communities especially school children</li> </ul>

### 3.2 Vision

The municipality prepared a comprehensive IDP for the 2013-14 financial year that set the following

**VISION**

*“To provide excellent and sustainable municipal services”*

**MISSION STATEMENT**

*“To provide quality and sustainable services in an efficient, effective & economic manner to all communities through the promotion of community participation, good governance & improved intergovernmental values”*

Vision and Mission statement:

### **3.3 Development Objectives**

The former SDF (2008/09) did not identify development objectives. Development objectives were not prepared for the spatial related issues *per se* and objectives identified in the IDP process were assessed, the following objectives were determined as appropriate for spatial development objectives:<sup>24</sup>

<b><u>Area</u></b>	<b><u>IDP Objectives (2014)</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
<b>Water</b>	▪ Improve access to basic services	<b>1.</b>
	▪ Improve water quality	<b>2.</b>
	▪ Improvement of water conservation and water demand management	<b>3.</b>
<b>Sanitation</b>	▪ Improve access to basic services	<b>4.</b>
	▪ Eradicate all the buckets in formal and informal settlements by 2014	<b>5.</b>

---

<sup>24</sup> Strategic Planning, 2014 Draft Report (March 2014)

<b>Electricity</b>	▪ Improve access to basic services	<b>6.</b>
	▪ Low capacity for electrical bulk supply	<b>7.</b>
<b>Waste Management</b>	▪ Registering of landfill sites and improving infrastructure	<b>8.</b>
<b>Housing</b>	▪ Acceptable safe and quality housing	<b>9.</b>
	▪ Replace informal structures and eradicate the current backlog	<b>10.</b>
	▪ Ensure the accessibility of land for future residential development and to facilitate land redistribution	<b>11.</b>
<b>Roads &amp; Transport</b>	▪ Continuous maintenance and upgrading of all tar, gravel and unsurfaced roads and storm water networks	<b>12.</b>
<b>Agriculture</b>	▪ To diversify the agricultural sector	<b>13.</b>
	<b><u>SDF Objectives (2009)</u></b>	
<b>Extension</b>	▪ Extension of a specific land use or area	<b>14.</b>
<b>Tourism</b>	▪ To enhance and exploit tourism	<b>15.</b>
<b>Maintenance</b>	▪ Quality of current developments should remain	<b>16.</b>
<b>Cooperative Governance</b>	▪ To co-ordinate efforts to promote areas of significance	<b>17.</b>
<b>Governance</b>	▪ Any form of development is the business of the Local Authority that should be informed of any developments in the region	<b>18.</b>
<b>Economic Sustainability</b>	▪ To ensure the financial viability of developments and job creation	<b>19.</b>
<b>Accessibility</b>	▪ All development should be accessible to the larger community	<b>20.</b>
<b>Sustainability</b>	▪ Developments should be sustainable based on the above aspects	<b>21.</b>

#### 4.1 Demographic Realities

Table 4 indicates the current population of the Fezile Dabi District and the population per Local Municipality.

**Table 4**  
**Population: Ngwathe Region**  
 (Source: Easydata by Quantec, 2014)

<b><u>Municipality</u></b>	<b><u>20</u> <u>11</u></b>	<b><u>20</u> <u>12</u></b>	<b><u>20</u> <u>13</u></b>
Moqhaka Local Municipality	16 5 92 1	16 6 42 7	16 6 95 4
Ngwathe Local Municipality	12 0 52 0	12 0 77 3	12 1 02 4
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	14 9 42 3	14 9 25 6	14 9 05 7
Mafube Local Municipality	54 20 8	54 32 6	54 43 9

	<b>49</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>49</b>
	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>07</b>	<b>78</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Fezile Dabi (District)</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>4</b>

Although a fairly accurate indication can be given of the urban population, data regarding the rural population is mostly unreliable due to various dynamic demographic factors in the region. Pertinent factors influencing demographic data in rural areas, within the Fezile Dabi Region, include:

- Cross provincial boarder Influx generally to the Sasolburg/ Deneysville areas due to the existing mining activities and its close proximity to the industrial areas of Vereeniging and Vanderbijlpark.
- The tendency occurred to a similar extent in the Viljoenskroon area due to its close proximity to the Free State and North West Province gold mines.
- Fluctuation in the labour force occurs periodically due to the nature of the agricultural practices in the region.
- Urbanisation to urban centres increased substantially.
- Land restitution and ownership are contentious issues within the agricultural community and leads to the tendency to rather house farmers in formal residential areas than on farms.

**Table 5**  
**Population and Households as Percentage of the District & Population Growth**

(Source: Census 2011)



	<u>Popula tion 2001</u>	<u>Popula tion 2011</u>	<u>Popula tion % Distric t (2011)</u>	<u>No of Househ olds</u>	<u>Househ olds % District 2011)</u>	<u>Popula tion Growt h (%p.a.) 2001 - 2011</u>
Moqhak a	167 892	160 532	33	45 661	31	-0,45
Ngwathe	118 810	120 520	25	37 102	26	0,14
Metsima holo	115 955	149 108	30	45 757	32	2,51
Mafube	56 637	57 876	12	16 460	11	0,22
<b>Fezile Dabi</b>	<b>459 294</b>	<b>488 036</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>144 980</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>0,61</b>

The area of jurisdiction of the Ngwathe Local Municipality is situated in the northern part of the Fezile Dabi District, the latter comprising a total of 488 036 residents. As a consequence of a growth potential of 0,14 % the past 10 years, the total residents in the Ngwathe Region is 120 520. The Free State growth potential for the past 10 years was also calculated at 0,14 %. The Ngwathe population presents 25% of the Fezile Dabi District, and comprises a total of 37 102 households; 26% of the households in the district. The general tendency of migration from rural to urban areas is also occurring in the area (82% urban and 18% rural), as is the case in the rest of the Free State Province. The majority of the rural population is active within the agricultural sector.

## 4.2 Regional Gender and Age Distribution

In order to establish a scenario of the age structure in the region, the percentages of different age categories were assessed and summarised in the ensuing table. A large portion of the population (30,1%) is composed of the age category 15 years and younger. This implicates a typical “fertility distribution”. The specific age distribution implicates a future average to high population growth under normal conditions. A fairly low percentage (7,5%) of the region’s population is composed of the age category 65 years and older. This is typical of a low “mortality distribution”. Both tendencies emphasise that population growth could, under normal conditions, be expected in the region. A large portion of the population is subsequently composed of the age group 15-64 (62,4%) that implicates the stronger economic base of the region in comparison to the rest of the Free State and it can be determined that a larger part of the economic independent sector of the provincial population resides in the region. The phenomenon is explained in view of:

- the more developed character of the region,
- by implication more job opportunities, and
- the strategic location of the region in terms of the mining and industrial sectors in adjacent provinces.

**Table 6**  
**Age Structure and Sex Ratio**

	<u>Age Structure</u>						<u>Sex Ratio</u> <u>Males Per 100</u> <u>Females</u>	
	<15		15-64		65+		2001	2011
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011		
Moqhaka	28,1	27,0	66,2	66,4	5,7	6,5	99,2	98,1

Ngwathe	30,6	30,1	62,3	62,4	7,1	7,5	90,7	91,0
Metsimaholo	27,7	26,3	68,6	69,3	3,7	4,4	104,4	108,6
Mafube	34,4	31,6	59,7	62,1	5,9	6,3	87,8	92,5
<b>Fezile Dabi</b>	<b>29,4</b>	<b>28,1</b>	<b>65,0</b>	<b>65,8</b>	<b>5,6</b>	<b>6,1</b>	<b>96,8</b>	<b>98,6</b>

(Source: Census 2011)

Gender distribution in the region is well-balanced at 91 males of the population per 100 females, also relating to the ratio in the district of 98.6 males per 100 females. The provisional ratio, according to the 2011 Censuses is 91 males of the population per 100 females.

### 4.3 Current Development Initiatives

The normal industrial incentives, endorsed by the Council, ensure growth in the industrial area of Parys. The Council liaise with developers based on the individual merit regarding development incentives.

- Considering the tourism potential of the Parys area, the objective of the Council to forcefully exploit this potential will have a direct influence on the economic growth and development in the area.
- Recent upgrading of the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve, the newly established private nature resort at Rooipoort Dam and the further development of the R82 Battlefield Route, will enhance the tourism potential of Koppies.
- Bentonite deposits are present in the Koppies region and exploitation thereof provides for approximately 30 job opportunities.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>25</sup>

Bentonite occurs in the Koppies District of the Free State. The deposits are flat-lying and lenticular, occupying embayments in pre-Karoo metasediments and are overlain by Eccle shales. The clay consists of a very pure montmorillonite with only small amounts of quartz, and is probably formed through the in situ weathering of volcanic ash. Well known here is the Ocean deposit in the Koppies District, which in 1980 produced 80 per cent of South Africa's production. At that stage reserves were more than 700 000 t and were sufficient for two decades at these production levels.

- The area is underlain with rich coal desists and the gradual exploitation of coal fields in the Sasolburg vicinity will evidently lead to these areas being mined<sup>26</sup>. The Free State Department of Mineral Resources indicated that several prospecting rights have, of late, been granted for the areas located between Kroonstad and Parys.
- Diamond deposits are present in the vicinity of Kroonstad, although located in the Ngwathe Municipal area, previously been mined at the Voorspoed diamond mine. De Beers commenced with the redevelopment of the Voorspoed mine and exploitation is currently underway (refer to Rural Spatial Framework Plan). Current estimates see De Beers exploiting diamond deposits, for at least another 10 years, in the region.

#### **4.4 Regional Economic Tendencies**

Parys has a strong commercial component and provides a wide range of services regarding health, education and professional services to the district. The contribution of these sectors is therefore substantial. The Parys District has unique nature and environmental assets like the Vaal River with several islands in the proximity of Parys and the Vredefort Dome that present exceptional tourism potential. Large areas of the Parys District are underlain with undifferentiated granite that is exploited directly to the north of Parys that further contributes to Parys being a prominent service and economic centre. Parys has a well-developed airfield that supports commercial and tourism development in the area.

The most prominent economic sector in Vredefort is the agricultural sector. Commercial activities in the town are the only other sector that contributes to the Gross Geographical Product (GGP) of the district. When comparing the contribution of the district to the contribution of the other districts in the Fezile Dabi District, it is conspicuous how small it is. This is, however, attributed to the fact that in all the other districts, two or more towns contribute to the GGP while Vredefort is the only town situated in the

<sup>26</sup>

The Vereeniging-Sasolburg coalfield ranks third in South Africa in order of importance, while the Free State supplies a saleable output of 10,5 % of the national coal output. Two mines are producing, namely the New Vaal Colliery and Sigma Mine, both exploiting bituminous coal.

former Vredefort District. Because the agricultural sector is the most prominent economic sector, there are very limited work opportunities in town with the consequent high unemployment rate. This is aggravated by the population growth in specifically the Mokwallo residential area. It is envisaged that Vredefort will remain functioning only as a service town to the surrounding agricultural community.

The former Heilbron District is predominantly an agricultural area although major manufacturing industries contribute largely to the GGP of the District. The agriculture and manufacturing industries have a direct influence on the per capita expenditure and employment opportunities of the urban area concerned. Industries such as Simba, Tudor, Peter's Knitwear and Michrochem are amongst other, producing in Heilbron. These industries are significant employment sectors in the community. The study area is also in close proximity to the coal mining and coal-related industries of Sasolburg.

Koppies is located in an area of agricultural significance and mainly provides services in this regard to the surrounding rural areas. The three well-established and developed irrigation schemes subsequently enhance the agricultural character of the area. The strategic location of Koppies between the larger centres of Kroonstad and Sasolburg, mainly influence growth and development within the community. These factors contribute to the relatively low level of economic activity in the area. The current bentonite exploitation near Koppies and the current initiative for coal mining in the vicinity of Koppies provide significant future growth potential. Koppies is becoming well familiar for its tourist attractions. Specific reference is made to the R82 Battlefield Route that consists of several historical battlefields that are envisaged to be further developed as well as the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve. National annual angling competitions are held at the Koppies Dam.

Edenville is located in an area of agricultural significance and mainly provides basic services in this regard to the surrounding rural areas. The main road linking Kroonstad and Heilbron, stretches adjacent to the area. The area is influenced to a great extent by Kroonstad as a large service centre in close proximity. The most prominent economic sectors contributing to the Gross Geographical Product of the District, include general government, finance and real estate and transport. This is ascribed to the influence of Kroonstad, as a large service centre in the concerned district. The large contribution by

general government is attributed to the prominent function of several Government and Para-Statal institutions in Kroonstad. The prominence of these sectors is due to the large turnover in the real estate sector, specifically as a result of the above-mentioned. Future development of Edenville is not foreseen. Edenville will remain functioning as service town to the surrounding agricultural community.

**Table 7**  
**Application of Agricultural Land: Ngwathe Region**  
 (Source: Department of Agriculture)

<u>District</u>	<u>Parys District</u>		<u>Vrede fort District</u>		<u>Heilbr on District</u>		<u>Koppi es District</u>		<u>Kroon stad District (incl Edenvi lle)</u>		<u>Total Area</u>	
	ha		ha		ha		ha		ha		ha	
Area unavailable for Agriculture	5		5		10		5		12		39	
	12		3		70		3		74		54	
	6		9		5		1		2		3	
Area presently under cultivation			5				8					
			5		14		9		19		52	
	44		0		5		8		1		7	
	72		4		70		4		78		11	
	7		8		3		3		9		0	

Area available for cultivation	21 2		4 1 0		7 14 0		1 5 4		68 9		8 60 5	
Area presently under grazing	42 93 5		7 2 7 0 3		19 5 15 2		6 0 3 7 2		21 0 98 0		58 2 14 2	
<b>DISTRICT</b>	<b>9</b>		<b>1</b>		<b>3</b>		<b>1</b>		<b>4</b>		<b>1</b>	
<b>TOTAL AREA</b>	<b>3</b>		<b>3</b>		<b>5</b>		<b>5</b>		<b>1</b>		<b>5</b>	
	<b>0</b>		<b>4</b>		<b>8</b>		<b>5</b>		<b>6</b>		<b>7</b>	
	<b>0</b>		<b>1</b>		<b>7</b>		<b>4</b>		<b>2</b>		<b>4</b>	
	<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>	
	<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>		<b>0</b>	

The above table gives an overview of the agricultural potential of the Ngwathe Region. Accordingly 46% of the area is currently under cultivation and 50% under grazing. Approximately 1% of the area cannot be utilised for agricultural purposes due to topographical limitations. Regarding the former Parys and Vredefort District 48% and 41% of the areas respectively are under cultivation. Regarding the Koppies District, the largest percentage of the area is under cultivation (58%) while the area under grazing is 38%, which emphasise the agricultural significance of the area. In the Kroonstad District the area under grazing (50%) is almost the same as the area utilised for cultivation (46%). The latter even division between grazing and cultivation is also evident in the Heilbron District.

#### 4.5 Long-Term Economic Prospects

- Various sectors in the Parys District contribute to the GGP of the study area. This is primarily attributed to the Parys urban area, as a prominent services centre in the district. Parys has a strong

commercial component and provides a wide range of services regarding health, education and professional services to the district. The contribution of these sectors is therefore substantial.

- The Parys District has unique nature and environmental assets like the Vaal River with several islands in the proximity of Parys. The VDWHS of late became a potential source of exceptional tourism value.
- Large areas in the Parys District are also underlain with undifferentiated granite. Granite is exploited for the export market directly to the north of Parys that further contributes to the economic growth.
- Heilbron serves as a service centre for the surrounding agricultural community. The district has a predominantly agricultural centred economy with agriculture related activities dominating the district.
- The agricultural sector of the Koppies District is also prominent in the area and the district a predominant agricultural area. The three well-established and developed irrigation schemes subsequently enhance the agricultural prominence of the area.
- The possible long-term future mining opportunities of coal in the Koppies vicinity will significantly contribute to large scale economic growth and creation of employment opportunities.
- The existing mining activities of bentonite at Koppies are prominent in a local context that also have future economic growth potential.
- The study area, like the rest of the Fezile Dabi District experienced a dramatic increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to game ranches and guesthouses on farms.
- The development of the tourism potential of Koppies regarding Koppies Dam and the R82 Battlefield Route should be supported.
- A need subsequently has been identified for the development and marketing of the old limestone mine in the proximity of Edenville, for tourism purposes.

#### **4.6 Unemployment and Economic Difficulties**

According to the Census 2011 data, the unemployment figure in the Free State is 32,6%, while the youth unemployment rate is much higher at 43%. The percentage of the population of the Fezile Dabi Region unemployed, is 33,9%, while the youth unemployment rate is also higher at 44,4 %. The following general tendencies could be derived from the contents of the above table relating to employment in the region:



- Unemployment remains a critical concern in the area and unemployment figures could generally be considered as high.
- The most recent unemployment statistics for the Ngwathe Region indicates the average unemployment as 35,2%. The latter is equal to the average unemployment for the Fezile Dabi Region of 33,9%.
- It is evident that only 66,1% of the population of the region is employed.
- Comparing the different Local Municipalities in the Fezile Dabi Region, it appears that the percentage of the population employed is the lowest for the Ngwathe Region (64,8%) and the Moqhaka Region (64,8%) while the Metsimaholo Region has the highest employment figure (67,9%) followed by the Mafube Region (66,6%).

**Table 8**  
**Labour Market & Dependency Ratio**  
 (Source: Census 2011)

	<u>Labour Market</u>				<u>Dependency Ratio</u>	
	<u>Unemployment</u>		<u>Youth</u>		<u>Per 100 (15-64)</u>	
	<u>Rate (official)</u>		<u>Rate (official) 15-34 years</u>			
	<b>2001</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2001</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2001</b>	<b>2011</b>
Moqhaka	39,9	35,2	54,6	47,2	51,0	50,5
Ngwathe	47,1	35,2	59,4	45,1	60,5	60,2
Metsimaholo	37,0	32,1	47,7	41,6	45,7	44,3
Mafube	45,	33,	59,	44,	67,	61,

	0	4	1	3	5	1
<b>Fezile Dabi</b>	<b>41,3</b>	<b>33,9</b>	<b>54,2</b>	<b>44,4</b>	<b>53,8</b>	<b>51,9</b>

---

## NGWATHE RURAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK .5

---

### 5.1 Historical Rural Development

Since its official establishment during 1882, **Parys** systematically developed as a service centre. This is primarily attributed to the fact that the town is located on the development axis between Bloemfontein and the Gauteng Metropolitan area. During the period prior to 1982, development of the town did, however, not occur according to a specific development strategy since no strategic planning document existed. During 1982, a non-statutory Guideline Plan was compiled. The document provided a framework for primarily future extensions and proposed a comprehensive bypass road network. This document is outdated and does not effectively contribute towards development as circumstances in the urban area have changed dramatically. Consequently, the proposals in that document are no longer relevant.

**Tumahole** specifically developed within the background of an internal development framework since the late eighties when rapid growth was experienced. All the phases of residential extension were done within the framework. The latter resulted in Tumahole being a reasonably modern town with a proper road network and the ample provision of community facilities. Currently the larger community is relatively well developed regarding different land uses. Land uses, where not developed, are however, purposefully provided regarding modern urban planning principles. A comprehensive Framework Plan for the Parys urban area was compiled during 1997. This document provides a framework for future development and extension in accordance to present government policy and legislation. During the process, future road networks were completely dealt with together with the integration of the involved communities.

**Heilbron** typically developed as a small town since its establishment during 1878. The following period saw it developing into a well-established central town, serving the predominant surrounding agricultural community. A strong industrial character led to the nomination of Heilbron as an industrial growth point during the eighties. Although development occurred in an orderly way, a strategic planning document to guide development, was only available since late 1981. The former structure plan was comprehensively revised in 1992 providing a proper and indicative non-statutory Structure Plan. The document provided a framework for development and specifically addressed the development of a non-noxious and noxious industrial area. The future extension of the Phiritona neighbourhood was additionally addressed. A broad future road network was indicated in the document that influenced future developments to a certain extent especially the development of Phiritona. Although the non-statutory Structure Plan of 1992 serves as a framework for development, formal status was never given to it due to the fact that the Integrated Development Planning Process was meanwhile developed.

An internal framework for the development of **Phiritona** did, however, exist since the late eighties when rapid growth was experienced. Since then, development occurred within the context of an internal development framework. This resulted in Phiritona also being a reasonably modern town with a proper road network and the ample provision of community facilities. All the phases of residential extension that followed were done within the framework. Currently, both communities are relatively well developed regarding different land uses.

Since its establishment during 1910, **Koppies** typically developed as a small town, serving the predominant surrounding agricultural community. Development of the town, however, did not occur according to a specific development strategy since no strategic planning documents existed. During 1982, a non-statutory Guide Plan was compiled for the area. The document provided a framework for development and specifically addressed the development of **Kwakwatsi** and the development of an industrial area. Although a new industrial area, situated between Koppies and Kwakwatsi, was developed, development thereof is notably dormant. All the phases of residential extension that followed

were done according to modern town planning principles providing a proper road hierarchy and the purposeful distribution of facilities.

**Vredefort** typically developed as a small town serving the predominant surrounding agricultural community. Development of the town did not occur according to a specific development strategy since no strategic planning documents existed. During 1984, a Structure Plan was compiled for the area. The document provided a framework for development and specifically addressed the development of **Mokwallo**, the extension of the industrial area and the establishment of an over-night truck stop. All the phases of residential extension that followed were done according to modern town planning principles providing a proper road hierarchy and the purposeful distribution of facilities. Land uses, where not developed, are purposefully provided regarding modern urban planning principles. As adequate provision was made for several facilities, the gradual development thereof should now commence.

**Edenville/ Ngwathe** typically developed as a small town serving the predominant surrounding agricultural community. Development of the town, however, did not occur according to a specific development strategy since no strategic planning documents existed. All the phases of residential extension were done according to modern town planning principles. Currently, both communities are relatively well developed regarding different land uses.

## **5.2 Growth Points and Growth Potential**

Future growth is attributed to the influx and the commercial and agricultural components of the region. Limited growth is envisaged due to long term coal mining opportunities as well as the weekend related tourism potential of the area. Future urbanisation will principally be attributed to natural growth and influx in the area. Although the population growth and housing requirements are predicted below, influencing factors described in section 5.3, although not quantitatively analysed, may influence predication made.

**Table 9**  
**Ngwathe Projected Population Growth <sup>27</sup>**

---

<sup>27</sup> Calculated by using Gompertz-curve analytical method

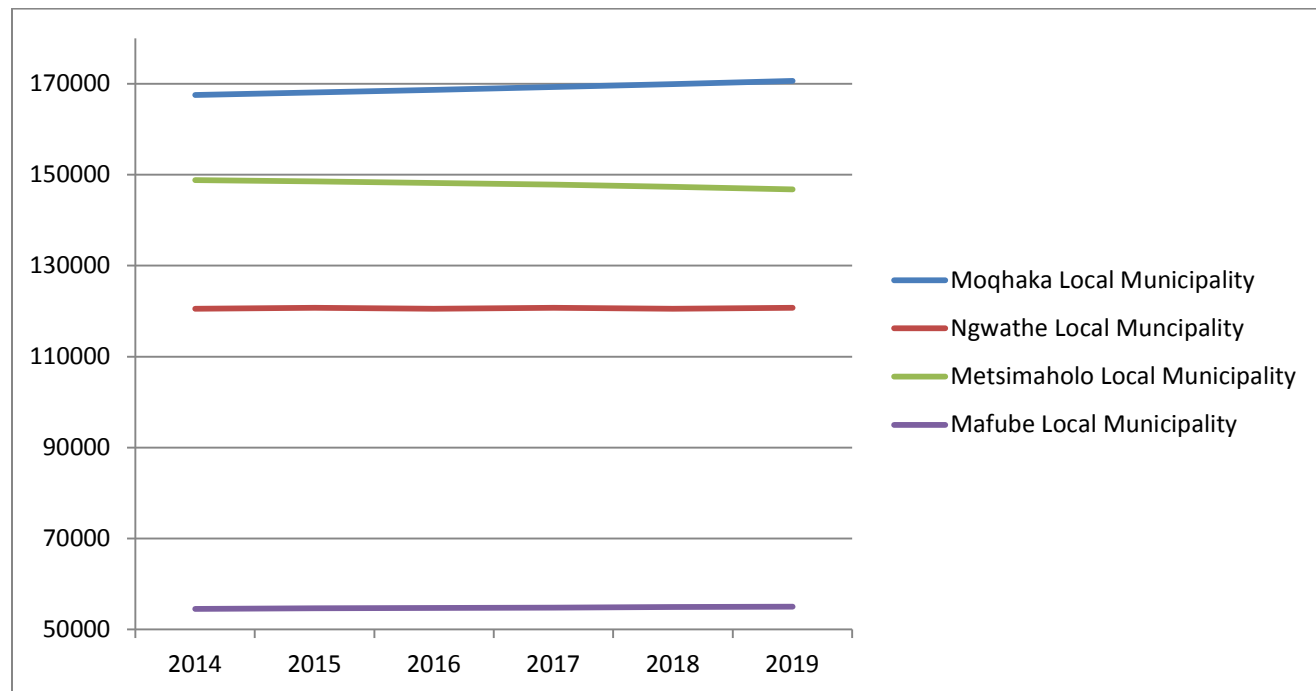
<u>Municipality</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2018</u>	<u>2019</u>	<u>Gr ow th 20 13 = 20 19 (%)</u>
Moqhaka Local Municipality	16 69 54	16 75 03	16 80 74	16 86 70	16 92 90	16 99 36	17 06 08	1.8 5
Ngwathe Local Municipality	12 10 24	12 05 20	12 07 64	12 05 21	12 07 59	12 05 22	12 07 54	0.9 9
Metsimaholo Local Municipality	14 90 57	14 88 20	14 85 37	14 82 01	14 77 99	14 73 21	14 67 52	- 1.3 9
Mafube Local Municipality	54 43 9	54 54 7	54 65 1	54 75 0	54 84 5	54 93 6	55 02 3	0.8 7
<b>Fezile Dabi (District)</b>	<b>49 14 74</b>	<b>49 13 90</b>	<b>49 20 26. 3</b>	<b>49 21 42</b>	<b>49 26 93. 4</b>	<b>49 27 15</b>	<b>49 31 37. 6</b>	<b>0.6 0</b>

Population growth in the Fezile Dabi District, in general, is lower (0.60%) in comparison to the estimated annual population growth rate of South Africa (1.34%)<sup>28</sup>. Although the predicted population

<sup>28</sup> Statistical Release, P0302, Mid-year Population Estimates, 2013

growth in the Ngwathe region is slightly higher (0.99%) than the average for the District, it is also lower than the calculated national growth. Population growth, in general, and as illustrated in the graph below, is deemed exceedingly marginal. The above figure confirms the fact that the Free State has the second smallest share of the South African population, constituting just over 5% of the population.

**Figure 6**  
**Ngwathe Projected Population Growth**



- Due to the dominant regional role Parys and Heilbron play in terms of regional service providers and industrial and commercial development, the focus of urbanisation will probably be on these centres.
- Smaller towns such as Vredefort, Koppies and Edenville primarily accommodate farm workers migrating to these towns.

- Parys with its strong service character and prominent commercial and industrial components, will remain the main town and growth point of the region and will continue to render various services to the surrounding smaller towns and rural areas.
- Koppies and Heilbron are located in areas of agricultural significance and mainly provide services in this regard to the surrounding rural areas.
- Heilbron also has a strong manufacturing component that is principally agricultural related.
- Edenville and Vredefort are located in areas of agricultural significance and mainly provide restricted services in this regard to the surrounding rural communities. Substantial future growth of these towns is not foreseen.
- Future directions for residential extension, predominantly in the high density low cost residential areas, were identified for all urban areas and indicated on the Spatial Framework.

An assessment of the development potential of urban areas in the Free State Province were endeavoured by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform during 2014, illustrated in the ensuing table. It is evident that:

- Parys (including Sasolburg and Kroonstad will remain growth points in the larger Fezile Dabi District.
- Heilbron and Koppies additionally might serve as growth points if the existing manufacturing opportunities are exploited in Heilbron and the mining and tourism opportunities are extensively exploited in Koppies.
- Edenville and Vredefort will continue to serve as small towns with limited economic growth potential focussing on tourism and providing a service to the agricultural community.
- Employment opportunities will mainly be created in Sasolburg, Kroonstad, Heilbron, Frankfort and Parys as continuous growth points.
- Koppies also has the opportunity to create future employment opportunities based on the tourism potential as well as the possibility for coal mining in Koppies.
- Employment opportunities in the other smaller towns, will remain limited and agricultural orientated.



Rural Towns play a pivotal role in the economic life of many rural communities. They are an essential part of the economic and planning landscape and need to be acknowledged for their essential role in the local governance landscape. National, Provincial and Local Government as well as the private sector need to further support small town development in order to create vibrant and local economies. Strategic economic and operational infrastructure, market and service delivery interventions, and communication network governance will go a long way in addressing the economic linkages and market bridging roles which small towns play in rural economic life.

**Table 10**  
**Summary of Economic - And Urban Growth Potential in Ngwathe**  
 (Source Department Rural Development & Land Reform, 2014)

<b><u>Towns</u></b>	<b><u>Ngwathe Economic - And Urban Growth Potential</u></b>			
	<b><u>Economic Potential of Towns</u></b>	<b><u>Economic Potential of the Local Municipality</u></b>	<b><u>Urban Growth Potential of Towns</u></b>	<b><u>Urban Growth Potential of the Local Municipality</u></b>
Parys	Medium	Low	Medium	Medium
Schonkenville	Medium		Medium	
Heilbron	Low		Low	
Koppies	Low		Low	
Vredefort	Low		Low	
Edenville	Low		Low	

A number of regional problems have surfaced over recent decades that have demanded the attention of planners and developer's in so far as economic development of small and rural towns, in the broader Free State context, is concerned. The "dying rural town syndrome" seems both the most intractable and

the one that continues to capture the public's concern. Development initiatives, at large, do not focus on the plight of the Regional Free State, losing population or businesses, not thriving economically and there is widespread evidence that many urban towns are in trouble. These problems include:

- the sudden economic shocks caused by downturns in “urban areas” because of economic restructuring,
- the continued “emptying” of rural areas,
- the ongoing (and increasing) domination of larger urban areas,
- increasing disparities within and between regions across a wide range of social and economic indicators.

### **5.3 Influencing Factors**

The following factors are determined as prominent influences that currently impact or will, in future, impact on development of the region:

- **Road Infrastructure:** An effective primary road network exists in the study area. The secondary road network provided effective access to the above primary road network.
- **Strategic location:** The study area is situated strategically in close proximity to the Gauteng and North West Provinces.
- **Tourism Potential:** The study area has a significant weekend related tourism potential that could, in future, contribute to the GGP of the district and should be further exploited.
- **Agricultural Sector:** The agricultural sector of certain areas in the district is extremely prominent and contributes largely to the GGP of the Fezile Dabi District, which emphasise the agricultural significance of this district. The latter results to industrial development that is agricultural orientated.

- **AIDS:** The impact of AIDS on economic growth patterns is still largely an unknown entity. An increase in mortality will, however, place a large burden on health services and the cost thereof that will influence future economic growth. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate in South Africa is approximately 10%. The total number of people living with HIV was estimated at approximately 5,26 million in 2013. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 15,9% of the population is HIV positive<sup>29</sup>.
- **Competition:** The impact of international trade and competition in agricultural products might result that the agricultural sector is internationally less competitive. The latter implies a negative effect on economic growth leading to a possible loss in employment.
- **Pollution:** Impact of pollution on the Vaal River through high-density development.
- **Influx:** Influx of residents from neighbouring metropolitan areas (Gauteng and Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging) is deemed a critical influencing factor. The continuous influx of migrant workers, using the towns of Sasolburg, Parys and Deneysville (Parys and Heilbron to a lesser extent) as satellite or “sleep towns” is a burden on the delivery of housing in the Fezile Dabi District. Migration therefore is an important demographic process in shaping the age structure and distribution of the provincial population.

---

<sup>29</sup> Statistical Release, P0302, Mid-year Population Estimates, 2013

## 5.4 Ngwathe Rural SDF

### A : CORE

#### **Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site**

Some 2-billion years ago a meteorite 10 kilometers in diameter hit the earth about 100 km southwest of Johannesburg, creating an enormous impact crater. This area, near the town of Vredefort in the Free State, is known as the Vredefort Dome. The meteorite, larger than Table Mountain, caused a thousand-megaton blast of energy. The impact would have vaporised about 70 cubic kilometres of rock - and may have increased the earth's oxygen levels to a degree that made the development of multicellular life possible. The world has about 130 crater structures of possible impact origin. The Vredefort Dome is among the top three, and is the oldest and largest clearly visible meteorite impact site in the world. Vredefort's original impact scar measures 380 km across and consists of three concentric circles of uplifted rock. They were created by the rebound of rock below the impact site when the asteroid hit. Most of these structures have eroded away and are no longer clearly visible. The inner circle, measuring 180 km, is still visible and can be seen in the beautiful range of hills near Parys and Vredefort. An interpretation centre was recently established on the outskirts of Vredefort on route to Parys.

As the Vredefort Dome is a significant topographical feature of international significance it was proclaimed as a World Heritage Site (see Annexure 1). The VDWHS and associated buffer areas are located close to Parys. Due to the demarcated municipal boundaries (between Ngwathe and the Moqhaka Municipality) only 3 properties of the Dome and its associated buffers (located on the Free State side), are located in the Ngwathe Municipality – most of the properties are located in the Moqhaka Municipality and a significant portion in the North West Province

The Ngwathe SDF does not attempt to also prepare a SDF for the VDWHS, as it is deemed a unique planning exercise to be endeavoured by several specialists. Although several efforts to prepare

appropriate development guidelines for the VDWHS, were endeavoured in the past, all were unsuccessful and not approved by roleplaying authorities. It is foreseen that a regional SDF will, in due course, be attempted. This SDF, however, identified the following development goal for the VDWHS, aligned with the recently prepared VDWHS EMF:

*To promote the optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Ngwathe region, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.*

The SDF highlighted the fact the practicality of the VDWHS buffer areas need to be investigated, especially in the immediate vicinity of Parys and Vredefort, as they impede on the natural hinterland of the involved urban areas. The tar road between Vredefort and Parys should preferably serve as buffer boundary and land to the east thereof released for urban development of Parys and Vredefort.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>The Parys District comprises an unique nature and environmental assets such as the Vredefort Dome, landscapes associated with the dome, the Vaal River, its tributaries and riparian also including several in stream islands (in the proximity of Parys).</p> <p>The Parys islands system (Bok, Steyn and Woody Islands) is unique, environmentally sensitive and subject to sporadic flooding.</p> <p>The VDWHS and associated buffer areas are located close to Parys. Due to the demarcated municipal boundaries (between Ngwathe and the Moqhaka Municipality) only 3 properties of the Dome and its associated buffers (located on the Free State side), are located in the</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the VDWHS and Vaal River areas is proposed, but without compromising the outstanding universal value thereof and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</li> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Vaal River), as well as their tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ The practicality of the VDWHS buffer areas need to be investigated; especially in the immediate vicinity of Parys and Vredefort, as they impede on the natural hinterland of the involved urban areas. The tar road between Vredefort and Parys should preferably serve</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>Ngwathe Municipality – most of the properties are located in the Moqhaka Municipality.</p> <p>The Heilbron Conservancy, established during 1987, is located in the urban area and includes the Eland Spruit, tributaries thereto and the Uniefees Dam. The latter is deemed a significant surface water feature</p> <p>Sections of the Francolin Creek Conservancy (Between Heilbron and Frankfort) and Ghoya Africa Conservancy (in close proximity of Heilbron) are situated in the region. A future conservancy is presently being considered adjacent the Renoster River to finally link up with the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve</p> <p>The Koppies Dam Nature Reserve, although not part of the urban area, is located just outside Koppies and is the primary water source to the surrounding agricultural scheme. The Koppies agricultural scheme, including the Renoster River and Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams, are the most prominent natural resources and must be protected to minimise pollution thereto .</p>	<p>as buffer boundary and land to the east thereof released for urban development of Parys and Vredefort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Uniefees Dam) as well as its tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Eland Spruit and its tributaries and other wetland areas are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ The current initiative by private landowners to establish conservancies, especially adjacent prominent rivers in the area, should be supported.</li> <li>▪ Future extensions and enlargement of the Francolin Creek and Ghoya Africa Conservancy should be supported.</li> <li>▪ A future conservancy adjacent the Renoster River should be promoted in the future.</li> <li>▪ Tourism related development in these conservancies and adjacent to roads in the conservancies should be given preference</li> <li>▪ Optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Koppies Dam area, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value thereof and</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>The VDWHS Interpretation Centre, is located in the urban area of Vredefort. The road adjacent thereto is considered as one of the primary ports of entry to the VDWHS. A substantially large pan, covering 6 km<sup>2</sup>, believed to be the centre of the dome (referred to as the “Inland Sea”) is located 12 km southeast of Vredefort on the R723 (gravel road to N1). It is entirely located on privately owned, farm land.</p> <p>Areas directly adjacent Edenville, have been identified as extremely environmental sensitive. A red data species, <i>Sun Gazer Lizard</i>, is present on the sites. The Rooikraal Spruit flows through the urban area.</p>	<p>unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams), as well as their tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Renoster River and Leeuw Spruit and their tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Lesotho Spruit and its tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ An area directly adjacent Edenville to the south and an area adjacent the access to Edenville to the north, has been identified as extremely environmental sensitive due to the presence of <i>Sun Gazer Lizards</i> and must be protected.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Rooikraal Spruit and its tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.

### **B : BUFFER**

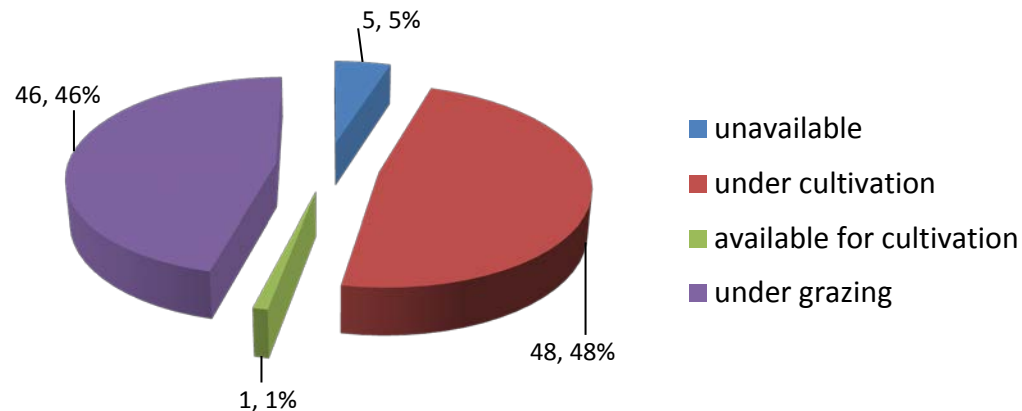
- The practicality of the VDWHS buffer areas needs to be investigated; especially in the immediate vicinity of Parys and Vredefort, as they impede on the natural hinterland of the involved urban areas. The tar road between Vredefort and Parys should preferably serve as buffer boundary and land to the east thereof released for urban development of Parys and Vredefort.
- The following rivers and their tributaries are significant natural resources and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.
  - Parys Region: The Vaal River and Oudewerf Spruit
  - Heilbron Region: Eland Spruit, Uniefees Dam being a significant surface water features
  - Koppies Region: Renoster River and Leeuw Spruit and significant surface water features (Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams) and their tributaries are a significant natural resource and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.
  - Water provision to the Koppies agricultural scheme
  - Vredefort Region: Lesotho Spruit
  - Edenville Region: Rooikraal Spruit
- The Council will, however, support high cost low density estates or resort developments in the rural areas, subject to the appropriate guidelines. In the Parys area the following will be considered:
  - to the east of Parys and further east, between the Vaal River and the Sasolburg Road, only should the developments adhere to the Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines
  - To the west of Parys, only should the developments adhere to development guidelines applicable to the VDWHS and the VDWHS EMF.
  - The fact that Parys does not comprise of land to provide in exceedingly sought after high cost residential properties, further motivates residential extensions further east and west.

### **C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS**



The region accommodates predominantly agricultural related activities. Only a restricted percentage of the region is unavailable for agriculture purposes (5%). A fairly significant portion of the region (48%) is currently under cultivation, which is attributed to the average rainfall in the area and the general availability of water for irrigation purposes.

**Figure 7**  
**Average Application of Agricultural Land : Fezile Dabi Region**



- The only formally developed irrigation scheme exists adjacent Koppies
- Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, and Irrigation Schemes etc.)
- The Free State Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (during 2009) in “*A Study to Investigate Opportunities for Value Add Agriculture in the Free State Province*”, identified the following significant agriculture practises for the Northern Free State Region, the most agricultural active region in the province:
  - Soya Beans (dairy replacement production/products)

- Sunflower (biofuel, oil and secondary products i.e. margarine, mayonnaise etc. such as the currents refinery at Villiers)
- Cattle Farming (primary production in the north-eastern Free State, feedlots and diversify products)
- Game Farming (venison and biltong products, secondary tourism)
- Limited opportunities for poultry abattoirs(area currently comprises several abattoirs and market deemed saturated)
- Niche Sector : honey production
- Current restrictions on the alteration of natural veldt into cultivated fields should be adhered to
- Subdivisions to riparian properties must ensure a minimum waterfront of 100 m for subdivisions and the remainder
- Subdivisions of agricultural land will be considered for formal development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments*<sup>30</sup> according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
Virtually, the larger part of the region that is suitable for cultivation is being utilised (48%) and only 1% could still be developed for that purpose. Stock farming (46%) is mainly extensive, focussing on grazing and dairy farming. It can generally be determined that the region is developed to its optimum with regard to agriculture and future development	<p>Only 1% of the study area is not optimally utilised for cultivation or grazing that provides future potential for agricultural purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, etc).</li> </ul>

<sup>30</sup> LEISURE RESIDENTIAL DWELLINGS – means dwelling houses developed under sectional title or share block scheme mostly in (but not limited to) peri-urban and rural settings of environmental significance, nature conservation area or with vistas on or with access to settings of environmental significance, with or without access to leisure, recreational and sports facilities and features such as golf-courses, hiking trails, river fronts and the like.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
of this sector is thus not foreseen.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Small-scale farming is relatively latent and potential exists to provide in agricultural smallholdings for certain urban areas. Existing smallholdings, serviced by the irrigation scheme at Koppies, should be investigated to determine how it can be utilised more effectively and productively and to possibly re-establish small scale farmers on economically viable smallholdings.</li> </ul>

Land for the purposes of commonage was obtained for all the urban areas involved. Gradual urban encroachment occurred, in some areas, on commonage land (illustrated below). The phenomenon is due to the commonage land, in most instances, being located on the immediate hinterland of particular urban area. As a consequence, additional land has to be timely obtained. The table below further indicates the urban areas where land needs to be acquired for anticipated urban extension.

<b><u>Urban Area</u></b>	<b><u>Land to be Acquired</u></b>
Parys Area	<p>Continual extension in a north-easterly direction will necessitate purchasing of additional commonage to the east of Tumahole and Schonkenville. It is proposed to acquire:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Subdivisions 3 &amp; 4 of the farm Boschkop 220</li> <li>- The remainder of the farm Kliprug 344</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 of the farm Wildehondekop 396</li> <li>- Subdivision 9 of the Farm Pistorius Rust 288</li> </ul>
Heilbron Area	<p>Long term urban extension of Phiritona will necessitate the purchasing of additional land, namely the farms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Weltevreden 257</li> <li>- Mayville 960</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 Modderfontein 122</li> </ul>

<b><u>Urban Area</u></b>	<b><u>Land to be Acquired</u></b>
Vredefort Area	Should future urban extensions on the commonage farms, Subdivisions 8 and 9 of the farm Vredefort 148 be considered, it will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (175 & 147 Ha respectively). Specific farms have not been identified.
Koppies Area	The following commonage is urgently required as a consequence of urban extension on commonage land: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Rem and Sub 1 of the farm Lionriver 154</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 of the farm Goedverblyf 208</li> <li>- Plots 1017, 1018 &amp; 1019</li> </ul>
Edenville Area	Future urban extensions on the commonage farm, Subdivision 1 of the farm Stilledal 53, will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (approximately 280 Ha).

#### **D : URBAN RELATED**

The rural area comprises 2332 farms (excluding the subdivisions of agricultural land adjacent the Vaal River). The current tendency is for most rural families to rather reside in the urban areas with only the labourer's residing on the farms during the week. A substantial migration occurred the past few years from the rural to the urban areas. Current housing needs and the provision of housing in the urban areas are illustrated below. The continuous expansion and growth of urban areas imply that additional land will have to be acquired for most of the urban area. A summary of the short term land requirement is provided above.

**Table 11**  
**Summary of Housing Needs in Ngwathe per Urban Area**  
(Source Municipality, 2014)

<b><u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u></b>	<b><u>ERF REQUIREMENTS</u></b> <i>(Determined by Council)</i>
Parys	2 376	667	3 043	None
Tumahole	10 263	1 863	12 238	None
Schonkenville	733	-	733	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>13 372</b>	<b>2 530</b>	<b>16 014</b>	<b>None</b>
Heilbron	806	25	831	None
Phiritona	6 091	2381	8 472	None
Sandersville	367	-	367	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>7 264</b>	<b>2 406</b>	<b>9 670</b>	<b>None</b>
Koppies	338	116	454	None
Kwakwatsi	3 019	2153	5 172	1000
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>3 357</b>	<b>2 269</b>	<b>5 626</b>	<b>1 000</b>
Vredefort	480	25	505	None
Mokwallo	4 400	806	5164	None
Vredeshoop	96	-	96	None
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>4 976</b>	<b>831</b>	<b>5 765</b>	<b>None</b>
Edenville	250	60	310	None
Ngwathe	2223	491	2 714	500 erven in 2014/15
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>2 473</b>	<b>551</b>	<b>3 024</b>	<b>500</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>31442</b>	<b>8 587</b>	<b>40099</b>	<b>1500</b>

### Resorts and Tourism

## **Resorts and Tourism**

The area is not considered as a primary tourist destination, although it is increasingly becoming a favourite weekend destination. The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years. Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010. The industry needs to grow to levels as experienced in the province which has a contribution of 5,9% of GDP. Tourism in the district has been growing steadily at 3,4% per annum. As could be expected, the Ngwathe area has the highest levels of tourism at 9,7% of GDP, while the Metsimaholo area has only a 1,7% contribution to GDP. There is a potential for growth in the tourism sector and needs to be exploited, especially in terms of the domestic market. (LED Report, 2013).

Apart from the pristine natural landscapes, especially related to the VDWHS, The Free State Province played a significant role in the Anglo Boer War, resulting in a number of historically important tourist attractions. The Koppies area, for example, is becoming well known for various battlefields as tourist attractions.

- The R82 Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands, including the Rooiwal Battlefield, has been officially established.
- Improvements and upgrading of the battlefields were recently endeavoured.
- Other sites of significant value are the Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district).
- As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area), is considered as a significant tourist attraction.
- The area is not considered as a primary tourist destination, although it is increasingly becoming a favourite weekend destination. The hunting and guesthouse industries displayed an exceedingly rapid growth the past few years. Tourism only contributes 3,1% to the GDP of the district in 2010.

### **Parys Area:**

Parys, due to its favourable location to Gauteng, is a popular weekend tourist destination rendering the urban area ideal for enhanced tourism development. The town additionally houses several sporting events. The Council will support feasible tourism developments, meeting legal guidelines and standards, to contribute to local economic development. Significant tourism facilities include:

- VDWHS with associated guest houses, venues, game farms and resorts
- The Mimosa Gardens and Rotary Resort
- Vaal de Grace, Island 13 and Parys Golf & Country Estates

## **Resorts and Tourism**

- Afri-dome equestrian centre and associated venues
- Two scenic routes were identified that run virtually parallel to the Vaal River in the Koepel area and comprise of extreme beauty, unique topography and landscape features. The routes also provide, in some instances, access to the Vaal River and are identified as the Koepel Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 264, 212, 80 & 713) and the Vaal Eden Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 1052 & 171).

### **Heilbron Area:**

- The Uniefees Dam.
- As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area).
- The Francolin Creek Conservancy and Ghoya Africa Conservancy (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 road).

### **Koppies Area:**

The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms. Other significant tourism resources proposed for enhancement are:

- Koppies Dam Resort and Nature Reserve
- Rooipoort Dam private resort
- The R82 Anglo Boer Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands,
- Rooiwal Battlefield (Koppies District)
- Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district)
- Bentonite mining area

### **Vredefort Area:**

- The Vredefort crater is the largest verified impact crater on Earth, more than 300 km across (when it was formed) and named after the town of Vredefort, situated near its centre. Although the crater itself has long since eroded away, the remaining geological structures at its centre are known as the Vredefort Dome or Vredefort impact structure, since 2005 located in the VDWHS.
- Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.

### **Resorts and Tourism**

- The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.
- There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Vredefort *per se*, although the town is closely related to the VDWHS and

#### **Edenville Area:**

- There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Edenville and its immediate surroundings. A possibility exists to provide a small tourist facility/ view point at an old exploited lime mine.
- Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.
- Specific reference is also made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.

### **Airfields**

#### **Parys:**

The Parys Aerodrome is well developed Future expansion of runways may be costly due to specific terrain aspects. Approach angles and safety zones associated with the Parys Aerodrome, must not be utilised for residential extension; especially high density development, as it may result in withdrawal of the Civil Aviation's license, rendering the airport ineffective and jeopardising proposed value adding development adjacent thereto. Development in association with the airport i.e. a "Fly In" estate and mixed commercial, light industrial and residential uses adjoining the airport, is proposed.

#### **Heilbron:**

Recent urban extensions northwest of the runway (Extension 9 & 10), encroached into the approach angles and safety zones of the airfield. It was ill maintained for several years and infrastructure and facilities demolished. Runway beacons and strip lights have also since been vandalised and/ or removed. The airstrip, that used to be a proper tar runway, was not recently resurfaced and is used by the community as driving school and for recreational driving.

- Safety of the airfield has been compromised due to ill maintenance, high density residential extensions adjoining it, mining and non-aviation related activities in close proximity thereof, rendering it unusable. Proposed developments adjacent thereto should be allowed and the



**Airfields**

remaining areas, planned for urban extension.

- Relocation should be considered to a more appropriate location (northwest of Heilbron) and the runway incorporated as a major collector road to the vast northeastern precincts of Phiritona.

**Koppies:**

Koppies comprises a registered airfield, although not properly maintained. The role of the airfield may be enhanced in view of future coal mining activities, anticipated in the region.

**E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS****Extractive Industries (Mining)**

Regional mining activities are restricted to the following:

- Gravel obtained from several open cast pits for construction or road building purposes
- Bentonite deposits at Koppies
- Granite formations at Parys
- Sand winning along the Vaal River (Parys vicinity)
- Alluvial diamonds are exploited, isolated locations of Vaal River riparian
- Volcanic pipes are mined in the region at Voorspoed (De Beers) and Lace Mines (Private)
- Future exploitation of rich coal deposits in the Koppies vicinity is highly likely

**F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS****Railway Lines and Stations**

The Dover/ Vredefort railway line extends through the Parys urban area. The Parys station is situated on a branch line and further expansion is not envisaged. The railway line limits urban integration and access to the industrial area while it causes the town to develop in a ribbon shape.

- Revitalisation of the Parys station possible, especially considering the “Steel City” initiative.
- Possibilities exist for an industrial railway siding into industrial area.
- The Parys station building is in a derelict

## **Railway Lines and Stations**

Heilbron has no railway connection with surrounding towns at present. The section of the line between Heilbron and Sasolburg, through Wolwehoek station, has been decommissioned and removed. The station is being used for storage.

The main railway line between Sasolburg and Kroonstad – a railway line of national significance between Gauteng and Bloemfontein, stretches through the urban area. The Koppies station is located directly north of the CBD and is functioning at present (both goods & passengers).

The industrial area of Vredefort used to be serviced by means of a siding, also servicing Parys, and linked with the main railway line at the Dover station. The siding is, however, no longer operational.

state and revitalisation thereof, with possible tourism related amenities, could be considered

- Anticipated coal mining in the region substantiates the strategic importance of the line. As coal mining will, in the foreseeable future commence in the region, the railway line and station may gain stature and is deemed of economic importance for the town.
- The industrial area is no longer serviced by means of the former siding
- The station building is leased from Transnet and utilised for business activities.
- Future coal mining, further south, may see revitalisation of the siding, transporting coal.

## **Regional Infrastructure Service Provision**

The ensuing figure illustrates that gradual improvement in service delivery occurred the past 10 years. The specific level of services addressed is, however, a high level of service provision. As RDP standards

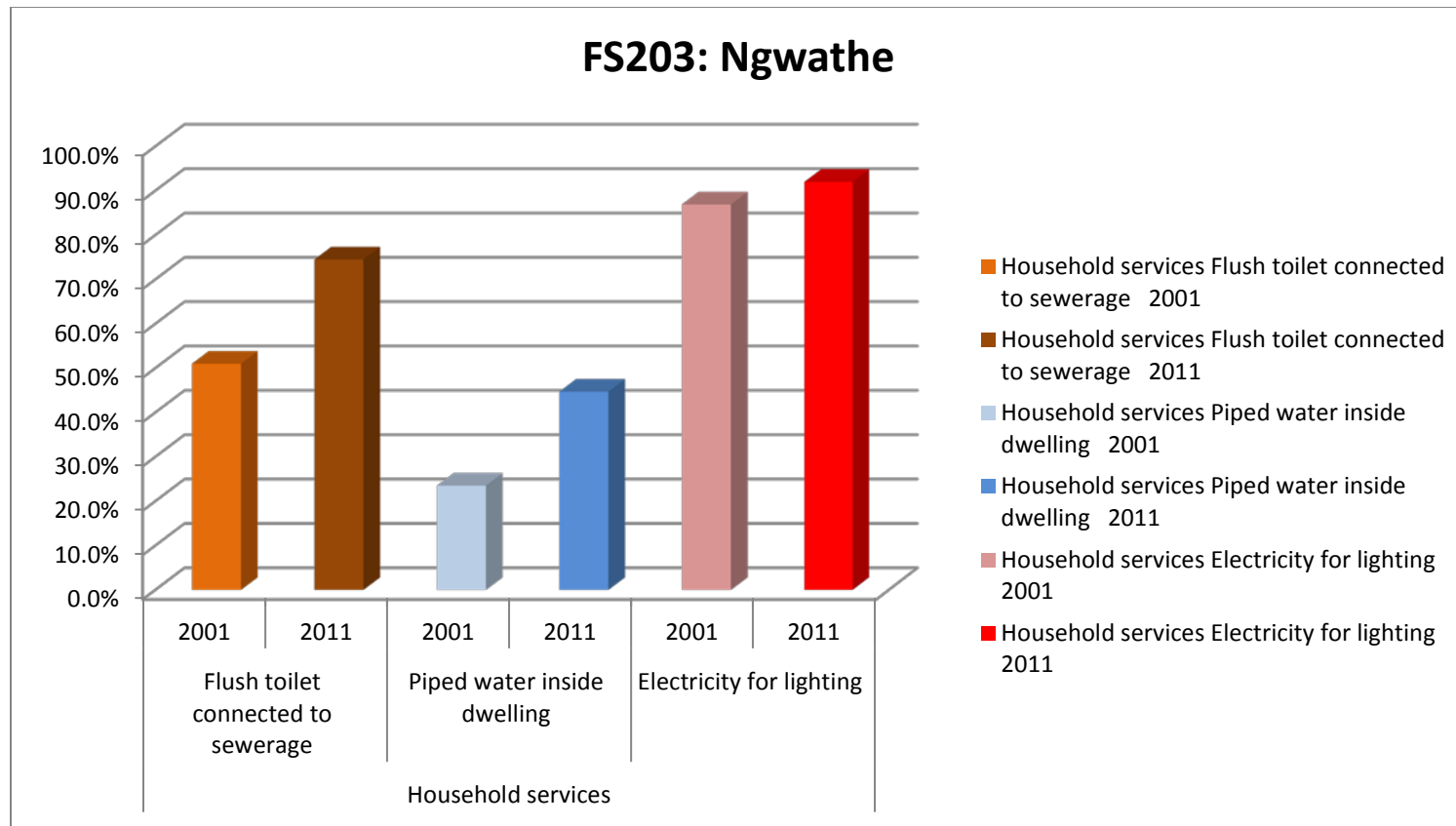
are much lower, it follows that higher levels of services provision have since been obtained, especially in so far as the eradication of backlogs is concerned.

In the Fezile Dabi District Municipality (FDDM) 78.2% of households comprise a flush toilet, connected to sewerage. Moqhaka Local Municipality has higher provision levels (85.6%), followed by Mafube where 77,7% comprise a flush toilet, connected to sewerage. In the Ngwathe and Metsimaholo Municipality, 74.5 % and 74% of households comprise a flush toilet, connected to sewerage, respectively.

In the Fezile Dabi District Municipality (FDDM) 56.7% of households receive piped water inside dwellings. Metsimaholo Local Municipality has higher provision levels (71.7%), followed by the Moqhaka and Ngwathe Local Municipalities where 57,7% and 44.7% of households receive piped water inside dwellings, respectively. In the Mafube Municipality 39.8% of households receive piped water inside dwellings.

In the Fezile Dabi District Municipality (FDDM) 89.8% of households have access to electricity for lighting. Moqhaka Local Municipality has higher provision levels (93.3%), followed by the Ngwathe Municipality where 92% of households have access to electricity for lighting. In the Metsimaholo and Mafube Municipality, 86.4% and 84.4% of households have access to electricity for lighting.

**Figure 8**  
**Ngwathe Regional Perspective : Level of Service Provision**  
(Source: Census 2011)



### Road and Access Requirements

Roads in the rural areas are the jurisdiction of the Provincial Government (Department of Public Works, Roads and Transport) who is also responsible for maintenance and upgrading. It was calculated that 77% (1 298km) of the primary and secondary roads in the region are tarred and the remaining 23% (379km) are gravel. The figures exclude the vast number of tertiary gravel roads serving the farming community in the region. Sections of certain tertiary roads, parallel to the Vaal River and were identified as significant in view of their scenic nature and tourist potential. The major provincial road

network is generally tarred and provides sufficient accessibility within the region. However, the deteriorating condition of particularly tarred roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern. Studying the major road network will indicate that primary arterials, both from a national and provincial perspective, run through the region and thus also play a significant role with regard to development.

#### North West Province and KwaZulu-Natal Corridor:

The strategic location of Parys as an important link between North West and the Free State Provinces, necessitates further long term road planning that is closely related to the need for a link from KwaZulu-Natal to the North West Province. An overall view, therefore, indicate that a need exists for a direct route between North West Province (adjacent to Botswana) and KwaZulu-Natal (harbour opportunity). The construction of a tarred road between the Vaal River and Heilbron will complete one of the missing links in the route. Parys is thus directly concerned and will somehow have to be incorporated in any long-term road strategy. Although various proposals have already been made with regard to the above-mentioned, it is clear that the community of Parys, in so far as it concerns the short to medium term, considers a bypass route in a negative way. It is preferred that the traffic should pass through the town at least for the short term. The significance of the corridor should

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>Roads in the rural areas are the jurisdiction of the Provincial Government (Department of Public Works, Roads and Transport) who is also responsible for maintenance and upgrading.</p> <p>The major provincial road network is generally tarred and provides sufficient accessibility within the region. However, the deteriorating condition of particularly tarred roads, as a</p>	<p>The existing national and primary road networks provide effective access in the study area. A well maintained road network is imperative to stimulate development and to ensure effective access and linkage in the district.</p> <p>The deteriorating condition of tar and gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area. All the gravel secondary roads are specifically in a</p>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern. Studying the major road network will indicate that primary arterials, both from a national and provincial perspective, run through the region and thus also plays a significant role with regard to development.</p> <p>The well-developed character of the region is a direct result of it being serviced by means of a strategically important road network. The most significant of these arterials are identified as the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ N1: National road linking the area with Gauteng and central Free State.</li> <li>▪ R59: Linking Sasolburg, Parys and Viljoenskroon / Orkney to the North West Province.</li> <li>▪ R57: Linking the industrial areas of Heilbron with Sasolburg and subsequently linking the eastern Free State and KwaZulu-Natal via Sasolburg with the Gauteng Province.</li> <li>▪ R34: Serves as link road from Kroonstad via Heilbron and Frankfort with the eastern areas of Gauteng (Heidelberg, Nigel, etc.).</li> </ul>	<p>deteriorating condition and have been identified for upgrading.</p> <p>Roads on which Hazardous Chemicals are currently being transported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59 : Sasolburg → Parys → Potchefstroom</li> <li>▪ R716 : Sasolburg → Deneysville → Villiers → KwaZulu-Natal</li> <li>▪ R57 &amp; 34: Sasolburg → Heilbron → Frankfort → KwaZulu-Natal</li> <li>▪ N1 : Sasolburg → Kroonstad → Bloemfontein</li> <li>▪ N1 &amp; R34 : Sasolburg → Kroonstad → Welkom</li> </ul> <p>The Directorate of Roads Planning prepared a bridge emergency plan which provided emergency and alternative routes, should bridges be washed away during flood periods</p>

**Table 12**  
**Future Urban & Regional Road Requirements : Ngwathe Region**  
 (Source: LMV, 2014)

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access Requirements - Cross Cutting Issues:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The deteriorating condition of gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area</li> <li>▪ Gravel roads, linking urban areas, ensuring administrative linking, is in a dilapidated and unsafe condition, contributing to the difficulties of integrating the Municipality.</li> </ul>		
<b>Parys</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route (now R59) through the CBD</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Parys/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>▪ R723 Upgrading of the gravel road between Parys and Heilbron.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: Access to the Parys/ Sasolburg road ( through the exiting grazing camp system, F1) to accommodate long term developments further northeast, also allowing for the Steel City initiative and linking with a major collector road in Tumahole (A2) providing access to Mandela, Lusaka &amp; Sisulu precincts and long term residential developments, further eastward (R10).</li> <li>▪ A3: Timely construction of a new access route through Oudewerfpark to Tumahole, to ensure appropriated accessibility the northern precincts and town centre of Tumahole.</li> <li>▪ A4: Long-term future access is foreseen on the Parys/ Vredefort road (opposite the existing access to the Vaal De Grace golf estate and Island 13 (R12) wildlife estate; especially should urban extensions occur further westward.</li> <li>▪ A5: Apart from the existing access to the Golf and Country estate, envisaged developments associated with the Parys Aerodrome (R3), will necessitated additional access onto the Parys Sasolburg/ Road.</li> </ul>
<b>Heilbron</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Completion of upgrade of the Heilbron /Frankfort Road.</li> </ul>	<i>Phiritona is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Heilbron urban area. Phiritona is inaccessible</i>

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and newly established Koppies Dam Resort.</li> </ul>	<p>during flooding of the Eland Spruit (A6).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A1, A2 and A3: Access to Heilbron via the three existing access roads is adequate.</li> <li>A4 &amp; A7: Additional collector roads are required to provide access to the previous extensions of Phiritona.</li> <li>A5: New access points proposed on the Oranjeville Road to provides adequate access to the eastern extensions of Phiritona</li> <li>A6: Imperative upgrading of the existing access between Phiritona and the Heilbron CBD via the non-noxious industrial area, in view of new extensions further northeast.</li> <li>A8: Access between Sandersville and Phiritona must be established to connect urban collector roads and increase accessibility to Phiritona.</li> <li>A9: Long term extension north-eastward will necessitate new accesses onto the Moedersdeel Road. The latter will ensure more direct access onto the Heilbron /Frankfort Road.</li> </ul>
<b>Koppies</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R82: Imperative upgrading of the Koppies/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature</li> </ul>	<p><i>Kwakwatsi is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Koppies urban area</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4: An additional access road to the western portions of Kwakwatsi (onto Station Street) will improve accessibility</li> <li>A5: Current proposed urban extension south-eastward will necessitate a new access onto the Koppies Dam Road</li> <li>Upgrading of the present access road from</li> </ul>



<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
	<p>Reserve and newly established Koppies Dam Resort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Upgrading of sections of the present access road from Koppies to the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and Resort.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> </ul>	<p>Koppies to the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and Resort</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A6: Long-term extension further north will likely necessitate a new access onto the Koppies/ Sasolburg Road</li> </ul>
<b>Vredefort</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route through the CBD.</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Vredefort/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: A weak business corridor (Oranje Street east) main access and on route to Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop must be enhanced.</li> <li>▪ A2: A proper well-constructed access from the Greenland's Road to the Thambo and Mapetla precincts is deemed a priority.</li> <li>▪ A3: Planning of the southern precincts of Mokwallo allowed for a direct link (crossing the Dover siding) to the existing main access road to Mokwallo.</li> <li>▪ A4 &amp; A5: Additional and a more direct access from the Vredefort/ Parys road is proposed to the industrial area and the Vredeshoop precinct, ultimately also to the Mokwallo precinct.</li> <li>▪ It will imply a crossing over the Lesotho Spruit but will further provide a more direct access to Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and cemetery.</li> <li>▪ A6: Long term extension further north will necessitate a new access onto the Vredefort/</li> </ul>

<u>Region</u>	<u>Road Requirements</u>	<u>Access Requirements</u>
		Viljoenskroon Road.
<b>Edenville</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Apart from the main road between Heilbron and Kroonstad, dividing the precinct of Ngwathe and Edenville, there are no major road requirements.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> <li>▪ A1, A2: There are two access roads to Edenville from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road. One access road is across the Ngwathe access road and the other access across the Heuning Spruit Road. The above-mentioned secondary roads to Steynsrus and Petrus Steyn, directly link to Edenville.</li> <li>▪ A3: Only one access road exists to Ngwathe from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road.</li> <li>▪ A4: An additional access to Ngwathe will improve accessibility from the major road network, specifically with the residential extension to the south of Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ A5: Existing informal accesses from the Heuning Spruit Road is proposed to be formalised, also allowing direct access to the proposed new cemetery.</li> <li>▪ A6: Long- term extension further north will likely necessitate a new access onto the Edenville/ Heilbron Road.</li> </ul>	

## 6.1 Spatial Planning Tools

In preparing the ensuing urban SDFs, the following Spatial Planning Tools were, amongst other, applied.

### ▪ **Walking distance**

A convenient walking distance to public transport is often interpreted as maximum walking time of 5-10 minutes, and a maximum walking distance of 400-500 metres. There will be exceptions to these principles, particularly in deep rural areas, but these principles become applicable as soon as densities increase and where there is a need for efficient urban settlements and services.

### ▪ **Integration**

The implementation of the walking distance principle to promote greater access to opportunities for all people will require functional integration. Neighbourhood development should integrate a range of activities and therefore may be better described by its building and design typology. These issues are also resembled in reality where settlements are characterized by segregation of land uses and low-density development that cannot support public transport, or small businesses. To address these issues and achieve better access and integration, appropriate densification will have to be promoted in settlements.

### **SPATIAL PLANNING TOOLS**

- Walking distance
- Integration
- Densification and infill development
- Nodes
- Corridors
- Linkages
- Containment & Delineation
- Protection
- Lost Urban Space and Brownfield Regeneration
- Growth areas
- Commonage & Agricultural Land

### **STANDARD SPATIAL PLANNING CATEGORIES**

- A : Core Conservation Areas
- B : Natural Buffer Areas
- C : Agricultural Areas
- D : Urban Related Areas
- E : Industrial Areas

- **Densification and infill development**  
Densification is the increased use of space both horizontally and vertically within existing areas and new developments, accompanied by an increased number of units and/ or population threshold. Development of open stands within existing settlements in order to optimise the use of infrastructure, increase urban densities and promote integration (DRDLR, SDF Guidelines, 2008).
- **Nodes**  
Nodes are areas where a higher intensity of land uses and activities are supported and promoted. Typically any given municipal area would accommodate a hierarchy of nodes that indicate the relative intensity of development anticipated for the various nodes, their varying sizes, and their dominant nature - (DRDLR, SDF Guidelines, 2008).
- **Corridors**  
A corridor features a combination of transport services and supporting infrastructure and denser mixed land use development integrated with the transport system, which includes land uses such as retail, residential, service industries, commercial, activities, social, agricultural related uses and recreation. A corridor not only forms the link between nodes, but also relies on nodes along its length to generate movement and activity - (DRDLR, SDF Guidelines, 2008).
- **Linkages**  
Linkages are routes that link urban areas, conservation areas, provinces and countries. These normally do not promote linear development along the route, but support nodal development. Linkages may be on national or international level and are mainly National and Provincial roads.
- **Containment and Delineation**  
To control and regulate development.
- **Lost Urban Space and Brownfield Regeneration**

The problem of "lost space," or the inadequate use of space, afflicts most urban centers today<sup>31</sup> and forward planning should attempt to regain shattered cities to establish a public realm that is made of firmly shaped, coherently linked, humanly meaningful urban spaces.

Brownfields<sup>32</sup> are defined as sites that:

- Have been affected by former uses of the site or surrounding land uses
- Are derelict or underutilised
- Are mainly in fully or partly developed urban areas
- Require intervention to bring them back to beneficial use and
- May have real perceived contamination problems

- **Protection**

To conserve, in order to prevent extinction and to ensure the forth growing for future generation.

- **Growth areas**

Growth areas are the combination of the increase in size, number, and extension of a certain area.

- **Commonage Land**

Commonage Land is land which is, or is to be, occupied or used by members of a community subject to the rules or custom of that community (Communal Land Rights Act 11 of 2004).

- **Urban Edge**

A demarcated line and interrelated policy that serves to manage, direct and limit urban expansion and lateral growth of settlements. An urban edge will promote densification and integration and protect valuable natural, agricultural and scenic resources.

- **Standard Planning Categories**

---

<sup>31</sup> Roger Trancik, 1986

<sup>32</sup> Tim Dxiom *et al*, 2007

In preparing the Ngwathe Municipal SDF the Standard Planning Categories, with their subcategories, will be implemented. Implementation will be in alignment with the Free State PSDF by *“facilitating the land use classification of the entire land surface of the province in a standard format in accordance with defined Spatial Planning Categories, which are based on a broad spectrum of environmental parameters and a system of value and ethics”*, including:

- A – Core Conservation Areas
- B – Natural Buffer Areas
- C – Agricultural Areas
- D – Urban Related Areas
- E – Industrial Areas
- F – Surface Infrastructure

## 6.2 Cross Cutting Issues applicable to all Urban Areas and the Ngwathe Rural Areas:

### A : CORE

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF <sup>33</sup>
- All development application have to be assessed in terms if the management zones proposed in the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF
- No activities in environmentally sensitive areas.
- Riparian areas are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which often experience substantial development pressures. They should be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them.
- No mining activities without relevant mining permits/ rights.

### Management Zones proposed in the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site EMF and the Ngwathe EMF

To aid strategic environmental management in the area, environmental management zones were delineated by grouping areas which share the same characteristics together. Areas were grouped based on their current use (e.g. Agriculture, Residential, Natural, etc.) and their sensitivity to different types of activities. The five (5) management zones are:

- Zone A : Sensitive terrestrial features in a natural or near-natural state;
- Zone B : Sensitive aquatic features in a natural or near-natural state;
- Zone C : Areas modified by agriculture;
- Zone D : Areas modified by residential development and tourism; and
- Zone E : Natural or near natural areas that are less sensitive than Zones A and B

<sup>33</sup> **VDWHS Environmental Management Framework & Ngwathe Environmental Management Framework 2013** (Source: Department of Environmental Affairs). The VDWHS is located within the North-West and Free State Provinces and falls under the jurisdiction of the Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District and Tlokwe Local Municipalities in the North-West Province and the Fezile Dabi District and Mqheke and Ngwathe Local Municipalities in the Free State Province.

## **B : BUFFER**

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs.
- The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive, further development in these areas will be subject to EIA procedures.
- No mining activities without relevant mining permits/ rights.

## **C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS**

### **Urban Agriculture :**

*To promote the long-term sustainable use and conservation of natural agricultural resources and the protection and preservation of agricultural land and its productive use in order to ensure long-term national and household food safety and security and profitable agricultural economic output <sup>34</sup>.*

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs.
- Identification of suitable lost open spaces for urban agriculture practises.
- In partnership with the private sector and DAFF, conduct community awareness to promote food production on residential properties.
- Minimum area of smallholdings is 4 ha .
- Subdivision of smallholding in more than 3 portions (remainder and two subdivisions), will necessitate Township Establishment.
- Smallholdings not to be considered for any other form of permanent housing than single residential purposes.
- The subdivision or development of riparian farmland, where permissible, must allow a minimum 100 m waterfront to the remaining portion thereof

### **Commonage :**

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs.
- Refer to applicable “Urban Agriculture” cross cutting issues.
- No development on high potential agriculture land.



- Proper planning and management of all commonage land is required.
- Optimal utilisation, apart from current grazing and low intensity farming activities must be investigated.
- Implementation of well-planned and managed food gardens.

**Region Agriculture :**

- No development must be allowed on high potential agriculture land.
- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs.
- Development on agriculture may not commence prior to approval from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.
- Permission must be obtained from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries regarding land, formally to be excluded from agricultural land, as pertained in the approved SDF.
- The only formally developed irrigation scheme exists adjacent Koppies.
- Future agricultural growth can primarily be created by value-added supplementary agricultural practices (Hydroponics, Tunnels, and Irrigation Schemes etc.).
- The Free State Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (during 2009) in “*A Study to Investigate Opportunities for Value Add Agriculture in the Free State Province*”, identified the following significant agriculture practises for the Northern Free State Region, the most agricultural active region in the province.:
  - Soya Beans (dairy replacement production/ products).
  - Sunflower (biofuel, oil and secondary products i.e. margarine, mayonnaise etc. such as the current refinery at Villiers).
  - Cattle Farming (primary production in the north-eastern Free State, feedlots and diversify products).
  - Game Farming (venison and biltong products, secondary tourism).
  - Limited opportunities for poultry abattoirs (area currently comprises several abattoirs and market deemed saturated).
  - Niche Sector : honey production.
- Current restrictions on the alteration of natural veldt into cultivated fields should be adhered to.
- Subdivisions to riparian properties must ensure a minimum waterfront of 100 m for subdivisions and the remainder.
- Subdivisions of agricultural land will be considered for formal development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments* according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate’s *Development of Rural*

*and Peri-Urban Areas Guidelines.*

- The principle is, however, accepted to allow for subdivision of agricultural land, where the land is situated directly adjacent the formal town lands of urban areas with the exclusive aim to be utilised as smallholdings or small farms.

## **D : URBAN RELATED**

### **Land Use Management Scheme :**

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all urban related land uses.
- Absence of approved TPSs in Koppies, Vredefort, Vredeshoop and Edenville complicates land use management and “open title deeds” are not conducive for orderly urban development.
- Land use management in Tumahole, Phiritona, Kwakwatsi, Mokwallo and Ngwathe are still conducted in terms of Act 4 of 1984 <sup>35</sup> ( ‘Annexure F’ of the Township and Land Use Regulation, No 1897 / 1986).
- The Local Municipality embarked on the process of preparing an Integrated Land Use Management System (LUMS). The Draft Ngwathe Town Planning Scheme has since been prepared, lack in funding resulted in the document not being completed.

### **Residential :**

- Funding for completion of the draft Land Use Management Scheme as high priority project.
- Densification relating to subdivision is restricted to the minimum erf sizes determined in the respective TPS.

<sup>35</sup> Act 4 of 1984 was since repealed in 1994, regulation dealing with *Township and Land use* were not revoked.

- Except for areas proposed for infill planning and where a TPS is implemented, the minimum erf size is 900 m<sup>2</sup> and in high density precincts, 350 m<sup>2</sup>
- Densification by means of
  - Townhouses (unless otherwise indicated i.e. existing scheme only on erven larger than 1 850 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 30 du/ha).
  - Maisonettes (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 50 du/ha).
  - Flats (only on erven larger than 2 000 m<sup>2</sup> at a ratio of 80 du/ha).

**Central Business District (CBD) and Development Nodes :**

- Due to absence of TPS, CBDs of Koppies, Vredefort and Edenville are not delineated - LUMS to indicate delineation.
- Development in these CBDs is dispersed with open erven available for future business development/densification.

**Urban Open Spaces :**

- Refer to Core and Buffer areas, also depicting urban open spaces.
- Urban greening is almost non-existent in high density residential precincts and attempts in this regard, in liaison with the DAFF, must be deemed a priority.
- Continuous subdivision of functional and formal open spaces to accommodate social amenities and business land uses must be prohibited.
- In supporting the above, several smaller functional open spaces in all urban areas, are not developed and are proposed for leveling and gravel surfacing to establish informal sports areas.
- Provision of open spaces should be maintained according to CSIR Guidelines for the Provision of Social Facilities in South African Settlements – Medium Towns (First Edition: August 2012).
- Total provision of functional and formal open spaces has to be at least 0.5 ha/1 000 people, 40% of this allocation is for strategic (regional) and district facilities and 60% for community, urban and neighbourhoods parks, play lots, etc.
- Lost urban space, not being core, buffer or functional open spaces, could be utilised for infill planning purposes.
- Current and old excavated areas do not represent functional open spaces, unless properly rehabilitated and landscaped.
- Sand and gravel exploitation in urban areas is not conducive and detract from the amenity of convenience of residential precincts; these activities should be ceased and open cast pits, rehabilitated.
- Old exploited areas should similarly be rehabilitated.

- Maintenance of existing infrastructure is deemed a priority.

**Resorts and Tourism :**

*To promote the optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Ngwathe region, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.<sup>36</sup>*

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs.
- Similar to the Fezile Dabi District, the region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the VDWHS, game ranches and guesthouses on farms.
- Support Leisure Residential and Resort developments<sup>37</sup>.

**Cemeteries :**

- Cleaning, fencing and maintenance of existing and old cemeteries must be done.
- Greening of cemetery premises is long overdue and must be attempted.
- Highly dependent on cultural practices (for instance the acceptability of cremation, choice of separate sites and the like) and other factors such as the incidence of HIV/Aids.
- The site selection of suitable land for burials is critical and requires prior geological and groundwater level (if applicable) studies.

## E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS

**Industries :**

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all urban industrial related land uses.
- Provision of new/ relocation of existing industrial areas must focus on road accessibility and proximity to the predominant labour forces.

<sup>36</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<sup>37</sup> Development of holiday resorts (non-permanent residing) and *Leisure Residential Developments* according to Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines. No development will, however, be allowed on high potential agriculture land.

**Extractive Industries (Mining) :**

*To promote new mining activities that does not threaten the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS <sup>38</sup>.*

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all surface extractive activities.
- Current and old excavated areas do not represent functional open spaces, unless properly rehabilitated and landscaped
- Old exploited areas located in the urban areas, must be rehabilitated.
- Sand and gravel exploitation in urban areas are not conducive for a quality living environment and detract from the amenity of convenience of residential precincts; these activities should be ceased and open cast pits, rehabilitated.
- Unless otherwise indicated, gravel are mostly exploited in urban areas for municipal road building, construction and maintenance purposes only.

**F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS****Landfill Sites:**

*Agricultural activities seem to be the biggest potential contributor to water pollution in the study area, followed by faulty sewage treatment facilities and unsafe landfill sites. These activities, and their related activities, should be managed to ensure minimum pollution risk<sup>39</sup>.*

- Implementation of the Strategic Objectives and Management Zones of the EMFs for all surface extractive activities.
- Daily maintenance and operations at landfill sites are not in all instances addressed, resulting in intolerable pollution of the surrounding areas.
- Illegal dumping, especially at exploited rehabilitated excavation pits, located within residential areas is a prominent health risk and cleaning and rehabilitation of the areas to address illegal dumping must be addressed with resolve.
- Clear and caution signage at all illegal dumping areas, prohibiting utilisation as landfill sites/ dumping.

---

<sup>38</sup> Ngwathe EMF

<sup>39</sup> Ngwathe EMF

- Residential developed is not allowed within 500 m of a landfill site.

**Waste Water Treatment Plant**

- Residential developed is not allowed within 500 m of a waste water treatment plant.

**Regional Road Network and Future Access Requirements :**

- The deteriorating condition of gravel roads, as a result of irregular maintenance, is a tangible concern in the area.
- Gravel roads, linking urban areas, ensuring administrative linking, is in a dilapidated and unsafe condition, contributing to the difficulties of integrating the Municipality.

**A : CORE**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>The Parys District comprises an unique nature and environmental assets such as the Vredefort Dome, landscapes associated with the dome, the Vaal River, its tributaries and riparian, also including several in stream islands (in the proximity of Parys).</p> <p>The Parys islands system (Bok, Steyn and Woody Islands) is unique, environmentally sensitive and subject to sporadic flooding.</p> <p>The VDWHS and associated buffer areas are located close to Parys. Due to the demarcated municipal boundaries (between Ngwathe and the Moqhaka Municipality) only 3 properties of the Dome and its associated buffers (located on the Free State side), are located in the Ngwathe Municipality – most of the properties are located in the Moqhaka Municipality.</p> <p>The Oudewerf Spruit and several other smaller tributaries drain through the urban area into the Vaal River. A significant vlei area (S10) formed adjacent one of the tributaries (west of Parys).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Dome and Vaal River areas is proposed, but without compromising the outstanding universal value thereof and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</li> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Vaal River), as well as their tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Vaal River, Oudewerf Spruit and their tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and regarded as important ecological features, experiencing substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ They must be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them.</li> <li>▪ Urban conservation areas, namely the in stream islands of the Vaal River, are deemed of significance for protection and must be retained.</li> <li>▪ S10: Development further westward must take cognisance of an existing vlei area as it is deemed a sensitive ecological feature.</li> </ul>

## B : BUFFER

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>The Vaal River forms the northern boundary of the urban area that also serves as the boundary between the Free State and Gauteng and North West Province.</p> <p>Most significantly, however, is the proposed 5 km buffer zone associated with the core properties of the VDWHS (refer to Annexure 1), occupying farmland between Parys and Vredefort, amongst other, also the potential hinterland of Parys and Vredefort.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The practicality of the VDWHS buffer areas need to be investigated; especially in the immediate vicinity of Parys and Vredefort, as they impede on the natural hinterland of the involved urban areas. The tar road between Vredefort and Parys should preferably serve as buffer boundary and land to the east thereof released for urban development of Parys and Vredefort.</li> <li>▪ The Vaal River and Oudewerf Spruit and associated tributaries are significant natural resources and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.</li> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive.</li> </ul>

## C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<b>Urban Agriculture</b>	
<p>A substantial grazing camp system (F1) is located east of the urban area although usage thereof as the future hinterland is becoming immanent.</p> <p>The Pistorius Rust Smallholdings (R7),</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ F1: the existing grazing camp system will be impeded on to accommodate new developments and access roads</li> <li>▪ Access to the Parys/ Sasolburg road ( through the exiting grazing camp system, (A1) to accommodate long term developments</li> </ul>



STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>comprising of 12 plots are located west of Parys and are included in the TPS boundaries. Although small farm portions (of similar dimensions as the neighbouring smallholdings) are situated opposite the Parys/Vredefort Road, they are not included in the TPS boundaries. The properties are directly associated with the <i>Island 13</i> wildlife estate on “Groot Eiland”.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 20px;"> <p>Areas annulled for urban development by approach angles and safety zones, associated with the Parys Aerodrome, could purposefully be utilised for urban agriculture or a regional cemetery.</p> </div>	<p>further northeast, also allowing for the Steel City initiative and linking with a major collector road in Tumahole (A2) providing access to Mandela, Lusaka &amp; Sisulu precincts and long term residential developments, further eastward (R10).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Although residential extensions (R1, R2 and R3) are proposed to promote a more compact urban form, the existing grazing camps (F1) will be utilised for urban extension in the foreseeable future.</li> <li>▪ R7: Development of the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings, in all probability, will be associated with the adjoining developments; that of high cost low density residential development and upmarket tourism development.</li> <li>▪ R8: Although small farm portions (of similar dimensions as the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings) are situated opposite the Parys/ Vredefort Road, these properties now included in the urban fringe. Must be included in the TPS for urban extension as described above, to occur in this area.</li> </ul>
<b>Commonage</b>	
<p>Several farms (F2 &amp; F3), acquired during 1998, to the southeast of Tumahole that are currently utilised as grazing for stock farmers, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The farm Wildehondekop 396</li> <li>- The remainder of the farm Boschkop 220</li> <li>- The remainder of the farm Klipbos 445</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ F2 &amp; F3: Continual extension in a north-easterly direction will necessitate purchasing of additional commonage to the east of Tumahole. It is proposed to acquire: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Subdivisions 3 &amp; 4 of the farm Boschkop 220</li> <li>- The remainder of the farm Kliprug 344</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	- Subdivision 1 of the farm Wildehondekop 396

## D : URBAN RELATED

### Urban Fringe

The former boundary of the town lands of Parys determined the fringe to the northwest, northeast and the Vaal River to the north. Long-term development of the urban area is proposed to the southeast, once eastern extensions (R5) are planned and occupied. The urban fringe includes the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings and the remaining subdivisions of the farm Pistorius Rust 288 (R6) for residential extension, taking cognisance of:

- The alignment of a proposed new access road (from the Vredefort/ Parys Road) to the existing industrial area and Tumahole
- R12: The existing *Vaal De Grace* golf estate and *Island 13* wildlife estate developments on “Groot Eiland”. The island, although also included within the buffer area to the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site, resides under the North West Province
- Unless alleviation could be obtained, the buffer area of the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site will delineate the boundary for western extensions
- R13: Council will support high cost low density estates or resort developments in the rural areas:
  - i. to the east of Parys and further east, between the Vaal River and the Sasolburg Road, only should the developments adhere to the Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate’s *Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas* Guidelines
  - ii. To the west of Parys, only should the developments adhere to development guidelines applicable to the VDWHS and the VDWHS EMF.
  - iii. The fact that Parys does not comprise of land to provide in exceedingly sought after high cost residential properties, further motivates residential extensions further east and west.

**Table 13**

**Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area**

(Source: Local Municipality, 2014)

<b><u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u></b>	<b><u>ERF REQUIREMEN TS (Determined by Council)</u></b>
Parys	2 376	667	3 043	None
Tumahole	10 263 <sup>40</sup>	1000 <sup>41</sup> 863 <sup>42</sup>	12 126	None
Schonkenville	733		733	None
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>13 372</b>	<b>2 530</b>	<b>15 902</b>	

**Figure 9**

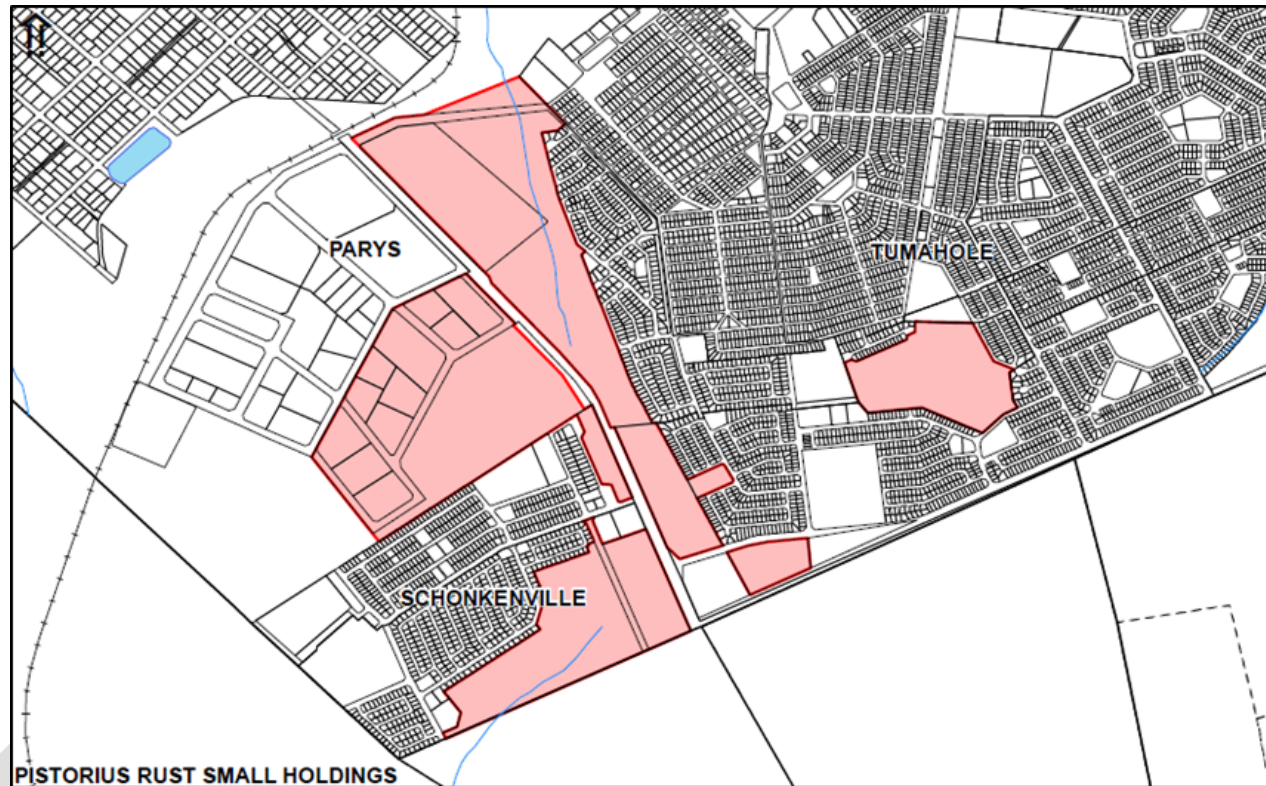
---

<sup>40</sup> Includes recent Extension 6 of 764 erven.

<sup>41</sup> Extension 7, in process of Township Establishment, unoccupied & not serviced.

<sup>42</sup> 2014 : Erven in process of Township Establishment (975 residential erven) for both Tumahole & Schonkenville including the Abazimeli informal settlement.

## Infill Planning between Parys, Schonkenville and Tumahole



STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p><b>Residential</b></p> <p><b>Parys &amp; Schonkenville:</b>  The existing <i>Vaal De Grace</i> golf estate and <i>Island 13</i> (R12) wildlife estate developments on “Groot Eiland, although also included within the buffer area to the Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site, resides under the North West Province. Bulk services are, however, being provided by the Ngwathe Municipality. A similar</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Tumahole comprises 1975 erven in reserve included in the planned Extension 7 and the newly proposed Extensions (infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole and Parys)</li> <li>▪ R1: limited long term infill planning opportunity will become available</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>high cost residential estate, The Parys Golf and Country estate was since established on Golf Island (R14). Council recently approved a mixed housing development, including a hotel in the Golf and Country estate (R4).</p> <p>Growth in the low density residential areas of Parys and high density residential area of Schonkenville is slow and adequate provision has been made for future extension. There are 667 unoccupied erven in Parys. All erven in Schonkenville are occupied.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>DRDLR <i>Development Potential in Urban Settlements Report</i> (2014) assessment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Urban Growth Potential – Medium</li> <li>– Economic Potential – Medium</li> </ul> </div> <p>The need was expressed by the Council to address the integration of the Tumahole, Schonkenville and Parys precincts by optimally utilising open and lost urban space for the purposes of infill planning <sup>43</sup> (refer to Figure 6 below)</p> <p>The former industrial area, separating the precincts, was partially re-planned during 2005 to provide for a</p>	<p>once the realigned Dover Road is constructed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R2: Possible high income, holiday related housing associated with the adjoining Parys Golf and Country estate.</li> <li>▪ R3: Is proposed for a mixed use area, associated with the airport (“Fly In” estate), comprising limited commercial/ service industrial opportunities and high cost mixed density residential opportunities.</li> <li>▪ An ideal inclusionary housing opportunity was identified in Parys, on the remaining portions of the former Commando Offices (erven 322 -329).</li> <li>▪ R5: Medium-term residential extension of the high density Tumahole precinct will gradually occur northwards up to the proposed industrials zone. The latter will ensure that “Driver 9” of the NDP, to facilitate sustainable human settlement, is simultaneously</li> </ul>

<sup>43</sup> Infill planning is the insertion of additional housing or other land uses into an already approved erf or neighbourhood. It could be accomplished by, amongst other, additional units built on the same site, by dividing existing erven or buildings or by changing existing land use to allow for higher densities. The problem of "lost space," or the inadequate use of space, afflicts most urban centres today (Roger Trancik, 1986), of which Parys, Tumahole and Schonkenville are an example. The Council therefore specifically determined that all available land and vacant lots should be planned to ensure that the precincts of Paris, and Tumahole Schonkenville be integrated.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>substantial regional cemetery. The remaining erven are now proposed for infill planning; especially since development of the industrial area is deemed exceedingly dormant. Relocation of the future industrial zone is also foreseen closer to the Parys Sasolburg Road</p> <p><b>Tumahole:</b> Growth in Tumahole is sporadic and a shortage of erven is constantly experienced. However, the newly planned Extension 7 and the newly proposed extensions (infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole and Parys), will result in a reserve of 1975 erven.</p> <p>Recent planning applications finally included the formalisation of Abazimeli informal settlement (R11)</p>	<p>achieved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R6 &amp; R10: Land needs to be timely obtained for long-term future extension of the high density residential areas (Schonkenville and Tumahole) respectively on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Subdivision 9 of the Farm Pistorius Rust 288</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>And portions of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The remainders of the farms Boschkop 220, Klipbos 445 and Wildehondekop 396</li> <li>▪ C7: This extension must provide a new regional cemetery.</li> <li>▪ R7: Development of the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings, in all probability, will be associated with the adjoining developments; that of high cost low density residential development and upmarket tourism development.</li> <li>▪ R8: Although small farm portions (of similar dimensions as the Pistorius Rust Smallholdings) are situated opposite the Parys/ Vredefort Road, these properties, apart from being included in the urban fringe, must be included in TPS. Urban extension as described above must occur in this area.</li> <li>▪ Duplicating of sheer commercial activities, associated with the CBD</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	<p>should not be considered here.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R9: Development of Oudewerfspark to the east and west of the proposed new access road (A3), currently unoccupied, is proposed for the medium to long-term development of low density residential development. Most of the erven are at present, not provided with services.</li> <li>▪ R13: Council will support high cost low density estates or resort developments in the rural areas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- to the east of Parys and further east, between the Vaal River and the Sasolburg Road, only should the developments adhere to the Free State Province, Department of Local Government and Housing, Spatial Planning Directorate's Development of Rural and Peri-Urban Areas Guidelines</li> <li>- To the west of Parys, only should the developments adhere to development guidelines applicable to the VDWHS and the VDWHS EMF.</li> <li>- The fact that Parys does not comprise of land to provide in exceedingly sought after high cost residential properties, further motivates residential extensions</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	further east and west.
<b>Central Business District (CBD) and Development Nodes</b>	
<p><b>Parys:</b> Parys has a well-defined CBD that develops increasingly along the main road (Loop, Water and Breë Streets) through Parys. Expansion possibilities exist for the present CBD to the north-east towards Water Street.</p> <p><b>Tumahole:</b> Business development in Tumahole is limited to various distributed business nodes. A network of neighbourhood shops further exists in Tumahole.</p> <p><b>Schonkenville:</b> Provision was made for a business node at the town entrance, although not developed to date.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The current linear ribbon like phenomenon of the CBD <sup>44</sup> must be prohibited and care must be taken to prevent continuous development thereof adjacent to the main road through town.</li> <li>▪ B1, B2 &amp; B3: Delineation is proposed as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- not further west than Van Coller Street,</li> <li>- parallel to Loop Street (mid-block)</li> <li>- not further east than Paulsen Street,</li> <li>- parallel to Breë Street,</li> <li>- not further west than Grens Street,</li> <li>- include area between existing school, sport fields,</li> <li>- Philip Street, and the light industrial area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▪ R3: Is proposed for a mixed use area, associated with the airport ("Fly In" estate), with limited commercial and service industrial opportunities</li> </ul>

<sup>44</sup> CBD with a long, narrow shape, opposite of a main arterial or main road. The practice became seen as inefficient use of resources and a precursor to CBD intrusion of residential precincts. The resulting towns are often difficult to service efficiently. Often, the first problems noticed by residents is traffic congestion as people compete to move along the narrow urban corridor while ever more people join the ribbon further along the corridor. CBD delineation is a solution to encourage growth towards a more compact urban form.



STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	<p>and also high cost mixed density residential opportunities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <u>Business nodes:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Aerodrome node (R3)</li> <li>- Δ1: At the Schonkenville entrance</li> <li>- Δ2: South of Father Barlink Street in Tumahole.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>	
<p>T1: LDT rank in Parys is situated to the west of the Parys CBD (corner of Kruis and Kort Streets) functioning at optimum capacity, with limited/ no expansion possibilities.</p> <p>T3: One formal short distance taxi terminal is situated adjacent to the existing business node (Δ2) at the upper end of Father Barlink Street. The site is optimally used and operates beyond capacity.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T2: Provision of an accessible LDT rank in Parys (Dwars Street possibility).</li> <li>▪ In Schonkenville and Tumahole, the provision of sheltered embarking points along main collector roads and at prominent community facilities.</li> <li>▪ Additional formal nodes are proposed in Tumahole at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- T4: Provision of a second node in the Tambo extension.</li> <li>- T5: Formalisation of informal taxi rank in Tumahole.</li> <li>- Recent residential extensions of Tumahole, further eastward, will in all probability necessitate similar and perhaps more prominent commuter nodes, the same will apply to a substantial extension (infill planning) in Schonkenville.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Urban Open Spaces</b>	
Parys comprises sufficient and well-developed sport and recreation facilities and various developed parks.	Wetland areas crossing through Tumahole restrict movement of

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>Two well established golf estates (R12 &amp; R14) offer unique opportunities for related sport and recreation activities. Maintenance of the existing community sport facility is, however, not done.</p> <p>Other significant open spaces include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- S5: Rotary Holiday Resort (private).</li> <li>- S6: Mimosa Gardens.</li> <li>- S11: The former show grounds have been developed into an agricultural related conferences venue (Afri-dome) including accommodation, horse-riding activities and the like.</li> </ul>	<p>pedestrians and vehicles, bridging thereof is considered urgent to ensure functioning of the precinct.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S1: The existing community sport terrain in Parys is rapidly deteriorating and upgrading thereof is considered to be of extreme importance.</li> <li>▪ S2: Schonkenville sport terrain is in the process of being upgraded</li> <li>▪ S3: Fezile Dabi sport terrain was recently established in Tumahole.</li> <li>▪ S4: Continuation of landfill in Abazimeli and landscaping to establish a neighbourhood sport facility/ recreation area.</li> <li>▪ S7: Must promptly be land filled and developed as a sport facility or informal recreation area. The current undesirable condition thereof as an illegal dumping area, is not conducive for the existing and envisaged residential areas adjacent thereto.</li> <li>▪ S8: Area proposed for urgent upgrading and development to provide at least basic sport facilities in Tumahole.</li> <li>▪ S9: A need for a future regional sport facility housing larger events was identified. S9 is considered as ideal location for a sport complex for utilisation by the larger community.</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S10: Development further westward must take cognisance of an existing vlei area as it is deemed a sensitive ecological feature.</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Vaal River and riparian, tourism related recreational development and conservation purposes must meet the requirements of the VDWHS and Ngwathe Municipality's EMFs.</li> <li>- Undeveloped in stream islands of the Vaal River are deemed of significance for protection and must be retained as such</li> <li>- S10: Development further westward must take cognisance of an existing vlei area as it is deemed a sensitive ecological feature.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Resorts and Tourism</b>	
<p>Parys, due to its favourable location to Gauteng, is a popular weekend tourist destination rendering the urban area ideal for enhanced tourism development. The town additionally houses several sporting events. The Council will support feasible tourism developments, meeting legal guidelines and standards, to contribute to local economic development. Significant tourism facilities include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ VDWHS with associated guest houses, venues, game farms and resorts</li> <li>▪ the Mimosa Gardens and Rotary Resort</li> <li>▪ Vaal de Grace, Island 13 and Parys Golf &amp; Country Estates</li> <li>▪ Afri-dome equestrian centre and associated venues</li> <li>▪ Two scenic routes were identified that run virtually parallel to the Vaal River in the Koepel area and comprise of extreme beauty, unique topography and landscape features. The routes also provide, in some instances, access to the Vaal River and are identified as the Koepel Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 264, 212, 80 &amp; 713) and the Vaal Eden Scenic Route (Sections of Roads S 1052 &amp; 171).</li> </ul>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<b>Cemeteries</b>	
<p>Several existing cemeteries in the urban area are fully occupied (C3: Parys and C2: Schonkenville). A number of smaller cemeteries, varying in age, are present in the Tumahole precinct, also fully occupied (C4 &amp; C5).</p> <p>A substantial and undeveloped portion of the Parys industrial area was since re-planned and utilised as a regional cemetery, also now including the former cemeteries of Schonkenville and Tumahole (C1).</p> <p>C6: Although the area was never formally proposed as a cemetery, it was utilised for this purpose. Burying since ceased due to it being water lodged.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C8: Areas annulled for urban development by approach angles and safety zones, associated with the Parys Aerodrome, could purposefully be utilised, should geotechnical conditions permit so, for a regional cemetery</li> <li>▪ R10/C7 &amp; R6: Long term development to the south and east of the Schonkenville and Tumahole precincts will necessitate purchasing of additional land, these extension, must provide a new regional cemetery.</li> </ul>
<b>Airfields</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Parys Aerodrome is well developed Future expansion of runways may be costly due to specific terrain aspects.</li> <li>▪ R3: Is proposed for a mixed use area, associated with the airport (“Fly In” estate), comprising limited commercial/ service industrial opportunities and high cost mixed density residential opportunities.</li> <li>▪ Approach angles and safety zones associated with the Parys Aerodrome, must not be utilised for residential extension; especially high density development, as it may result in withdrawal of the Civil Aviation’s license, rendering the airport ineffective and jeopardising proposed value adding development adjacent thereto (R3).</li> <li>▪ Areas now annulled for urban development could purposefully be utilised for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Urban agriculture or,</li> <li>- C8: should geotechnical conditions permit so, a regional cemetery</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

### Other Social Amenities

**Table 14**  
**Provision of Social Amenities in Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area**

<u>Town</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>Schools</u>	<u>Primary</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Clinic</u>	<u>Community</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private</u> <u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Worship</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate</u> <u>Office</u> <u>s</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
	<b>P</b>	<b>S</b>								
Parys		1	4	1	1 <sup>46</sup>		1	1	1	1
Tumahole	10	4				1	1	Buffelskopp		
Schonkenville	2					3				

**E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS**

<sup>45</sup> Concern has been expressed by the SDF Task Team that the provision of clinics in Tumahole and Koppies is not adequate.

<sup>46</sup> License granted, construction to commence

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Industries</b>	
<p>I1 &amp; I2: The industrial area (I1) is situated adjacent to the Koppies Road to the south of Parys and the non-noxious industrial area (I2) between the CBD of Parys and the Tumahole town area. The industrial zones are isolated, inaccessible and mostly surrounded by residential precincts. Growth in these areas is latent.</p> <p>Council's approach to address the integration of the Tumahole, Schonkenville and Parys precincts resulted in most of the erven in the industrial area (I1) being re-planned for a large regional cemetery (C1) and residential infill development.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I3: Limited extension, infill and densification in the existing light industrial area are feasible.</li> <li>▪ I4: Relocation of the inaccessible noxious industrial area, adjacent to the Parys/ Sasolburg Road to accommodate the foreseen "Steel City" initiative and Aerodrome nodal development. The Council since endorsed the development of this substantially large steel oriented industrial area and other utility industries.</li> <li>▪ Relocation of the industrial zone will ensure that "Driver 9" of the NDP, to facilitate sustainable human settlement, is simultaneously achieved.</li> </ul>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining)</b>	
<p>G1: An area adjacent the Dover Road, although to a limited extent, is simultaneously exploited for gravel for road and construction purposes and for a land fill site.</p> <p>G2: Exploitable sand deposits are also found adjacent the Vaal River. The area was exhaustively mined in the past and rehabilitation thereof is deemed urgent.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Limited expansion of an existing open cast pit is possible.</li> <li>▪ D: An exploited portion is utilised for the purpose of a landfill site, that has to be considered, should future development commence in the area (R5).</li> <li>▪ Rehabilitation of the landfill site should gradually be attempted; especially in view of its close proximity to the Tumahole precinct.</li> <li>▪ G3: Gravel should preferably be obtained from a substantial existing open cast pit adjacent the Parys/ Sasolburg Road.</li> <li>▪ G4 &amp; G5: Exploited open cast pits in</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>Tumahole and between Tumahole and Schonkenville needs to be rehabilitated as a matter of urgency; especially in view of its close proximity to residential precincts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S4: Continuation of landfill in Abazimeli area and landscaping to establish sport facility.</li> </ul>

### **F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Railway Lines and Stations</b>	
<p>The Dover/ Vredefort railway line extends through the town area. The Parys station is situated on a branch line and further expansion is not envisaged. The railway line limits urban integration and access to the industrial area while it causes the town to develop in a ribbon shape.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I4: Revitalisation of the Parys station possible, especially considering the “Steel City” initiative.</li> <li>▪ Possibilities exist for an industrial railway siding into industrial area.</li> <li>▪ The Parys station building is in a derelict state and revitalisation thereof, with possible tourism related amenities, could be considered.</li> <li>▪ The national tendency of Propnet to reduce Transnet properties not in use, is also present in Parys.</li> <li>▪ I3: Due to the location of these properties, it should preferably be utilised for industrial and or commercial related developments.</li> </ul>
<b>Landfill Sites</b>	
<p>D: The main and licensed landfill site is situated approximately 2 km outside Parys next to the Dover Road and is of adequate capacity to serve the larger community for next 2 years. However, relocation</p>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
must be considered in the immediate future to an appropriate location, subject to geotechnical investigations, not impeding on adjoining residential areas.	

## Bulk Services

**Table 15**  
**Bulk Services Provision Parys/ Tumahole/ Schonkenville Urban Area**  
 (Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

Water Provision		Sanitation		Electricity
Current number of erven	1	Current number of erven	1	The town does not have any spare capacity and the future developments will not be provided with electricity until the bulk supply has been increased.
	4		4	
	3		3	
	0		0	
	6		6	
Total reservoir capacity (Mℓ)	2	Sewerage works capacity (Mℓ/day)	1	
	7.		3	
	2			
	6			
Reservoir capacity required (Mℓ)	1	Sewerage works capacity required (Mℓ/day)	7	
	9.		.	
	6		9	
Waterworks capacity (Mℓ/day)	1	Adequate capacity.		
	5			
Waterworks capacity required (Mℓ/day) Adequate purification capacity.	9.			
	8			
Water required (kℓ/day)	4			
	9			



	5		
Raw water supply: pumped from Vaal River.			

### Infrastructure Services

All urban areas were analysed in an attempt to identify shortfalls in infrastructure service delivery and to identify areas for eradication of backlogs or upgrading of services, the following categories were thus applied:

- Areas in the process of establishment (green)
- Areas established, unoccupied, without services (red)
- Areas established, occupied, with rudimentary services (brown for sewer, that will imply buckets and blue for water, that would imply standpipes)
- Areas established, unoccupied, with services, partly or completely (yellow)

<b>Water Network</b>		
<b>Tumahole</b>	<b>Schonkenville</b>	<b>Parys</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 7: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ New Extension (infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole &amp; Abazimeli): Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Portion of Extension 15 Oudewerfpark: established, water network installed, not occupied.</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 7: Process of</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Portion of Extension 15</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>establishment</li> <li>▪ New Extension (Infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole &amp; Abazimeli): Process of establishment</li> </ul>		Oudewerfpark: established, sewer network partially installed, not occupied.
<b>Electricity Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 7: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ New Extension (Infill planning between Schonkenville, Tumahole &amp; Abazimeli): Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Portion of Extension 15 Oudewerfpark: established, electricity network partially installed, not occupied</li> </ul>
<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access</b>		
<b><u>Road Requirements</u></b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route (now R59) through the CBD</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Parys/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>▪ R723 Upgrading of the gravel road between Parys and Heilbron.</li> </ul>		
<b><u>Access Requirements</u></b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: Access to the Parys/ Sasolburg road ( through the exiting grazing camp system, F1) to accommodate long term developments further northeast, also allowing for the Steel City initiative and linking with a major collector road in Tumahole (A2) providing access to Mandela, Lusaka &amp; Sisulu precincts and long term residential developments, further eastward (R10).</li> <li>▪ A3: Timely construction of a new access route through Oudewerfpark to Tumahole, to ensure appropriated accessibility the northern precincts and town centre of Tumahole.</li> <li>▪ A4: Long-term future access is foreseen on the Parys/ Vredefort road (opposite the existing access to the <i>Vaal De Grace</i> golf estate and <i>Island 13</i> (R12) wildlife estate; especially should urban extensions occur further westward.</li> <li>▪ A5: Apart from the existing access to the Golf and Country estate, envisaged developments</li> </ul>		

associated with the Parys Aerodrome (R3), will necessitated additional access onto the Parys Sasolburg/ Road.

## HEILBRON/ PHIRITONA/ SANDERSVILLE URBAN AREA .8

### A : CORE

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>The Heilbron Conservancy, established during 1987, is located in the urban area and includes the Eland Spruit, tributaries thereto and the Uniefees Dam. The latter is deemed a significant surface water feature</p> <p>The Eland Spruit and significant wetland areas, drains through the urban area, most significantly is a wetland system west of the urban area (adjacent the Sasolburg Road – S6)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S6: A “green belt” is proposed adjacent (west) the Sasolburg Road to accommodate a wetland area and a number of smaller dams, draining towards the Eland Spruit.</li> <li>▪ S7: Optimal development and utilisation of the unique potential of the Heilbron Conservancy, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value thereof and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</li> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Uniefees Dam) as well as its tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Eland Spruit and its tributaries and other wetland areas are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ They must be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	them.

### B : BUFFER

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
The Eland Spruit, its tributaries and wetland areas of significance, drains from east to west through urban area and a significant surface water future (Unieffes Dam) and an urban conservation area (Heilbron Conservancy), are located in the urban area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Eland Spruit, Unieffes Dam and their tributaries are significant natural resources and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.</li> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive.</li> <li>▪ S6 &amp; S7: Several large wetland areas, some contained in open space erven, must be protected from pollution as they drain directly to the Eland Spruit that confluences with the Renoster River further east (close to the Koppies Dam inflow).</li> </ul>

### C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Urban Agriculture</b>	
A small smallholding scheme is located south of the Heilbron precinct, known as the Highlands Smallholdings comprising an area of 2.3 km <sup>2</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Highlands smallholdings are proposed for low density high cost development/ agriculture related developments.</li> <li>▪ Inclusion of all the current small farms and smallholdings adjacent to the urban area in the proposed integrated TPS to ensure appropriate land use management in these</li> </ul>

	areas.
<b>Commonage</b>	
<p>F1: Five farms to the north of Phiritona, substantially large area, measuring approximately 9 km<sup>2</sup> in extent were bought during 1998 for the purposes of future small scale farming development and commonage .The following farms were acquired</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- (Nil Desperandum 1166,</li> <li>- Sterkstroom 1700,</li> <li>- Groenland 1706,</li> <li>- Sub 1 of Kromhoek 1701 and the</li> <li>- Remainder Kromhoek 1701)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Urban extension is not proposed further north.</li> <li>▪ Land is exclusively utilised for grazing and neither significant small scale farming nor any value adding agricultural activities since established.</li> <li>▪ The sheer area of the commonage land necessitates a proper investigation to determine whether the land could be utilised more efficiently and to the benefit of the larger community.</li> </ul>
<b>D : URBAN RELATED</b>	

**Table 16**  
**Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area**  
(Source: Local Municipality, 2013)

<u><b>RESIDENTIAL AREA</b></u>	<u><b>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</b></u>	<u><b>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</b></u>	<u><b>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</b></u>	<u><b>ERF REQUIREMENTS</b></u> <i>(Determined by Council)</i>
Heilbron	806	25	831	None

Phiritona	6 091 <sup>47</sup>	1 037 <sup>48</sup> 1 344 <sup>49</sup>	8 472	None
Sandersville	367	-	367	None
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>7 264</b>	<b>2 406</b>	<b>9 670</b>	

Urban or suburban sprawl is a multi-faceted concept centred on the expansion of auto-oriented, low-density development. A sprawling urban settlement is normally associated with extended travel distances, higher cost of services, impact on the rural environment and segregation between residential and commercial uses, to list a few. A clearly recognised urban fringe, densification and infill development could, amongst others, be pursued as a tool to achieve spatial integration and induce the optimal utilisation of land. It is of strategic importance to address distorted settlement patterns of the past, to improve urban integration and redress spatial imbalances of the past to curb continuous urban sprawl, further north of the existing Heilbron settlement.

#### **Urban Fringe:**

Identifying the long term urban fringe is challenging as all developable land in the Phiritona precinct have since been engulfed by urban development with exceedingly limited remaining infill options. The Heilbron and Sandersville precincts similarly do not comprise developable land for urban extension. The long term spatial pattern opted for will result in the future urban form of the settlement, emphasising the correct identification thereof.

The long term residential zone is proposed west of the existing Phiritona precinct, on the commonage farm Nil Desperandum 1166 and a small portion of the remaining townlands in view of the following contemplations:

- The proposal is a direct response to “Driver 9” of the NDP, to facilitate sustainable human settlement, amongst other by “improving the balance between the location of jobs and people” and “the location of jobs in or close to dense, urban townships”.
- Direct access is obtainable onto the Sasolburg Road (A7) ensuring an accessible precinct, with direct

<sup>47</sup> Includes recent extension of 588 erven.

<sup>48</sup> In process, previous Township establishment, unoccupied & not serviced.

<sup>49</sup> 2013 : Erven in process of Township Establishment (1344 residential erven).

**Urban Fringe:**

access to Sasolburg and Gauteng were most of the Phiritona residents are, at present, employed. The current Phiritona precinct is exceedingly inaccessible.

- F1: Development further north will imply expansion of a significant watershed - the watershed, surrounding the northern precincts of Phiritona, poses a natural barrier and extension beyond it should only be considered as a last resort for urban expansion due to numerous wetlands, tributaries to the Eland Spruit and undesirable urban sprawl on commonage land.
- Extension further north will not be conducive to an ideal (circular) urban form as it constitutes urban sprawl further from the CBD and job opportunities.
- R3: Western extension could immediately commence on the farm Nil Desperandum 1166 and a small portion of the remaining townlands although the timely purchasing of additional land is inevitable i.e. Weltevreden 257, Mayville 960 and ultimately Subdivision 1 of the farm Modderfontein 122. Future relocation of the WWTP, further downstream will ensure more developable land within the current urban boundaries.
- Extension east and south will encroach on land deemed of high agricultural potential and also not being conducive to an ideal (circular) urban form, also constituting urban sprawl; especially by locating residential precincts gradually further from the CBD and job opportunists.
- I3: The existing industrial area, although well developed, is full and enfolded by residential precincts, inevitably restricting further extension thereof. It is proposed to establish a future accessible (through the current Greenlands Road and the future P53/9 Road) industrial area, east of the existing industrial area (opposite the Sasolburg Road), on the remaining townlands.
- The latter will ensure, should residential expansion occur westward, that “Driver 9” of the NDP, to facilitate sustainable human settlement, is simultaneously achieved.
- F2: The Highlands Smallholdings and small farms are proposed for inclusion within the urban fringe and future Scheme to ensure proper management thereof.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p><b>Residential</b></p> <p><b>Heilbron:</b> The urban area comprises a total of 9 670 residential erven of which Phiritona has 8 472, Heilbron 831 and Sandersville 367 erven.</p> <p><b>Sandersville:</b> Sandersville does neither comprise of any vacant residential erven nor vacant land for urban extension. Effective integration was achieved with the Heilbron and Phiritona precincts.</p> <p><b>Phiritona:</b> Of the 7 128 erven in Phiritona, 2 381 erven are at</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>DRDLR <i>Development Potential in Urban Settlements Report</i> (2014) assessment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Urban Growth Potential - Low</li> <li>- Economic Potential - Low</li> </ul> </div> <p>present unoccupied.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Phiritona comprises 2406 erven in reserve included in the planned Extension 10 and the newly proposed Extension 11.</li> <li>▪ R1: Is proposed for the short term residential extension, northeast of Phiritona. Extension is not proposed further northwards on commonage land.</li> <li>▪ R2: Limited infill opportunities exist, although the area is impacted upon by rocky outcrops, infrastructure lines and undevelopable areas.</li> <li>▪ Planning of the area must go in hand with the formalisation of <i>Mooi Dorpie</i> informal settlement. Relocation of the informal settlement <i>Mooi Dorpie</i>; especially portions located on an old landfill site, is deemed immanent.</li> <li>▪ R3: Long term extension of Phiritona will necessitate the purchasing of additional land namely: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Weltevreden 257</li> <li>- Mayville 960</li> <li>- Subdivision 1 Modderfontein 122</li> </ul> </li> <li>▪ An inclusionary housing site is proposed in the newly planned extension of Phiritona.</li> <li>▪ R4: Extension/development of the high cost residential area (Heilbron) is possible toward the Unifies dam.</li> </ul>



STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Integration was successfully achieved and all possible infill opportunities since developed.</li> </ul>
<b>Central Business District</b>	
<p><b>Heilbron:</b> Heilbron comprises a well-established CBD which developed adjacent to Lang Markt and Church Streets. Limited encroachment occurred of late into the adjacently located residential areas.</p> <p><b>Phiritona &amp; Sandersville:</b> Phiritona and Sandersville do not have a well-defined CBD. Activity nodes, in the form of neighbourhood centres, have been provided at strategic locations along the major and collector roads (Δ3 - Δ5)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B1: Extension of the CBD is proposed further south but not beyond Voortrekker Street, delineating the future CBD.</li> <li>Corridor development is permissible for adjoining properties in Lang Markt Street, but not beyond Voortrekker Street.</li> <li><u>Business nodes:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Δ1: Entrance from Sasolburg Road (Lang Markt Street), adjacent Sandersville.</li> <li>- Δ2: Further down Lang Markt Street towards its intersection with Wentworth Street.</li> <li>- Δ3: Centre of Phiritona (Erf 1873), currently occupied by informal settlements.</li> <li>- Δ4: North of Sandersville (Erven 350 &amp; 351) currently occupied by informal settlements.</li> <li>- Δ5: New Phiritona residential precinct (further east).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>	
<p>The town area accommodates one LDT rank located in Heilbron on the corner of Lang Markt and Wentworth Streets (T1).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision of sheltered embarking points along main collector roads and at prominent community facilities in</li> </ul>

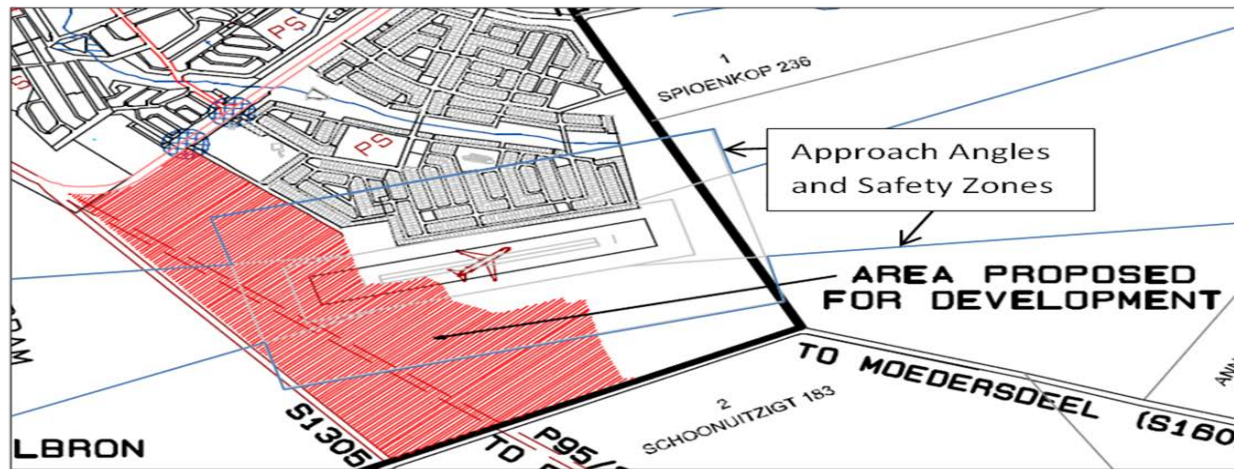
STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>A7: Discouraging embarking and disembarking of taxis occur adjacent the Sasolburg Road (Road P 9/4) and a suitable solution needs to be found in the form of a formal pick up point adjacent to the road</p>	<p>Phiritona, is deemed a necessity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A7: Upgrading of the road is proposed for suitable configuration to allow for embarking and disembarking of passengers.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Urban Open Spaces</b></p>	
<p>S1: Heilbron comprises a well-developed sport terrain. The existing sports ground and golf course.</p> <p>S2/S3: The sport terrains in Sandersville and Phiritona are in the process of being upgraded.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S3: An existing open space, utilised as an informal soccer practice ground, is developed as a neighbourhood sport facility in Phiritona; the area also includes a clinic (erf 1787).</li> <li>▪ S4: An old quarry to the west of Phiritona has partially been rehabilitated and is no longer in use. Final rehabilitation of the site should promptly be completed; especially in view of its proximity to the Sandersville and Phiritona precincts.</li> <li>▪ S5: Decommissioned night soil trenches, northeast of Phiritona is not suitable for future development.</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- S6: A “green belt” is proposed adjacent (west) the Sasolburg Road to accommodate a wetland area and a number of smaller dams.</li> <li>- S 7: A significant open space currently revolves around the Unieffes Dam and the tributaries of the Eland Spruit. The</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>surrounding areas to the dam must be reserved for tourism related recreational development and conservation purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The dam is the most prominent natural resource for water supply to the area and must be protected to minimise water pollution.</li> </ul>
<b>Resorts and Tourism</b>	
<p>Significant tourism facilities were identified as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Uniefees Dam.</li> <li>▪ As a result of the Boer Matabeli War, the Kwantitise Battlefield, also known as the Vegkop Battlefield (Heilbron area).</li> <li>▪ The <i>Francolin Creek Conservancy</i> and <i>Ghoya Africa Conservancy</i> (between Heilbron and Frankfort on the R34 road).</li> </ul>	
<b>Cemeteries</b>	
<p>The existing cemeteries in Phiritona (C1) Heilbron (C2) and Sandersville (C3) are fully occupied.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A need was expressed to establish smaller cemeteries for the residents of Heilbron and Sandersville.</li> <li>▪ C4: A new regional cemetery has been established to the north (on commonage land) of the Phiritona precinct (4). The site is mainly used by the residents of Phiritona. It was deemed feasible following numerous geotechnical investigations in the larger urban area.</li> </ul>
<b>Airfields</b>	
<p>Recent urban extensions northwest of the runway (Extension 9 &amp; 10), encroached into the approach</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Safety of the airfield has been compromised due to ill maintenance,</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>angels and safety zones of the airfield. It was ill maintained for several years and infrastructure and facilities demolished. Runway beacons and strip lights have also since been vandalised and/ or removed. The airstrip, that used to be a proper tar runway, was not recently resurfaced and is used by the community as driving school and for recreational driving.</p>	<p>high density residential extensions adjoining it, mining and non-aviation related activities in close proximity thereof, rendering it unusable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Proposed developments adjacent thereto should be allowed and the remaining areas, planned for urban extension.</li> <li>▪ Relocation should be considered to a more appropriate location (northwest of Heilbron) and the runway incorporated as a major collector road to the vast northeastern precincts of Phiritona.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Heilbron Airfield</b></p> <p>The Heilbron airport is considered a small airport and can only serve one aircraft at a time. It is often a source of aircraft noise and a major cause of noise disturbance to residents living nearby. A small airport is prone to traffic problems because aircraft must use the runway as a taxiway between the loading zones and the hangar, and to taxi into place after landing and before take-off. Most alarming, is the observation that heavy tipper trucks, transporting gravel from a large gravel burrow pit, located within the safety zone of the airfield, to a nearby road building project, also utilise the runway. It is used as a link road to Road S146, via an existing gravel access road to the airfield. It is unfortunate that recent urban extension northwest of the runway (Extension 9 &amp; 10), already encroached into the approach angels and safety zones related to the airfield, impeding critical safety measures and rendering the current facility, unusable. In aviation, encroachment is defined “as any non-aviation action, planned or executed that inhibits, curtails or possesses the potential to impede the performance of aviation activities” (Bilney, 2009). The figure below illustrates the impact of pervious extensions on the compulsory safety zones of the airfield. It stands to reason why the Municipality:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. found that the safety of the airport is compromised due to the existence of high density residential areas, mining activities and non-aviation related activities,</li> <li>ii. agreed to allow development adjacent thereto and considering relocation thereof to a more</li> </ol>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
appropriate and save location.	

**Figure 17**  
**Suggested Approach Angles and Safety Zones Associated with the Heilbron Airfield**



**Other Social Amenities**

**Table 17**  
**Provision of Social Amenities in Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area**

<u>Town</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>Schoo</u> <u>ls</u>	<u>Prima</u> <u>ry</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Clinic</u> <u>Comm</u> <u>unity</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Hospit</u> <u>als</u>	<u>Privat</u> <u>e</u> <u>Hospit</u> <u>Worsh</u> <u>ip</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Statio</u> <u>ns</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Statio</u> <u>Magist</u> <u>rate</u> <u>Office</u> <u>s</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
	<b>P</b>	<b>S</b>					
Heilbron	4	1	4	1	6	1	1
Phiritona	1 0	4			8		
Sandersville	1				2		

**E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS**

STATUS QUO

FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Industries</b>	
<p>I1: Heilbron has a well-developed industrial area, mainly focusing on the Sasolburg Road. The capacity of the existing industrial area is inadequate and provision for future industrial extension will have to be made shortly.</p> <p>I2: A light industrial area is located northeast of the CBD between Heilbron and Phiritona and is almost entirely developed; long term extension of the industrial area is not proposed.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I3: A proper well located and accessible industrial node is urgently required, proposed northwest of Heilbron (adjacent to the Sasolburg Road) on land owned by the Municipality.</li> <li>▪ Continuous development of the industrial related corridor adjacent the main entrance (from the Sasolburg Road) into Heilbron (extension of Lang Markt Street).</li> </ul>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining)</b>	
<p>G1: Gravel is exploited from a substantial open cast pit near Phiritona, in close proximity of the runway. Gravel was recently obtained from the burrow pit for rebuilding of the Heilbron/ Frankfort Road.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Northern expansion of the existing quarry is feasible. Exploited portions of the burrow pit, will in future, be in close proximity of the future residential area and should be rehabilitated as a matter of urgency.</li> <li>▪ S4: An older and large quarry has since partially been rehabilitated, final rehabilitation thereof is deemed immanent. The area could in future purposefully be utilised as a sport facility.</li> </ul>

## **F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS**

<b>Railway Lines and Stations</b>
The town has no railway connection with surrounding towns at present. The section of the line between Heilbron and Sasolburg, through Wolwehoek station, has been decommissioned and removed.

The station is being used for storage.	
<b>Landfill Sites</b>	
D1: The current landfill site located west of urban area (Greenlands Road) is of adequate capacity for medium to long term use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Relocation of the informal settlement <i>Mooi Dorpie</i>; especially portions located on an old landfill site, is deemed immanent.</li> </ul>

## Bulk Services

**Table 18**  
**Bulk Services Provision Heilbron/ Phiritona/ Sandersville Urban Area**  
 (Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

Water Provision		Sanitation		Electricity
Current number of erven	7959	Current number of erven	7959	The Municipality is in the process of upgrading the bulk electricity supply for Heilbron and, on completion, it will be adequate to service future development.
Total reservoir capacity (Mℓ)	10.3	Sewerage works capacity (Mℓ/day)	4,2	
Reservoir capacity required (Mℓ)	10.2	Sewerage works capacity required (Mℓ/day)	4,2	
Waterworks capacity (Mℓ/day)	7.	Sewerage purification capacities will have to be		



	8	increased to allow for new extensions, sewerage pump stations and pipelines will be required to allow for new extensions.	
Waterworks capacity required (Mℓ/day)	5		
Adequate purification capacity.	1		
Water required (kℓ/day)	8		
	4		
	8		
Raw water supply: pumped from Rand Water Purification Works (Phiritona), remaining area from Uniefees Dam.			

### Infrastructure Services

All urban areas were analysed in an attempt to identify shortfalls in infrastructure service delivery and to identify areas for eradication of backlogs or upgrading of services, the following categories were thus applied:

- Areas in the process of establishment (green)
- Areas established, unoccupied, without services (red)
- Areas established, occupied, with rudimentary services (brown for sewer, that will imply buckets and blue for water, that would imply standpipes)
- Areas established, unoccupied, with services, partly or completely (yellow)

Water Network		
Phiritona	Sandersville	Heilbron

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 9: Water network installed individual connections not provide</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 9: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 10: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 11: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>

<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access</b>
<b>Road Requirements</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Completion of upgrade of the Heilbron / Frankfort Road.</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and newly established Koppies Dam Resort.</li> </ul>

## **Regional Road Network and Future Access**

### **Access Requirements**

*Phiritona is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Heilbron urban area. Phiritona is inaccessible during flooding of the Eland Spruit (A6).*

- A1, A2 and A3: Access to Heilbron via the three existing access roads is adequate.

It is significant to mention that save access onto Road P 9/4 could only be provided for a recent extension (2003) of the Phiritona precinct (A7), approximately 2,5 km from the existing Heilbron access (A2).

Due to unsafe sight distances, the specific topography of the terrain, appropriate safety distance and the physical elevation of the road, the Department of Police, Roads and Transport do not consider additional accesses.

The road reserve and building restricting adjacent to Road P9/4 should not be considered for urban development and should be upheld for future road widening purposes and to ensure the safety of the traveling public and residents residing adjacent thereto.

- A4 & A7: Additional collector roads are required to provide access to the previous extensions of Phiritona.
- A5: New access points proposed on the Oranjeville Road to provides adequate access to the eastern extensions of Phiritona
- A6: Imperative upgrading of the existing access between Phiritona and the Heilbron CBD via the non-noxious industrial area, in view of new extensions further northeast.
- A8: Access between Sandersville and Phiritona must be established to connect urban collector roads and increase accessibility to Phiritona.
- A9: Long term extension north-eastward will necessitate new accesses onto the Moedersdeel Road.
- The latter will ensure more direct access onto the Heilbron /Frankfort Road.

**A : CORE**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>The Koppies Dam Nature Reserve, although not part of the urban area, is located just outside Koppies and is the primary water source to the surrounding agricultural scheme.</p> <p>The Koppies agricultural scheme, including the Renoster River and Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams, are the most prominent natural resources and must be protected to minimise pollution thereto .</p> <p>Leeuw Spruit delineates the eastern boundary of the urban area. The Renoster River, canals associated with the agricultural scheme and high potential agricultural land, largely restricts urban development further south.</p> <p>S5: A large initially planned area, north-west of the existing Koppies precinct, was re-planned as an urban conservation area. Services were neither installed nor were any houses built in the area. The area is known as the Koppies Nature Reserve and must be retained</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the Koppies Dam area, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value thereof and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</li> <li>▪ Significant surface water features (Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams), as well as their tributaries must be regarded as sensitive to activities that might further deteriorate their quality.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Renoster River and Leeuw Spruit and their tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ They must be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them.</li> <li>▪ S5 &amp; S6: Urban conservation areas, the Koppies Nature reserve and a wetland south of 6<sup>th</sup> Avenue, are deemed of significance for</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
S6: A similar wetland is located south of 6 <sup>th</sup> Avenue	protection and must be retained.

### **B : BUFFER**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
The Renoster River and Leeuw Spruit traverse to the south and east of the urban area respectively and three significant surface water features are located in the immediate environment of the urban area and two urban conservation areas, are located in the Koppies precinct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Renoster River and Leeuw Spruit and their associated tributaries and significant surface water features (Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams) and their tributaries are a significant natural resource and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.</li> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive.</li> <li>▪ Prevention of pollution of water provision to the Koppies agricultural scheme</li> <li>▪ S3: Several large wetland areas in the newly planned extension all contained in open space erven, must be protected from pollution as they drain directly to the Renoster River in close proximity of the existing water purification works</li> </ul>

### **C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Urban Agriculture</b>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>A substantial smallholding scheme surrounds the urban area , comprising an extent of approximately 120 km<sup>2</sup> and includes 1 386 smallholdings and compiled as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Kopjes Settlement = 83.6 km<sup>2</sup></li> <li>- Weltevrede Settlement = 17.1 km<sup>2</sup></li> <li>- Roodepoort Settlement = 19.2 km<sup>2</sup></li> </ul> <p>The scheme was originally established to alleviate poverty amongst the early residents of the community. Today, present owners hold more than one plot to ensure and economically viable agricultural unit. Water for agricultural purposes is provided by three large dams that were specially build for this purpose (Koppies, Weltevrede and Rooipoort Dams).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ It is proposed to investigate existing smallholdings to determine how it can be utilised more effectively to possibly re-establish small scale farmers on economically viable smallholdings.</li> <li>▪ The Fezile Dabi District municipality is in the process of establishing a nursery project on a portion of the Weltevrede Smallholdings</li> </ul>
<b>Commonage</b>	
<p>F1: Existing commonage adjacent to Kwakwatsi (remainder of the Farm Leeuwspruit 79) is effectively utilised for grazing, but is not adequate and readily accessible to the inhabitants of the Kwakwatsi residential area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Although Plot 1014 - 1016 were acquired southeast of Kwakwatsi, recent urban expansion occurred on the land, impacting on the availability of commonage land. The following commonage is urgently required as a consequence of this extension: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- F2: Rem and Sub 1 of Lionriver 154,</li> <li>- F3: Sub 1 of Goedverblyf 208,</li> <li>- F4: Plots 1017, 1018 &amp; 1019</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## D : URBAN RELATED

### Urban Fringe:

The former area of jurisdiction determines the urban fringe that was recently extended to include newly planned urban extensions south of Kwakwatsi. Depending on the option for urban extension agreed upon, it is foreseen that the fringe will either be extended further south (to include Plots 1017, 1018 & 1019 - F4) or north of Kwakwatsi (to include portions of Sub 1 of Goedverbyl 208, the remainder of the Farm Leeuwspruit 79) and in the longer term, several land parcels of the Weltevrede Small Holdings - F3).

**Table 19**  
**Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area**  
 (Source: Local Municipality, 2013)

<b><u>RESIDENTIAL AREA</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTIAL ERVEN UNOCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>TOTAL RESIDENTIAL ERVEN</u></b>	<b><u>ERF REQUIREMENTS</u> <i>(Determined by Council)</i></b>
Koppies	338	116	454	None
Kwakwatsi	3 019	135 <sup>50</sup> 2 018 <sup>51</sup>	5 172	1000 <sup>52</sup>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>3 357</b>	<b>2 269</b>	<b>5 626</b>	<b>1 000</b>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Residential</b>	

<sup>50</sup> Erven not occupied, proposed for alternative land uses

<sup>51</sup> 2014 : Erven in process of Township Establishment ( 2064 in total, 2018 residential erven)

<sup>52</sup> Current planning of 2018 residential erven will partially address the waiting list, additional erven will have to be provided in the near future to purposefully address the current and continuous backlog.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>DRDLR <i>Development Potential in Urban Settlements Report</i> (2014) assessment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Urban Growth Potential - Low</li> <li>▪ Economic Potential - Low</li> </ul> </div> <p><b>Koppies:</b> Development of the Koppies precinct is extremely latent, the precinct comprises 116 unoccupied erven.</p> <p><b>Kwakwatsi:</b> Sporadic growth is, however, experienced in the Kwakwatsi precinct, now comprising 3 019 erven. The current waiting list will result in all newly planned residential erven (2018) to be occupied with no reserve erven available in the precinct.</p> <p>S4: Erven provided to the far north-east of Kwakwatsi, have not been allocated in view of the proximity of the erven close to a wetland area and old night soil trenches (no longer in use). Similarly, 135 erven and a school site are also not occupied. The areas are ideal for recreation purposes although the establishment of a community food garden is deemed more appropriate for the area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ There are no erven in reserve in Kwakwatsi, current planning initiatives will accommodate the current housing need.</li> <li>▪ R1 : Limited possibilities exist to extend Koppies southwards.</li> <li>▪ The former show grounds is in a derelict state and no longer in uses, the area is deemed ideal for a residential mixed use zone (higher density housing option, including possible inclusionary housing)</li> <li>▪ R2: Land between Koppies and Kwakwatsi is proposed for infill planning and a mixed use area suited for inclusionary housing and commercial activities; especially areas adjoining 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue.</li> <li>▪ Two possible options exist in regards to the future extension of Kwakwatsi.</li> <li>▪ R3: the short term option is further southeast of Kwakwatsi on Plots 1017, 1018 and 1019 (all privately owned), linkage to service and road networks and the existing Kwakwatsi precinct is deemed exceedingly feasible, or,</li> <li>▪ R4: the longer term option is northeast of Kwakwatsi towards the Sasolburg road on Sub 1 of Goedverblyf 208 (privately owned),</li> </ul>



STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>the remainder of the Farm Leeuwspruit 79 (municipal owned).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some difficulties may arise concerning the numerous number of small holdings (most privately owned) that needs to be acquired and “jumping” of a significant railway line, that will divide the urban area.</li> </ul>
<b>Central Business District</b>	
<p><b>Koppies:</b> An ill-defined CBD comprising several open erven, exists in Edenville located between Station, Dirkie Uys and 3<sup>rd</sup> streets. 3<sup>rd</sup> street extends eastward to become the main and only access road to the Kwakwatsi precinct.</p> <p><b>Kwakwatsi:</b> Kwakwatsi comprises two well defined activity nodes (Δ1 &amp; Δ2) adjacent to primary collector roads in the precinct, with a number of other neighbourhood shops dispersed throughout the area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B1: Long-term business development is proposed eastward towards 1<sup>st</sup> Avenue to coincide with a mixed use commercial zone and inclusionary housing between Koppies and Kwakwatsi.</li> <li>It is proposed to contain the CBD within Station, Dirkie Uys and 3<sup>rd</sup> streets to discourage further intrusion of the residential zones.</li> <li><u>The following business nodes were identified:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adjacent to the Kwakwatsi clinic</li> <li>- Adjacent to the Kwakwatsi Secondary School</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>	
<p>T1: The only proper LDT rank is situated opposite the Paradys Hotel (T1) in Koppies. Provision is not made for commuter facilities in Kwakwatsi, although a dire need exists for a SDT rank in the precinct.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A need exists for a SDT rank, especially taking into consideration the new eastern extensions in Kwakwatsi. Collaboration with the Koppies taxi federation will have to commence to identify where the most</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	prominent need for a taxi rank exists and the ideal location thereof.
<b>Urban Open Spaces</b>	
<p>S1: A centrally located sport terrain exists in Koppies that is well developed with tennis courts and a bowling field.</p> <p>S2: A centrally located sport terrain was established in Kwakwatsi, but is currently not developed.</p> <p>S4: Erven provided to the far north-east of Kwakwatsi, have not been allocated in view of the proximity of the erven close to a wetland area and old night soil trenches (no longer in use). Similarly, 135 erven and a school site are also not occupied.</p> <p>S5: A large initially planned area, north-west of the existing Koppies precinct, was re-planned as an urban conservation area. Services were neither installed nor were any houses built in the area. The area is known as the Koppies Nature Reserve and must be retained.</p> <p>S6: Similar wetlands are located south of 6<sup>th</sup> Avenue and (S7) northwest of van der Schyff Street.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S1: Further development of a centrally located facility in mixed use area (between Koppies &amp; Kwakwatsi) in association with Koppies sport terrain.</li> <li>▪ S2: Development of the existing sport terrain in Kwakwatsi as a neighbourhood facility.</li> <li>▪ C2/S4 An informal soccer field located on proposed extension of cemetery to be relocated to adjacent park erf 1596</li> <li>▪ S4: Erf 1597, proposed for a school, transferred back to the municipality, ideally located for an urban food garden with extension possibilities on adjoining erf 1596</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- S5, S6 &amp; S7: Urban conservation areas, namely the Koppies Nature reserve and wetlands south of 6<sup>th</sup> Avenue and northwest of van der Schyff Street, are deemed of significance for protection and must be retained as such.</li> <li>- Leeuw Spruit and tributaries</li> <li>- S3: Several large wetland areas in the newly planned extension all contained in open space erven,</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>must be protected from pollution as they drain directly to the Renoster River in close proximity of the existing water purification works</p>
<b>Resorts and Tourism</b>	
<p>There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Koppies <i>per se</i>, although the town is closely related to the Koppies Dam Resort and Nature Reserve and other significant tourist related activities in the immediate surroundings.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.</li> <li>▪ The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.</li> <li>▪ Other significant tourism resources proposed for enhancement are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Koppies Dam Resort and Nature Reserve</li> <li>- Rooipoort Dam private resort</li> <li>- The R82 Anglo Boer Battlefield Route from Kroonstad to Greenlands,</li> <li>- Rooiwal Battlefield (Koppies District)</li> <li>- Vredefortweg Concentration Camp Cemetery (Koppies district)</li> <li>- Bentonite mining area</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Cemeteries</b>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>C1: The existing cemetery in Koppies has adequate capacity for future extension</p> <p>C2: The existing cemetery in Kwakwatsi will reach maximum capacity in 3 years' time.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C3: The existing cemetery in Koppies can be further extended further north</li> <li>▪ The cemetery in Kwakwatsi is to reach capacity in 3 years. An informal soccer field located on proposed extension of cemetery needs to be relocated to adjacent park erf 1596 (S4)</li> <li>▪ (C4) an area northeast of Kwakwatsi located on council owned land, (remainder of the Farm Leeuwspruit 79) has been identified as a suitable future regional cemetery to address the long term needs of the community.</li> </ul>
<b>Airfields</b>	
Koppies comprises a registered airfield, although not properly maintained. The role of the airfield may be enhanced in view of future coal mining activities, anticipated in the region.	

### Other Social Amenities

**Table 20**  
**Provision of Social Amenities in Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area**

<u>Town</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>Schools</u>	<u>Primary</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Clinics</u>	<u>Community</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centres</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private</u> <u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Worship</u> <u>Centres</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate</u> <u>Offices</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
	<b>P</b>	<b>S</b>								
Koppies		1		1		3	1		1	
Kwakwatsi	8	2	1			1 1				

## E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Industries</b>	
<p>I1: Koppies comprises a light industrial associated with the railway line and station, north of the CBD. Replanning of dormant industrial area, separating Koppies and Kwakwatsi, for residential development, since occurred</p> <p>I3: A limited number of well accessible light industrial erven are located adjacent the main access road to Kwakwatsi - the majority of these sites are unoccupied.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I2: The existing light industrial area in Koppies (adjacent station) comprises several open erven with extension possibilities further northwest (towards silos).</li> <li>▪ I3: A limited number of service industrial properties were retained adjacent to the main access road into Kwakwatsi, now proposed as a mixed use area (light industrial, service industries and business uses).</li> <li>▪ I4: An agri-industrial corridor is proposed adjacent to the main access road into Koppies (from the Sasolburg Road).</li> </ul>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining)</b>	

<sup>53</sup> Concern has been expressed by the SDF Task Team that the provision of clinics in Tumahole and Koppies is not adequate.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>G1: An old quarry located in Kwakwatsi (east) is accommodated in an open space and needs to be finally rehabilitated.</p> <p>G2: Gravel, for municipal use only, is exploited to the northeast of Koppies in and existing open cast pit being a large registered quarry (managed by the Provincial Roads Department Bentonite and Ceramic clay deposits are present in the area and are currently exploited.</p> <p>The area is richly underlain wit coal, referred to as the Sasolburg-Verging Coalfield.</p> <p>Volcanic pipes are mined in the region, closer to Kroonstad, at Voorspoed (De Beers) and Lace Mines (Private)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: The old quarry to the east of Kwakwatsi has partially been rehabilitated and is no longer in use.</li> <li>▪ Final rehabilitation of the site should promptly be completed; especially in view of its proximity to the Kwakwatsi precinct.</li> <li>▪ Future exploitation of rich coal deposits in the Koppies vicinity (between Kroonstad and Vredefort) is highly likely in the foreseeable future.</li> </ul>

## F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS

<b>Railway Lines and Stations</b>	
<p>The main railway line between Sasolburg and Kroonstad – a railway line of national significance between Gauteng and Bloemfontein, stretches through the urban area. The Koppies station is located directly north of the CBD and is functioning at present (both goods &amp; passengers).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Anticipated coal mining in the region substantiates the strategic importance of the line. As coal mining will, in the foreseeable future commence in the region, the railway line and station may gain stature and is deemed of economic importance for the town.</li> </ul>
<b>Landfill Sites</b>	
<p>D: The current landfill site is of adequate capacity to serve the town for at least another 5 years.</p>	

## Bulk Services

**Table 21**  
**Bulk Services Provision Koppies/ Kwakwatsi Urban Area**  
 (Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

Water Provision		Sanitation		Electricity
Current number of erven	3608	Current number of erven	3608	Bulk electricity provision is under strain, as the installed capacity from ESKOM is 5 MVA and the current actual load is 6,25 MVA. Funding was applied for to upgrade the supply to 10 MVA.
Total reservoir capacity (Mℓ)	5.75	Sewerage works capacity (Mℓ/day)	3,5	
Reservoir capacity required (Mℓ)	4.7	Sewerage works capacity required (Mℓ/day)	1,9	
Waterworks capacity (Mℓ/day)	3.72	Sewerage pump stations and pipelines will be required to allow for new extensions		
Waterworks capacity required (Mℓ/day)	2.4			
Adequate purification capacity.				
Water required (kℓ/day)	1 210			
Raw water supply: Koppies Dam, Additional reservoir capacity is required to provide potable water to new urban extension; New bulk water supply pipelines and				

pump stations will likely also be required for future urban extension.		
--	--	--

### Infrastructure Services

All urban areas were analysed in an attempt to identify shortfalls in infrastructure service delivery and to identify areas for eradication of backlogs or upgrading of services, the following categories were thus applied:

- Areas in the process of establishment (green)
- Areas established, unoccupied, without services (red)
- Areas established, occupied, with rudimentary services (brown for sewer, that will imply buckets and blue for water, that would imply standpipes)
- Areas established, unoccupied, with services, partly or completely (yellow)

<b>Water Network</b>	
<b>Kwakwatsi</b>	<b>Koppies</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network, water bourn sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Process of establishment</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>



<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access</b>
<b><u>Road Requirements</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R82: Imperative upgrading of the Koppies/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road)</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies also improving access to Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and newly established Koppies Dam Resort.</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of sections of the present access road from Koppies to the Koppies Dam Nature Reserve and Resort.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> </ul>
<b><u>Access Requirements</u></b>
<p><i>Kwakwatsi is exceedingly isolated with limited access onto the provincial road network and access to the Koppies urban area</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A4: An additional access road to the western portions of Kwakwatsi (onto Station Street) will improve accessibility</li> <li>▪ A5: Current proposed urban extension south-eastward will necessitate a new access onto the Koppies Dam Road</li> <li>▪ A6: Long term extension further north will likely necessitate a new access onto the Koppies/ Sasolburg Road</li> </ul>

## VREDEFORT/ VREDESHOOP/ MOKWALLO URBAN AREA .10

<b>A : CORE</b>	
STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK

<p>The VDWHS delineates the northern boundary of urban area.</p> <p>S5: The VDWHS Interpretation Centre, is located in the urban area of Vredefort. The road adjacent thereto (M4) is considered as one of the primary ports of entry to the VDWHS.</p> <p>S1: The Lesotho Spruit and its tributaries are a sensitive wetland system, extending through the urban area and is heavily impacted upon as a result of the adjoining urban developments. A significant tributary drains through the Mapetla extension (S2).</p> <p>A substantially large pan, covering 6 km<sup>2</sup>, believed to be the centre of the dome (referred to as the “Inland Sea”) is located 12 km southeast of Vredefort on the R723 (gravel road to N1). It is entirely located on privately owned, farm land.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Optimal development and utilisation of the unique tourism potential of the area, whilst not compromising the outstanding universal value of the adjacent VDWHS and unduly impairing the safe, undisturbed and quiet enjoyment of the area.</li> <li>▪ S6: The buffer areas, associated with the VDWHS, mostly boarder the urban area. The core area is located toward Parys. Finalisation has to be reached of the exact and official boundaries of the VDWHS, as it is neither concluded nor cadastral linked.</li> <li>▪ S1: Riparian areas to the Lesotho Spruit and its tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ They should be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them.</li> </ul>
---	--

## B : BUFFER

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>The Lesotho Spruit comprises a wetland system, accommodated in large open spaces, where it stretches through the Vredefort and Maptela residential precincts and the industrial area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S1: The Lesotho Spruit and its tributaries are a significant natural resource and should be protected to minimise pollution thereof.</li> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>be regarded as sensitive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S2: Rehabilitation of wetland adjacent Mapetla extension is proposed as a priority.</li> <li>▪ S6: It is proposed that the portions of the VDWHS buffer, located between Parys and Vredefort, be, as far as possible, restricted east of the Vredefort/ Parys Road, as urban extension of both areas is impeded upon as a consequence of the buffer.</li> </ul>

### C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>F1: The existing town lands to the north-east of Mokwallo is presently utilised as commonage for grazing purposes. The Department of Land Affairs, in collaboration with the Department of Agriculture, granted funds for the acquisition of substantial portions of farmland for commonage purposes (F2):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Subdivision 1 of the farm Schulp Spruit 140</li> <li>▪ Subdivisions 2 &amp; 3 of the farm Lincoln 541</li> <li>▪ Subdivisions 8 &amp; 9 of the farm Vredefort 148</li> </ul>	<p><b>Urban Agriculture</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ No small scale farming land uses present.</li> </ul> <p><b>Commonage</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Should future urban extensions on the commonage farms, subdivisions 8 and 9 of the farm Vredefort 148 be considered (R1) it will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (175 &amp; 147 Ha respectively).</li> </ul>

### D : URBAN RELATED

<b>Urban Fringe:</b>
Former municipal boundary, long-term development will require extension of fringe to include subdivisions 8 and 9 of the farm Vredefort 148 (only if extension eastward is considered).

**Table 22**  
**Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Urban Area**  
 (Source: Local Municipality, 2013)

<b><u>RESIDENTI AL AREA</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTI AL ERVEN OCCUPIED</u></b>	<b><u>RESIDENTI AL ERVEN UNOCCUPIE D</u></b>	<b><u>TOTAL RESIDENTI AL ERVEN</u></b>	<b><u>ERF REQUIREMEN TS</u></b> <i>(Determined by Council)</i>
Vredefort	480	25	505	None
Mokwallo	4 400	500 <sup>54</sup> 306 <sup>55</sup>	5164	None
Vredeshoop	96	-	96	None
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>4 976</b>	<b>831</b>	<b>5 765</b>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Residential</b> <b>Vredefort &amp; Vredeshoop:</b> Growth in the low density residential areas of Vredefort is slow and adequate provision has been made for future extension. There are 25 unoccupied erven in Vredefort. The town comprises at present of 480 erven. All erven in Vredeshoop are occupied. Vredeshoop comprises at present of 96 erven.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Mokwallo comprises 806 erven in reserve included in the planned an pegged Extension 4 and the newly proposed Extension 5.</li> <li>▪ Recent infill planning (Extension 5) ensured integration between Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and Vredefort in the south</li> <li>▪ R1: Mokwallo comprises short-term options for extension further</li> </ul>

<sup>54</sup> Extension 4 (unoccupied, not serviced)

<sup>55</sup> 2014 : Erven in process of Township Establishment (306 residential erven total extension 326 erven)

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p><b>Mokwallo:</b> Although growth in Mokwallo was sporadic and a shortage of erven constantly experienced, the need for erven, has of late, been alleviated. An approximate 806 erven are available for allocation. Mokwallo comprises at present of 4 400 erven.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>DRDLR <i>Development Potential in Urban Settlements Report</i> (2014) assessment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Urban Growth Potential - Low</li> <li>▪ Economic Potential - Low</li> </ul> </div>	<p>eastward.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R2: Vredefort comprises extension options north and northwestwards towards Viljoenskroon Road.</li> <li>▪ R3: Long-term, high density and integrated urban extension is proposed northwest beyond the Viljoenskroon Road</li> <li>▪ This long-term extension will ensured appropriate integration</li> <li>▪ R4: The possibility exists to utilise Propnet land, not in use and proposed for alienation, for residential purposes. Special care should, however, be taken of infrastructure services and storm water crossing the area.</li> <li>▪ Existing oxidation ponds inhibit remaining integration option between Mokwallo and Vredefort (towards the Parys Road) – relocation should be considered, also releasing land for future industrial developments.</li> <li>▪ A premises for inclusionary housing was not identified.</li> </ul>
<b>Central Business District</b>	
<p><b>Vredefort:</b> Vredefort has a well-defined CBD that develops increasingly along the main road through Vredefort as the old N1 through-route. Business erven, ranging in opportunities, are still available in the existing CBD.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Vredefort CBD is ill-defined and businesses are dispersed, due to the urban area comprising so called “open title deeds”, over a large area</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p><b>Mokwallo:</b> Business development in Mokwallo is limited to a network of neighbourhood shops that are dispersed throughout Mokwallo. Significant nodes were, however, identified to develop typical small convenient centres</p> <p><b>Vredeshoop:</b> No provision has been made for business development in Vredeshoop.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Development of the CBD is exceeding latent, long-term extension is not proposed, infill in the existing business zone must occur with node development in Mokwallo.</li> <li>▪ Corridor development adjoining Plein Street (former N1) will continue.</li> <li>▪ Similar business development occurs adjoining Oranje Street west of Plein Street.</li> <li>▪ I1: A service and light industrial area at the southern entrance to Vredefort is proposed for mixed uses (light industrial and commercial).</li> <li>▪ A1: A weak business corridor (Oranje Street east) main access and on route to Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop must be enhanced.</li> <li>▪ <u>The following business nodes were identified:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- At the intersection of the Viljoenskroon/ Parys Road north of Vredefort<sup>56</sup> (Δ1) although the land is privately owned.</li> <li>- In the centre of Mokwallo as a small convenient centre with an</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<sup>56</sup> The Council, during the late eighties, approved the establishment of a Truck Stop at the Viljoenskroon/ Parys Road intersection. The area is considered favourable for the establishment of a business node (refuelling station, restaurant and the like) in view of its favourable location to the VDWHS Interpretation Centre

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	additionally proposed smaller node between the Thambo and Mapetla precincts (Δ2 & Δ3).
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>	
<p>An inadequate, informal and undeveloped taxi embarking point is situated in Vredefort.</p> <p>T2: An area, ill developed, is provided in Mokwallo, strategically situated for a taxi rank.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ T1: A proper LDT rank is required in the Vredefort CBD, an area is proposed at the intersection with Phil and Plein Streets, between Water and Plein Streets (the Parys Road) north of the CBD.</li> <li>▪ T2: Upgrading of the existing SDT rank in Mokwallo (covered areas and ablution facilities) is deemed a high priority.</li> </ul>
<b>Urban Open Spaces</b>	
<p>S4: Vredefort comprises of a sport facility, the Fanie Cloete sport terrain, to the west of the town. The facility is in a derelict condition and maintenance thereof is required.</p> <p>S7: Provision was therefore made for a centrally situated sport terrain in Mokwallo and is presently not well developed. A need exists to further develop this facility to also be utilised for other sport activities than soccer.</p> <p>S3: An undeveloped neighbourhood sport facility is additionally located in the Mapetla precinct, it is at present being utilized as an informal soccer field.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S4: Continuous maintenance of the Fanie Cloete sport terrain</li> <li>▪ S7: Development of the existing sport terrain in Mokwallo to at least provide a proper soccer field and community focal point.</li> <li>▪ S3: Neighbourhood sport facility, earmarked in the Mapetla precinct, is proposed to be developed as it is a densely populated area with no proper recreation area.</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Lesotho Spruit and tributaries</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Resorts and Tourism</b>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>The Vredefort crater is the largest verified impact crater on Earth, more than 300 km across (when it was formed) and named after the town of Vredefort, situated near its centre. Although the crater itself has long since eroded away, the remaining geological structures at its centre are known as the Vredefort Dome or Vredefort impact structure, since 2005 located in the VDWHS.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.</li> <li>▪ The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.</li> <li>▪ There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Vredefort <i>per se</i>, although the town is closely related to the VDWHS and the recently established interpretation centre is located within the urban boundary thereof.</li> </ul>
<b>Cemeteries</b>	
<p>C1: A new cemetery has been developed to the north of Mokwallo.</p> <p>C2: The old Mokwallo cemetery (and various other smaller cemeteries in the precinct), are optimally utilised.</p> <p>C3: The Vredefort cemetery has adequate capacity for another five years and could readily be extended in the future. C4: The Vredeshoop cemetery is fully occupied, resident makes use of either the Mokwallo or Vredefort cemeteries.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C6: Extension of the Mokwallo cemetery could be considered north-eastward.</li> <li>▪ C7: Long term extension possibilities exist for the Vredefort cemetery.</li> <li>▪ C5: Protection of historical significance site adjacent the Parys road is deemed a priority.</li> </ul>



STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
C5: An old cemetery, that could possibly be considered a heritage site, is located adjacent the Vredefort/ Parys Road. Should it prove to be of historical significance, future developers must propose adequate measures to ensure the protection and conservation of the site.	

### Other Social Amenities

**Table 23**  
**Provision of Social Amenities in Vredefort/ Mokwallo / Vredeshoop Urban Area**

<u>Towns</u>	<u>Urban Schools</u>	<u>Primary Health Clinic</u>	<u>Community Health Centre</u>	<u>Hospitals</u>	<u>Private Hospital</u>	<u>Worship Centre</u>	<u>Police Stations</u>	<u>Rural Police Stations</u>	<u>Magistrate Office</u>	<u>and places of</u>
	<b>P</b>	<b>S</b>								
Vredefort		1	1	1		3	1		1	
Mokwallo	3	2	2			16				
Vredeshoop	1					1				

### E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Industries</b>	

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<p>I1: A service and light industrial area at the southern entrance to Vredefort was re-planned to provide for 326 residential erven and a limited number of light industrial premises.</p> <p>I2, I3: The existing light industrial (I2) and service industrial areas (I3) of Vredefort are located to the north of the urban area.</p> <p>I4: A few light industrial erven were also provided in Mokwallo (I4) that are not optimally developed.</p> <p>I5: the existing noxious industrial area is isolated, surrounded by residential precincts.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ I1: A limited number of light industrial erven (adjacent the Kroonstad Road) is earmarked for a “mixed use” area (commercial and light industrial).</li> <li>▪ I2: Long term industrial activities must therefore be established further north of the existing industrial area.</li> <li>▪ The existing waste water treatment plant is located towards the centre of the urban area, impacting on the development of valuable land adjacent to the Vredefort/ Parys road and existing industrial areas.</li> <li>▪ Relocation thereof should be considered to allow for an accessible industrial area.</li> <li>▪ R4: The possibility exists to utilise Propnet land for residential purposes (existing dwellings already present).</li> </ul>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining)</b>	
<p>Gravel, for municipal use only, is exploited to the north-west of Vredefort in an existing open cast pit (G1). Exploitation of other natural resources does not occur in the town area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: The existing open cast pit could be extended further north-west.</li> <li>▪ An exploited portion is utilised for the purpose of a landfill site that has to be considered should future development commence in the area (R3).</li> <li>▪ G2: The old quarry to the north-east of Mokwallo has partially been rehabilitated and is no longer in use.</li> <li>▪ Final rehabilitation of the site should promptly be completed; especially in view of its proximity to the Mokwallo precinct.</li> </ul>

## F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS

<b>Railway Lines and Stations</b>	
The industrial area of Vredefort used to be serviced by means of a siding, also servicing Parys, and linked with the main railway line at the Dover station. The siding is, however, no longer operational.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The industrial area is no longer serviced by means of the former siding</li> <li>▪ The station building is leased from Transnet and utilised for business activities.</li> <li>▪ Future coal mining, further south, may see revitalisation of the siding, transporting coal.</li> </ul>
<b>Landfill Sites</b>	
G2: An old quarry north-east of Mokwallo, initially utilised as landfill site, was partially rehabilitated and is no longer in use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ D1: The landfill site is located adjacent to the gravel road to Potchefstroom, north-west of Vredefort and comprises adequate capacity for the ensuing 5 years and beyond.</li> <li>▪ G2: Rehabilitation of the old quarry site, north-east of Mokwallo, must be completed.</li> </ul>

### **Bulk Services**

**Table 24**  
**Bulk Services Provision Vredefort/ Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop Urban Area**  
 (Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

<b>Water Provision</b>		<b>Sanitation</b>		<b>Electricity</b>
Current number of erven	5405	Current number of erven	5405	The town does not have any spare capacity and the future developments will not be provided with
Total reservoir capacity (Mℓ)	6.5	Sewerage works capacity (Mℓ/day)	5,5	
Reservoir capacity required (Mℓ)	6.9	Sewerage works capacity required (Mℓ/day)	2,8	

Waterworks capacity (Mℓ/day)	3.5	Adequate capacity.	electricity until the bulk supply has been increased
Waterworks capacity required (Mℓ/day) Adequate purification capacity.	3.4		
Water required (kℓ/day)	158		
Raw water supply: pumped from Vaal River.			

### Infrastructure Services

All urban areas were analysed in an attempt to identify shortfalls in infrastructure service delivery and to identify areas for eradication of backlogs or upgrading of services, the following categories were thus applied:

- Areas in the process of establishment (green)
- Areas established, unoccupied, without services (red)
- Areas established, occupied, with rudimentary services (brown for sewer, that will imply buckets and blue for water, that would imply standpipes)
- Areas established, unoccupied, with services, partly or completely (yellow)

<b>Water Network</b>		
<b>Mokwallo</b>	<b>Vredeshoop</b>	<b>Vredefort</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>		

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> <li>▪ Extension 2: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 3: No services, bucket system in use</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with sewer network</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Established, not occupied, no services</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with electricity network</li> </ul>

<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access</b>
<b><u>Road Requirements</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R59: Continuous upgrading of the former N1 route through the CBD.</li> <li>▪ R721: Completion of upgrading of Vredefort/ Kroonstad alternative road (for N1 toll road).</li> </ul>
<b><u>Access Requirements</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A1: A weak business corridor (Oranje Street east) main access and on route to Mokwallo/ Vredeshoop must be enhanced.</li> <li>▪ A2: A proper well-constructed access from the Greenland's Road to the Thambo and Mapetla precincts is deemed a priority.</li> <li>▪ A3: Planning of the southern precincts of Mokwallo allowed for a direct link (crossing the Dover siding) to the existing main access road to Mokwallo.</li> <li>▪ A4 &amp; A5: Additional and a more direct access from the Vredefort/ Parys road is proposed to the industrial area and the Vredeshoop precinct, ultimately also to the Mokwallo precinct.</li> <li>▪ It will imply a crossing over the Lesotho Spruit but will further provide a more direct access to Vredeshoop, Mokwallo and cemetery.</li> </ul>

A6: Long term extension further north will necessitate a new access onto the Vredefort/  
Viljoenskroon Road.

DRAFT

**A : CORE**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>Areas directly adjacent Edenville, have been identified as extremely environmental sensitive. A red data species, <i>Sun Gazer Lizard</i>, is present on the sites.</p> <p>The Rooikraal Spruit flows through the urban area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ E1, E2, E3: An area directly adjacent Edenville to the south and an area adjacent the access to Edenville (A1) to the north, has been identified as extremely environmental sensitive due to the presence of <i>Sun Gazer Lizards</i> and must be protected.</li> <li>▪ Riparian areas to the Rooikraal Spruit and its tributaries are an integral part of the river ecosystem and are regarded as important ecological features, which experience substantial development pressures.</li> <li>▪ They should be regarded as sensitive to activities that threaten to severely degrade them.</li> </ul>

**B : BUFFER**

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>The Rooikraal Spruit comprises a wetland system, accommodated in large open spaces, where it stretches through the Ngwathe residential area.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Rooikraal Spruit (and its tributary through Ngwathe) is the most prominent natural resource and should be protected to minimise pollution.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The areas within 32 m and 100 m of water courses, as defined in the National Water Act, and within 500 m of wetlands should be regarded as sensitive.</li> </ul>
--	---

### C : AGRICULTURAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK
<p>F1, F2, F3: The Council obtained funds from the Department of Land Affairs and subsequently acquired the farms Uelzen 1994, Ebenhaezer 1455, Subdivision 1 of Stilledal 53. A number of inhabitants in Ngwathe are, irrespective of the recently acquired commonage, in need of land for the purposes of small scale farming and grazing.</p>	<p><b>Urban Agriculture</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ No small scale farming land uses present.</li> </ul> <p><b>Commonage</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Future urban extensions on the commonage farm, Subdivision 1 of Stilledal 53, will necessitate acquiring of additional commonage (approximately 280 Ha).</li> </ul>

### D : URBAN RELATED

**Table 25**  
**Summary of Current Housing Tendencies: Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area**  
 (Source: Local Municipality, 2013)

<u>RESIDEN TIAL AREA</u>	<u>RESIDEN TIAL ERVEN OCCUPIE D</u>	<u>RESIDEN TIAL ERVEN UNOCCUP IED</u>	<u>TOTAL RESIDEN TIAL ERVEN</u>	<u>ERF REQUIREMENTS</u> <i>(Determined by Council)</i>
Edenville	250	60	310	None



Ngwathe	2 026 197 <sup>57</sup>	491 <sup>58</sup>	2 714	500 erven in 2014/15 <sup>59</sup>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>2 473</b>	<b>551</b>	<b>3 024</b>	<b>500</b>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Urban Fringe:</b>	
The former municipal boundary currently determines the proposed urban fringe. Long-term development will see extension of the fringe to include Subdivision 1 of the farm Stilledal, identified as hinterland for future extension of the Ngwathe precinct.	
<b>Residential</b>	
<p><b>Edenville:</b> Development in Edenville is deemed exceedingly dormant. Only 250 of the 310 residential sites are occupied.</p> <p><b>Ngwathe:</b> Ngwathe, however, experienced moderate growth considering that approximately 928 erven were developed since 1990. Ngwathe, at present, comprises of 2 223 erven.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ There are no erven in reserve in the Ngwathe precinct and all developable land exhausted.</li> <li>▪ Environmentally “no go” area (colonies of Sun Gazer Lizards) not suitable for urban extension.</li> <li>▪ R1: Long-term extension of Edenville is feasible to the north and northeastward.</li> <li>▪ R2: Remaining integration option, (short-term) eastward towards Edenville.</li> <li>▪ R3: Long-term, northward on Subdivision 1 of the farm Stilledal 53, currently utilised as commonage land.</li> <li>▪ R4: Densification and infill planning on</li> </ul>

DRDLR *Development Potential in Urban Settlements Report* (2014) assessment:

- Urban Growth Potential - Low

57

58

2014: Erven in process of Township Establishment (491 residential erven).

59

Current planning of 491 erven will address the waiting list, additional erven will have to be provided for normal growth.

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
	<p>existing vacant erven located west of Edenville.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Integration will in future successfully be achieved.</li> <li>▪ A premises for inclusionary housing was not identified.</li> </ul>
<b>Central Business District (CBD) and Development Nodes</b>	
<p>An ill-defined CBD comprising several open erven, exists in Edenville extending linear to the west along Haefele Street, also the main access to Edenville and Ngwathe from the Kroonstad/Heilbron Road (A3 &amp; A2). Several neighbourhood shops are dispersed throughout Ngwathe.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Edenville CBD is ill-defined and business development is exceedingly latent.</li> <li>▪ Main business activities adjacent Haefele Street (also the main access to Ngwathe) and limited activities in Wessels and Mentz Street.</li> <li>▪ Long-term extension of the CBD is not proposed, infill in the existing business zone should occur with node development in Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ <u>The following business nodes were identified:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- adjacent to Haefele Street at Ngwathe entrance (Δ1). Should the need arise and the specific location of the site meets the approval of the Roads Planning Directorate (Free State Provincial Government), a refuelling station could be provided.</li> <li>- in the recent extension, west of Ngwathe (Δ2).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Commuting Nodes</b>	
<p>Presently no provision is made for formal commuter facilities. A pick up point is located in Ngwathe that could be formalised as a rank (T1). An LDT and SDT rank is situated in</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A proper LDT rank is required.</li> <li>▪ I3: The possibility to utilise the initially provided testing centre, for a taxi rank could be considered should the Department of</li> </ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
Edenville on the corner of Wessels and Haefele Street on a portion of Erf 55 (T2).	Public Works agree to waive the property.
<b>Urban Open Spaces</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S1: A rudimentary golf course and clubhouse is established adjacent to the Rooikraal Spruit.</li> <li>▪ S3: A well developed and centrally located sport terrain is established in Edenville.</li> <li>▪ S4: The town also comprises a well-maintained bowling club.</li> <li>▪ S2: A sport terrain was provided in Ngwathe, but is not developed. Various parks are also provided in Ngwathe for recreation purposes, but are undeveloped.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ S2: Development of the existing sport terrain in Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ <u>Urban conservation</u>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- E1, E2 &amp; E3: Areas containing red data species.</li> <li>- Rooikraal Spruit and tributaries.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Resorts and Tourism</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ There is neither a resort nor any significant tourism related characteristics in Edenville and its immediate surroundings. A possibility exists to provide a small tourist facility/ view point at an old exploited lime mine.</li> <li>▪ Biodiversity in the area is underexplored and probably underestimated in terms of its value and eco-tourism potential.</li> <li>▪ The region experienced an increase in the tourism industry regarding weekend tourism destinations. Specific reference is made to the game ranches and guesthouses on farms.</li> </ul>	
<b>Cemeteries</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C1: The Edenville cemetery comprises capacity for long-term extension.</li> <li>▪ C2: The Ngwathe cemetery was extended during the previous residential extension and will be adequate for the ensuing five years.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ C3: Long-term extension is identified for expansion of the old Ngwathe cemetery further north to Heuning Spruit road.</li> </ul>

## Other Social Amenities

**Table 26**  
**Provision of Social Amenities in Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area**

<u>Town</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Urban</u> <u>School</u> <u>s</u>	<u>Primar</u> <u>y</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Clinic</u> <u>Comm</u> <u>unity</u> <u>Health</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Hospit</u> <u>als</u>	<u>Privat</u> <u>e</u> <u>Hospit</u>	<u>Worshi</u> <u>p</u> <u>Centre</u>	<u>Police</u> <u>Statio</u> <u>ns</u>	<u>Rural</u> <u>Police</u> <u>Statio</u>	<u>Magist</u> <u>rate</u> <u>Offices</u>	<u>and</u> <u>places</u> <u>of</u>
	<u>P</u>	<u>S</u>							
Edenville	1		1		2	1		1	
Ngwathe	2	1	1		9				

## E : INDUSTRIAL AREAS

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
<b>Industries</b>	
<b>Edenville:</b> Apart from a single existing site (I1- municipal mechanical workshop) and a site initially provided for a testing centre (I3), no formal industrial area or sites are provided in Edenville. <b>Ngwathe:</b> Light industrial/ commercial erven, some of which has already been developed, were provided in the Ngwathe precinct (I2).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ A formal industrial zone is not earmarked for Edenville, limited number of undeveloped erven are availed in Ngwathe (I2).</li><li>▪ Accommodation of future light industrial development should occur on open business premises in Edenville or on properties earmarked in Ngwathe.</li><li>▪ Development of the testing centre never commenced, it could be utilised as future taxi rank/ industrial/ commercial premises.</li></ul>
<b>Extractive Industries (Mining)</b>	
Gravel, for municipal use only, is exploited to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ G1: The existing open cast pit could extend</li></ul>

STATUS QUO	FUTURE SPATIAL FRAMEWORK
the south-west of Ngwathe in an existing open cast pit (G1). Exploitation of other natural resources does not occur in the town area.	<p>further north-west.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The exploited portion, due to steep unsafe slopes and being located on the boundary of an urban area, must be rehabilitated as a matter of urgency.</li> <li>▪ Dumping of household refuse must be prohibited at the quarry.</li> </ul>

## F : SURFACE INFRASTRUCTURE & BUILDINGS

<b>Landfill Sites</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Refuse dumping in proximity of the Ngwathe precinct must cease as a matter of urgency and land filled areas properly rehabilitated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ G1: Refuse dumping in quarry west of the Ngwathe precinct, must cease at once</li> <li>▪ D1: Former landfill site, south of Edenville should be re-utilised.</li> <li>▪ Site comprises capacity with long-term extension possibilities.</li> <li>▪ Repair of site fence and upgrading of access road will be necessary.</li> </ul>

## Bulk Service

**Table 27**  
**Bulk Services Provision Edenville/ Ngwathe Urban Area**  
 (Source LMV Engineers, 2014)

Water Provision		Sanitation		Electricity
Current number of erven		Current number of erven		Spare capacity is not available and future developments will not be provided with electricity until the bulk supply has been increased.
Total reservoir capacity (Mℓ)		Sewerage works capacity (Mℓ/day)		
Reservoir capacity required (Mℓ)		Sewerage works capacity required Mℓ/day)		
Waterworks capacity (Mℓ/day)		WWTW capacity will have to be increased to allow for new extensions.		
Waterworks capacity required (Mℓ/day) Urban area comprises adequate purification capacities, additional reservoir capacity needs to be provided				
Water required (kℓ/day)				
Raw water supply: mainly obtained from				

boreholes; Future urban expansion will require additional raw water supply/ resources.		
--	--	--

### Infrastructure Services

All urban areas were analysed in an attempt to identify shortfalls in infrastructure service delivery and to identify areas for eradication of backlogs or upgrading of services, the following categories were thus applied:

- Areas in the process of establishment (green)
- Areas established, unoccupied, without services (red)
- Areas established, occupied, with rudimentary services (brown for sewer, that will imply buckets and blue for water, that would imply standpipes)
- Areas established, unoccupied, with services, partly or completely (yellow)

<b>Water Network</b>	
<b>Ngwathe</b>	<b>Edenville</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extension 4: Water network installed individual connections not provided</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provided with water network</li> </ul>
<b>Sewer Network</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Existing Urban Area: Due to water shortage, no water borne sewer, either VIPs or suction pits installed</li> <li>▪ Extension 4: Buckets to be replaced with either VIPs or suction pits</li> <li>▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Due to water shortage, no water borne sewer, either VIPs or suction pits installed</li> </ul>
<b>Electricity Network</b>	

▪ Extension 5: Process of establishment	▪ Provided with electricity network
---	-------------------------------------

<b>Regional Road Network and Future Access</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ R34: Apart from the main road between Heilbron and Kroonstad, dividing the precinct of Ngwathe and Edenville, there are no major road requirements.</li> <li>▪ R720: Upgrading of the gravel road between Heilbron and Koppies</li> <li>▪ A1, A2: There are two access roads to Edenville from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road. One access road is across the Ngwathe access road and the other access across the Heuning Spruit Road. The above-mentioned secondary roads to Steynsrus and Petrus Steyn, directly link to Edenville.</li> <li>▪ A3: Only one access road exists to Ngwathe from the Kroonstad/ Heilbron Road.</li> <li>▪ A4: An additional access to Ngwathe will improve accessibility from the major road network, specifically with the residential extension to the south of Ngwathe.</li> <li>▪ A5: Existing informal accesses from the Heuning Spruit Road is proposed to be formalised, also allowing direct access to the proposed new cemetery.</li> <li>▪ A6: Long- term extension further north will likely necessitate a new access onto the Edenville/ Heilbron Road.</li> </ul>	

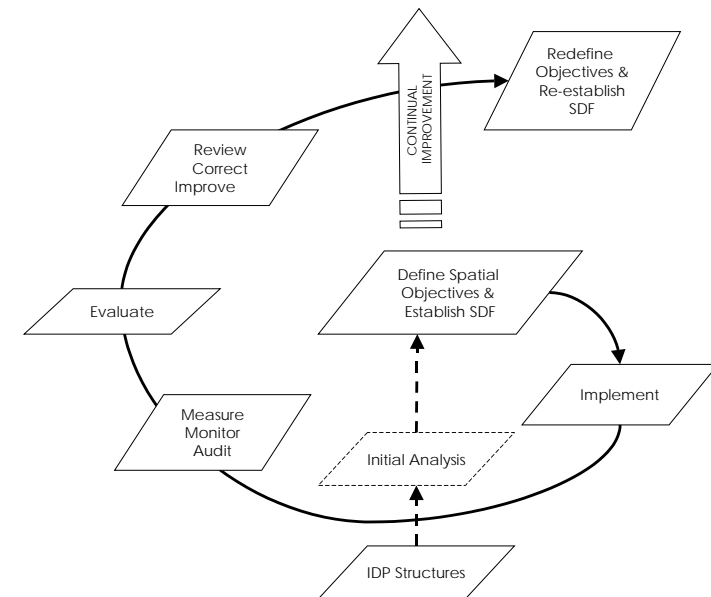


Over time, the aims, objectives and guidelines set in the SDF should be achieved to ensure that proper development and land use management are adequately addressed. The achievement of the aims, objectives and implementation of guidelines will be achieved more satisfactorily through a process of continual improvement of the SDF. It is well known that continual improvement will only be achieved through a process of reviewing, amending, monitoring and evaluation. The following framework attempts to provide guidelines to the municipality to ensure that a process of continual improvement is persistently followed.

### Implementation

The Spatial Development Plan is a guideline document, and not primarily an implementation plan, which demonstrates compliance of the IDP with spatial principles and strategies and which serves as a basis for spatial co-ordination of activities and for land use management decisions. The overarching purpose of the SDF could be summarized as follows:

- Providing general direction to guide decision-making and action over a multi-year period aiming at the creation of integrated and habitable cities, towns and residential areas,
- Creating a strategic framework for the formulation of an appropriate land-use management system, thereby:
  - informing the decisions of development tribunals, housing departments and relevant development committees; and
  - creating a framework of investment confidence that facilitates both public and private sector investment.



The Spatial Development Framework is supposed to form a legally binding component of the IDP. That means it needs to be quite specific and precise in cases where it wants to enforce or to prevent certain types of land use. This, however, does not imply that it has to be prescriptive with regard to the way each and every piece of land shall be used.

It is therefore clear that the SDF cannot as such be implemented, however, all developments, especially if a spatial impact is implied, should be measured against the proposals of the SDF. The implementation of projects or any suggested land use changes should thus be viewed against the general principles and the detail proposals of the SDF. Where a change in circumstances, new event or specific developments results in conflict with the SDF the Council may consider to:

- Amend the SDF - The term **“amendment”** refers to a physical change to the SDF as a result of the review process, or in response to proposals by the MEC. Amendment may also be necessitated to enhance development or in view of changed circumstances. Amendment is endeavoured where a quick response is required.
- Review the SDF as part of the IDP Review process - In this context, **“review”** means a process whereby the SDF is assessed/evaluated in terms of the Municipality’s performance as well as changed circumstances. Review is endeavoured annually and a quick response is not necessarily required.

### **Amendment and Review**

The decision of whether to amend the SDF only during the annual review or immediately in response to an event or new information may depend on the nature of the event or information. An immediate amendment may be relevant if new information or an envisaged event/development:

- has a substantial impact on the nature or understanding or priority issues in the Municipality, that may require adjustments to strategies, projects, programmes,
- presents new opportunities with an immediate effect requiring a quick response from the Municipality, or allowing the Municipality to speed up implementation.

The Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001 set out details regarding the prescribed process to amend the IDP:

- Only a member or committee of a Municipal council may introduce a proposal for amending the Municipality's integrated development plan in the council.
- A reason for amending the IDP must accompany the proposal to amend the IDP, and the proposal must also be aligned with the district's IDP framework.
- The amendment is adopted via a decision taken by the Municipal council.
- Reasonable notice must be given to the members of the council, and the amendment must also be published for public comments for at least 21 days.
- The District Municipality must consult the local Municipalities in the area and take their comments into account.
- The Local Municipality must consult the district Municipality in its area and take its comments into account.

Where a quick response is not required and the new event or new information could be incorporated in the annual review process, the SDF will be reviewed with the normal and annual revision process of the IDP. The SDF has to be reviewed annually in order to:

- Ensure its relevance as the municipality's guideline for land use management and development.
- Inform other components of the Municipal business process.
- Inform the cyclical provincial government of long-term development intentions of the area.
- Reflect on the impact of successes as well as corrective measures to address problems.
- Accommodate changes in internal and external circumstances that may impact on the SDF.

### **Monitoring and Evaluation**

The system for monitoring the SDF with the specific intention of evaluating the delivery is to ensure that the aims and objectives of the SDF are achieved and that the Municipality can make relevant adjustments to its SDF. Monitoring and evaluation are also used as 2 separate but interrelated concepts.

- **Monitoring**

*Collecting relevant information:* The gathering of information used to track the progress of delivery against the identified aims and objectives and also development guidelines as identified in the SDF. Monitoring in the context of SDF refers to the gathering of data and the subsequent organizing of data into sets of information about certain actions/events/situations throughout the year. Three main bodies of information are important as input into the review process:

- **Implementation management information**, mainly refers to information that measures progress with the implementation of the SDF through a series of indicators such as completion timeframes, use of resources, implementation of development guidelines etc.
- **Information about the achievement of aims and objectives and implementation of guidelines in the SDF** will have to be measured over time. This is done in terms of the indicators that have been set, to determine whether the outcomes strived for have been achieved.
- **New information** may be generated from internal or external sources and reflects changes to the internal or external context of the Municipal area that impacts on the appropriateness of the SDF. It could include information such as (information needs monitoring and recording throughout the year for consideration in the review process):
  - baseline data on demographics,
  - new policy and legislation,
  - budget information from other spheres of government as well as municipal budget review processes,
  - more or improved in-depth information about the existing situation and priority issues, information about new developments and trends,
  - changes in the existing situation due to unexpected events such as natural disasters,
  - new investment opportunities,
  - the input from stakeholder organizations and constituencies.

▪ **Evaluation**

*Analyzing and interpretation of relevant information:* Analyzing and evaluating the meaning of the information and applying the understanding to improve delivery and its impact on the people in the Municipality. The information gathered through the process of monitoring described above is assessed to understand its relevance and implications to the SDF. The relevant information is analyzed for its relevance to achieving the ideal urban form as prepossessed in the SDF. The following activity sheet is proposed as a framework for monitoring and evaluation of the SDF implementation.

<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Roles</b>	<b>Evaluation &amp; Outputs</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Municipal Manager</li> <li>▪ IDP Manager</li> <li>▪ Relevant Officials</li> <li>▪ SDF Specialists</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The organizing of data and collation of information is the responsibility of the Municipal Manager/IDP Manager who has to put in place and co-ordinate a process or system for this purpose, and designate roles to appropriate persons.</li> <li>▪ The Municipal Manager/IDP Manager should prepare an initial summary of the relevant information for consideration within the IDP Steering Committee.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Key information about changes in circumstances and new information compiled into a single body of information, related to the SDF.</li> <li>▪ Incorporate all other relevant baseline and other information that became available during the course of implementation of the SDF.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ IDP Steering Committee</li> <li>▪ SDF Task Team</li> <li>▪ SDF</li> </ul>	<p>The Steering Committee, and more specifically the SDF Task Team, should package the relevant information in terms of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ problems in implementation to</li> </ul>	<p>All new information/major unexpected events have to be evaluated in terms of their relevance, to serve as an input into the SDF review process. It also has to be evaluated to determine what its impact</p>

Responsibility	Roles	Evaluation & Outputs
Specialists	<p>enable decisions about the improvement of processes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>information about new legislation and trends that have to be related to the SDF.</li> <li>continued relevance and appropriateness of the current aims objectives and guidelines of the SDF.</li> </ul>	<p>would be on the SDF.</p> <p>Refine and filter the information (discard irrelevant information)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Organize the information and ensure that information addresses various components of the SDF (if not, information should be discarded).</li> <li>Link the information gathered to the relevant aspect of the SDF (no link, discard information).</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IDP Representative Forum</li> <li>SDF Specialists</li> </ul>	<p>It should be determined whether the new Information and or unexpected events should be considered when reviewing the SDF, and what are its likely impact on the SDF. Some of the information/assumptions that the SDF was initially based on may have to be challenged. The forum should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>comment and debate the relevant information and consider its impact on the SDF,</li> <li>further assess the implications/impact of the information on the SDF,</li> <li>document and agree on the necessary amendments and</li> </ul>	<p>The SDF document has to be amended to reflect the implications of changing circumstances and new information. A systematic process has to be followed whereby the relevant components of the SDF are amended to reflect the input gained from the previous activities. The outputs should imply</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updating of the description of the existing situation and priority issues.</li> <li>Refine and amend aims, objectives and guidelines where appropriate.</li> <li>Identify more complicated and systemic blockages in implementation that may occur and define action-based solutions.</li> </ul>

<b>Responsibility</b>	<b>Roles</b>	<b>Evaluation &amp; Outputs</b>
	refinements to the SDF, ▪ give feedback to the IDP Steering Committee to ensure incorporation of amendments and refinements to the SDF.	
Council	Once the SDF has been reviewed, the revised document has to be adopted by the Municipality.	Once the draft revised IDP has been prepared: ▪ Opportunity has to be provided for comment from the public and national/ provincial departments. ▪ A district level workshop is held to achieve horizontal and vertical alignment between the District and Local Municipalities. ▪ Comments are incorporated/attended to. ▪ The revised SDF is submitted to the Municipal Council and adopted by the Council.

## **Conclusion**

Monitoring and evaluating the SDF, is a tool to help the Municipality to assess its progress with implementation. It is to check whether it is achieving its developmental objectives and then to make adjustments and revisions to the SDF and implementation so that the efficiency and impact of its delivery is improved. The SDF is monitored, evaluated and ultimately reviewed with the important objective of improving the Municipality's capacity to deliver the most efficiently to those it is intended to serve.

## **Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site: Annexure 1**

---

DRAFT



## Summary of Planning Policies - Spatial Related Drivers and Objectives: Annexure 2

### NDP: Summary of Spatial Related Drivers and Objectives

<b>NDP Drivers<sup>60</sup></b>	<b>Objectives</b>	<b>Nr.</b>
Driver 1 Diversify and expand agricultural development and food security	▪ Protection of rural livelihoods	1
	▪ Expansion of commercial agriculture	2
	▪ Conservation and restoration of protected areas	3
Driver 4 Capitalise on transport and distribution opportunities	▪ Upgrading the Durban Gauteng freight corridor	4
Driver 8 Expand and maintain basic and road infrastructure	▪ Access to clean, potable water	5
	▪ Access to electricity grid	6
	▪ Enough water for agriculture and industry	7
	▪ Renewable energy (20 000 MW)	8
Driver 9 Facilitate sustainable human settlement	▪ Spatial planning system	9
	▪ Upgrade all informal settlements	1
	▪ Improve balance between location of jobs and people	1
	▪ Development of spatial compacts	1
	▪ More jobs in or close to dense, urban township	1
	▪ Support rural and urban livelihoods	1
	▪ Greater spatial mix	1
	▪ Densification of cities	1
	▪ Resource allocation	1

<sup>60</sup> Improvement of infrastructure is a cross cutting issue regarding all drivers

<b><u>NDP Drivers<sup>60</sup></u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
	▪ Better located housing and settlements	1
	▪ Public transport	1
Driver 12 Integrate environmental limitations and change into growth and development planning	▪ Expansion of commercial agriculture	2
	▪ Conservation and restoration of protected areas	2

### **MTSF: Summary of Spatial Related Drivers and Objectives**

<b><u>MTSF Drivers</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
Driver 1 Diversify and expand agricultural development and food security	▪ Develop under-utilised land in communal areas and land reform projects	1
	▪ Expand land under irrigation	2
	▪ Acquire and allocate strategically located land	3
	▪ Improve transport infrastructure and public transport in rural areas	4
Driver 2 Minimise the impact of the declining mining sector and ensure that existing mining potential is harnessed	▪ Create new mining opportunities	5
	▪ Re-use mining infrastructure	6
	▪ Implement mine tourism initiatives	7
	▪ Rehabilitation of mining areas	8
Driver 4 Capitalise on	▪ Durban- Free State- Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor	9
	▪ Improve and preserve national, provincial and local road	1

<b><u>MTSF Drivers</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
transport and distribution opportunities	infrastructure	
	▪ Improve public transport	1
Driver 8 Expand and maintain basic and road infrastructure	▪ Water-resources development, bulk water supply and wastewater management	1
	▪ Commission at least 7000 MW of renewable energy by 2020	1
Driver 9 Facilitate sustainable human settlement	▪ Fast track release of well-located land for housing and human settlements	1
	▪ Access to basic infrastructure and services in new development	1
	▪ Address infrastructure and basic services backlog	1
	▪ Promote integration and densification	1
	▪ Human settlement development	1
	▪ Nodes and linkages to be developed in historically black townships	1
Driver 13 Mainstream rural development into growth and development planning	▪ Land reform	2
	▪ Acquire and allocate strategically located land	2
	▪ Improve transport infrastructure and public transport in rural areas	2
	▪ Provide access to piped water in rural areas	2
	▪ Provide access to sanitation services in rural areas	2
	▪ Provide access to energy in rural areas	2

**PSDF: Summary of Spatial Related Directives and Objectives**

<b><u>PSDF Directives</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
C1 Land Use Planning	▪ Implementation of SPCs	1
	▪ Future spatial patterns	2
	▪ Cross boundary issues	3
C4 The Natural Environment	▪ Identification of core conservation area	4
	▪ Creation of appropriate Buffer Areas	5
	▪ Creation of continuous network of natural resources	6
C5 Agricultural areas	▪ Develop the Free State agricultural sector	7
	▪ Protect high potential agricultural land	8
C6 Urban Areas	▪ Sustainable settlements	9
	▪ Prohibit further outward expansion	1
	▪ Spatially integrate	1
	▪ Develop walking and cycling routes	1
	▪ Densify urban settlements	1
	▪ Restructure road networks	1
	▪ Identification of towns that qualify for projects	1
C7 Industrial Areas	▪ Establish industrial areas and infrastructure	1
	▪ Planning, design and construction comply with the principles of sustainability	1
C8 Surface Infrastructure	▪ Provide and maintain an adequate road and railway transport system	1
	▪ Provide water resources infrastructure	1
	▪ Reliable supply of water from bulk water resources infrastructure	2

<b><u>PSDF Directives</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
	▪ Provision of communities access to water infrastructure	2
	▪ Promote the development of renewable energy supply schemes	2
	▪ Development of bulk services	2
	▪ Provide household services	2
C9 Tourism	▪ Develop the Free State as a tourist destination	2
C10 Efficient Governance	▪ Land-use management	2
	▪ Safeguard the environment	2
	▪ Indicate current or potential future problems that need to be addressed	2
	▪ Rectify deficiencies	2

### **FSGDS: Summary of Spatial Related Drivers and Objectives**

<b><u>FSGDS Drivers</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
Driver 1 Diversify and expand agricultural development and food security	▪ Sustainable agriculture	1.
	▪ Protect agricultural land	2.
	▪ Land restitution	3.
	▪ Upgrading and maintenance of road and rail infrastructure	4.
	▪ Identify growth points	5.
Driver 2 Minimise the impact of	▪ Re-use mining infrastructure	6.
	▪ Implement mine tourism initiatives	7.

<b><u>FSGDS Drivers</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
the declining mining sector and ensure that existing mining potential is harnessed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rehabilitation of mining areas</li> </ul>	8.
Driver 4 Capitalise on transport and distribution opportunities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop the Harrismith logistics hub and the N8 corridor</li> </ul>	9.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Optimise the potential of existing regional airfields</li> </ul>	10
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop and maintain an efficient road, rail and public transport network</li> </ul>	11
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Improve road infrastructure</li> </ul>	12
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Improve public transport facilities</li> </ul>	13
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Improve rural public transport</li> </ul>	14
Driver 5 Harness and increase tourism potential opportunities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tourism development and growth</li> </ul>	15
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop tourism routes</li> </ul>	16
Driver 8 Expand and maintain basic and road infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintain and upgrade basic infrastructure</li> </ul>	17
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provide new basic infrastructure</li> </ul>	18
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify and facilitate the implementation of infrastructure</li> </ul>	19
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provide and upgrade bulk services</li> </ul>	20
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implement alternative sanitation, water and electricity infrastructure</li> </ul>	21
Driver 9 Facilitate Sustainable Human Settlement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accelerate township establishment</li> </ul>	22
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify and acquire land parcels for integrated human settlement</li> </ul>	23
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Socially integrated human settlements</li> </ul>	24
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Densification</li> </ul>	25
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Intensify informal settlements upgrading</li> </ul>	26

<b><u>FSGDS Drivers</u></b>	<b><u>Objectives</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
Driver 12 Integrate environmental limitations and change into growth and development planning	▪ Conserve and consolidate functional natural areas	27
	▪ Improve protection to riparian zones of the Free State rivers	28
	▪ Improve protection status afforded to wetlands and grasslands	29
	▪ Expand responsible extensive wildlife ranching	30
Driver 13 Mainstream rural development into growth and development planning	▪ Facilitate land reform	31
	▪ Improve rural development	32
	▪ Establish agri-villages in selected areas	33

### **IDP: Spatial Objectives**

<b><u>Area</u></b>	<b><u>IDP Objectives (2014)</u></b>	<b><u>Nr.</u></b>
Water	▪ Improve access to basic services	1.
	▪ Improve water quality	2.
	▪ Improvement of water conservation and water demand management	3.
Sanitation	▪ Improve access to basic services	4.
	▪ Eradicate all the buckets in formal and informal settlements by 2014	5.
Electricity	▪ Improve access to basic services	6.
	▪ Increase capacity for electrical bulk supply	7.
Waste Management	▪ Registering of landfill sites and improving infrastructure	8.
Housing	▪ Acceptable safe and quality housing	9.
	▪ Replace informal structures and eradicate the current backlog	10.
	▪ Ensure the accessibility of land for future residential development and to facilitate land redistribution	11.

Roads & Transport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Continuous maintenance and upgrading of all tar, gravel and unsurfaced roads and storm water networks</li> </ul>	12.
Agriculture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ To diversify the agricultural sector</li> </ul>	13.



## **CHAPTER TWELVE (12): MEC Comments**

### **EVALUATION FRAMEWORK FOR REVISED IDP**

#### **CATEGORY B (NGWATHE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY)**



**Municipality Name: Ngwathe Local Municipality**

**Date: 24 April 2014**

**29 July 2014**

## **EVALUATION FRAMEWORK FOR MUNICIPAL IDP**

### **1. Introduction and Background**

The Municipal Systems Act No.32 of 2000 provides the legislative framework within which the preparation of Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is regulated. The provisions of the MSA require municipal councils with certain legislative requirements when preparing the IDP to ensure meaningful community participation and alignment and coordination of the IDP processes. Section 26 of the MSA stipulates that the core components of the IDP must reflect –

- (a) The municipal council's vision of the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation needs; and
- (b) An assessment of the existing level of development in the municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic municipalities.

Section 31 of the MSA requires the MECs for local government to provide comments on the municipal IDPs in the respective provinces. In order to assist the MEC commenting process the practice of convening assessment sessions was introduced. These sessions bring together a team of assessors from different sectors to assess the IDPs and provide comments.

#### **1.1 Purpose of the Evaluation Framework**

The purpose of this evaluation framework is to guide and standardise the assessment of municipal Integrated Development Plans for Category B (Local Municipality) by providing guidelines for the crafting, designing and improving IDPs. It is expected that the application of this evaluation framework will assist municipalities to develop credible IDPs.

#### **1.2 Annual IDP Assessments**

In order to assist the MEC commenting process, Provincial Departments of Local Government convene annual IDP assessment sessions. These sessions bring together national and provincial sector departments officials, State owned entities and other organisations to engage with municipal IDPs with a view of providing comments that are aimed at improving the quality of IDPs. The overall objectives of the annual IDP assessment sessions are to –

- Improve the delivery of Services;
- Support and improve the content of the MEC commenting process so as to ensure we move towards a sustainable environment, the local economy is stimulated, there is social cohesion and inclusion (including the building of Non-Racism, Non-Sexism and Democracy), and the creation of sustainable human settlements;
- Improve the quality of the Municipal Plans (IDP);
- Influence a dialectical relationship between municipal and sector planning with a view to making IDPs ‘A Plan for All Government’; and
- Influence good governance and the municipal planning processes so that communities are at the centre of municipal planning.

### **1.2.1 Roles and Responsibilities**

In order to ensure that the assessment process achieves the above objectives the following roles and responsibilities must be adhered to –

(a) Municipalities:

- Timeously submit the adopted (or draft) IDP to the provincial departments of local government;
- Timeously submit IDP process plans and notice of IDP development events to stakeholders;

- Avail and provide names of the relevant senior officials that will participate in the IDP assessment sessions; and
- Provide feedback on the inputs provided by sector departments and state owned enterprises.

(b) Provincial Departments of Local Government:

- Manage and coordinate the entire IDP Assessment process, logistics, dates, invitations, venues, etc;
- Collect adopted (or draft) IDPs and distribute to sector departments and state owned enterprises;
- Assess all the IDPs using the standard evaluation framework;
- Consolidate sector inputs of the IDPs of each municipality;
- Distribute comments to municipalities prior to the assessment session;
- Prepare the final IDP comments for the MEC; and
- Prepare the provincial report and submit to DCoG.

(c) Sector Departments:

- Assess all the adopted (or draft) IDPs using the evaluation framework and provide written comments;
- Participate in the development, of IDPs and implementation of IDPs; and
- Provide names of relevant senior officials to participate in the IDP assessment sessions.

(d) Department of Cooperative Governance (**DCoG**)

- Coordinate a national programme of IDP assessment sessions and ensure that sector departments provide the necessary support;
- Develop and update a standard evaluation framework in consultation with sector departments and provincial departments of local government;
- Distribute the standard evaluation framework to sector departments and provincial departments of local government; and

- Prepare a national report on the outcome of the provincial IDP assessment process.

## **2. IDP Evaluation Framework**

### 2.1 Structure of the IDP Evaluation Framework

The IDP evaluation framework is structured according to the following focal areas:

- (a) Spatial Development Framework;
- (b) Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development;
- (c) Local Economic Development (LED);
- (d) Financial Viability;
- (e) Institutional Development and Organisational Transformation; and
- (f) Good Governance.

### **Spatial Development Analysis and Rationale (This is highlighted as a Key Focal Area, in addition to the Five that are prescribed for Local Government)**

The understanding of the economic, physical and social space that the municipality inhabits is the most critical starting point for a credible IDP.

For additional reference, some core evaluative criteria for Spatial Development Frameworks may include the following:

1. MSA Regulations – assess contents of SDF in terms of the MSA Regulations.
2. SDFs should reflect principles of the NSDP and PGDS at district and local levels.
3. Does the SDF reflect adequate research into regional natural, demographic realities, the potential for economic activity, and advancing Sustainable Human Settlements?
4. Does the SDF provide a basis for the Land Use Management System and an implementation plan?
5. Are Infrastructure Projects, including those for Service Delivery, planned on the basis of the SDF?

#### 4. General Comments

- 1 Adoption of Sector plans by municipal Councils is critical to the success of integrated developmental planning. All sector plans must be adopted by the Council [CIP; sanitation; sanitation Capex plan; WSDP; O&M; WCDM; Housing Chapter; Untreated effluent plan; Assumption then that all municipal Councils had insight and have resolutions regarding the programmes/projects/activities of Sector departments, Donor Agencies, municipal Partners and PPP's, Metro's, DM's, WSA's, Housing authorities, Road and Transport Authorities, Etc. [Sector departments, Donor Agencies, Authorities [WSA's, etc.], Partners and PPP's submit letters of commitments to Provinces to be forwarded to municipalities.
- 2 O&M [operations and maintenance] budget should be between 8% and 12% of budget [Treasury Guidelines indicate a ratio appropriate to the financial asset value if infrastructure and the proportional total budget; questions remain regarding inclusion of human resources and moveable assets in the formula. E.g. Should the Metro, C.o.J., Gauteng province, apply the formula it equals approximately 7%, which is a huge amount; if the formula is applied relative to the infrastructure and moveable assets and human resources is excluded the rand value is more realistic].

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
1. Spatial Development Analysis and Rationale					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
1.1. Is there an SDF?		Yes, a draft was submitted by the consultant LMV, the final document will be completed in June 2014.  <b>No final SDF submitted with final IDP</b>			
1.2. Was the SDF adopted? If yes when was it adopted?		No			
1.3. If adopted, was the SDF reviewed?		New project			
1.4. Is the SDF aligned to the PGDS, especially the spatial rationale of the PGDS?	3	The Pillars and drivers are indicated, but not applied as of yet. It will be referenced in future, as indicated by the draft document. The application of the pillars are lacking in the proposals and projects.	DRDLR/COGTA etc.		

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
1.5. If no SDF, does the municipality exhibit a good understanding of its municipal area in the analysis? – Spatial Rationale. <i>Was a comprehensive Situational Analysis conducted?</i>	3	No spatial reference (maps). There should be spatial analysis of social amenities. Regional component is lacking. Poverty statistics are lacking.	DRDLR/COGTA etc.		



Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<p>1.6. Does the SDF reflect the Regional economic comparative advantage; Strategies for spatial reconstruction of region – land release, social and economic infrastructure, commercial developments?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Does the SDF reflect the regional economic comparative advantage of the area?</i></li> <li>• <i>Does the Spatial Development Framework reflect proposals (social, economic/ commercial, other)for spatial reconstruction?</i></li> </ul>	3	<p>Proposals to enhance regional economic advantage are lacking; proposals should be indicated spatially. Regional linkages are missing. Adjacent municipal SDFs should be indicated spatially to see the horizontal alignment.</p> <p>Blank coloured stands should change; it makes it difficult to understand the area.</p> <p>Distinguish between existing and proposed development in the legend.</p>	DRDLR/COGTA etc.		

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<p>1.7. Are there strategies for integration of areas with economic potential with that of high household poverty?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Are there proposals for infill planning on local level (in towns)?</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <i>On Settlement level</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• <i>Was there an assessment done on macro level within a Local Municipality of human development needs and economical potential per town, and proposals made for such integration?</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <i>On Regional Level</i></li> <li>○ <i>Rural Development</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>	3	<p>Blank areas should be indicated in colour as to show the proposals/use etc. Infrastructure should be indicated in future development areas to show where expansion is possible. CBD expansion to be revised after consultation, if found to be too large. Information on poverty is lacking.</p> <p>Regional level integration not done. Identification of rural nodes to be investigated.</p>	DRDLR/COGTA etc.		

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
1.8. Does the SDF indicate (1) environmentally sensitive areas, (2) natural heritage and (3) strategies to promote sustainable development?	3	Strategies to promote sustainable development are lacking. Regional view is missing, especially the VDWHS. SPCs to be indicated spatially. VDWHS EMF to be referenced in the document.	DRDLR/COGTA etc.		
1.9. Can the SDF or spatial analysis be used to <b>provide input to the development of a LUMScheme?</b>	4	Differentiate between current and future uses in legend.			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
1.10. Are there strategies for cultural and social integration? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Are there provisions of social amenities (eg. Parks, community centres, churches, sports fields, etc.)</i></li> <li>• <i>Integration linkages</i></li> </ul>	4	Regional linkages are missing.			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<p><b>PROPOSALS FOR THE 2014 ASSESSMENT</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ratings of SDF's must be based on the questionnaire and not the matrix used during the past two years, but on the scale of high, medium and low.</li> </ul> <p><b>PROPOSALS TO BE CONSIDERED FOR SDF'S FOR THE 2015 ASSESSMENT</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the current SDF aligned with SPLUMA?</li> <li>Is the current SDF aligned with the FS PSDF?</li> <li>Is the current SDF aligned with adjacent Local Municipality's SDF's?</li> <li>Are the projects/proposals if the IDP aligned (incorporated) with the SDF and <i>vice versa</i>?</li> <li>Does the SDF provide A clear indication/ differentiation of land own by the Municipality, Private, State, and land under Act 70/70.</li> <li>Do the SDF maps provide a Visual representation of integration restrictions (geographical, infrastructure, etc.).</li> <li>Is the SDF structured/ built around the SPCs?</li> </ol>					
<b>2. Service Delivery And Infrastructure Development</b>					
<b>General Questions: Service Delivery and Infrastructure Planning: Status Quo Analysis</b>					

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.1.1. Has a holistic and comprehensive (all sectors) infrastructure delivery plan been developed to indicate institutional requirements and financial viability of service delivery	N	The is no master plan ,the municipality need to develop and reflect in the IDP			
2.1.2. To what extent does the Comprehensive Infrastructure Plan inform the above delivery plan?	N				
2.1.3. Reflection of the integrated development plan make provision for infrastructure reticulation and bulk infrastructure for water and sanitation	Y	Page 143			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.1.4. Infrastructure Investment Planning (IIP) - has the municipality undertaken medium term IIP (3-5 year minimum) to determine affordable and sustainable multi-year infrastructure targets and the capital and operating expenditure to meet those targets	N	There is no Master plan for the municipality need to develop and reflect it in the IDP.			
2.1.5. Indication of the investment planning utilized in the MIG grant over the next MTEF	Y	Page 127-129			
2.1.6. Indication of own revenue usage for infrastructure	N	NLM to indicate in the IDP			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.1.7. Are other vehicles being used to aid investment in infrastructure. (e.g. private / public sector partnerships,)	Y	Page 130-131			
2.1.7. Other revenue sources (if applicable).	N				
<b>2.2. Water and Sanitation: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to water and sanitation?</b>					
<b>Water (WSA):</b>  2.2.1. Status of the WSDP (adopted and approved by the council).	N	The municipality has no WSDP in place, it should be adopted and reflected on the IDP  The status quo remains the same			



Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.3. Summarised knowledge presentation that clearly outlined the information and statistics of the water users wrt their spatial positioning, existing status and their needs in terms of: <b>Domestic</b> – Basic and higher levels of service and growth and development <b>Associated Services</b> - Schools, Clinics Hospitals, ect.	Y  Y	Refer to page 73  Refer to page 58			
2.2.4. Indication of whether the municipality is the Water Service Authority (WSA) or not.	N	The municipality should reflect it on the IDP  The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.5. Indication of number / percentage of households without access at all, with below standard access and with access.	N  Y	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  Page 58			
2.2.6. Indication of areas or settlements without water in terms of the basic service standards and reasons for lack of services (e.g. no reticulation infrastructure, no bulk infrastructure, etc).	N  Y	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  Page 59			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.7. Indication of areas or settlements with an unreliable service and reasons? (e.g. aging infrastructure, capacity to operate and maintain the service ect).	N Y	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  Page 59			
2.2.8. Indication of approved service levels for the municipality informed by Spatial Development Framework (SDF).	N	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  There is an indication of SDF being available on page 124 of the IDP, these needs to be attached with the IDP.			
2.2.9. Availability and the status of the operations and maintenance plan.	N	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  The status quo remains the same			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.10. Indication of the gaps wrt. services delivery and implementation strategies as required in the WSDP process.	N	<p>The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			
2.2.11. If not, are mechanism or arrangements reflected in the IDP aimed at ensuring that services are provided.	N	<p>The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.12 Reflection of the knowledge, implementation, strategies and target programmes w.r.t. a) Backlogs b) Basic services provision c) Free basic water d) Higher levels of service requirements e) Associated services eg. Schools and clinics f) <i>Water for growth and development.</i>	N  Y	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  Page 58-59			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.13. Integration of other sector programme's water requirements and specially addresses the impact on water planning. a) Housing b)Agriculture c)Mining d)Tourism e)Public Works programmes	N	The municipality is WSA but electronic copy to be provided and reflect on the IDP  The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on the other sector plans programs the municipality have.			
2.2.14. Indication of a proper project list that addresses all the needs as identified in the future plans and implementation strategies	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.14. Indication of the approved budgets in the MTEF allocations for all these projects	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.15. Indication of a plan and budget for Operations and Maintenance for Water services and infrastructure	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.16. Reflection of water services programme financially viable w.r.t. Cost recovery, Metering and billing with an associated budget that is ring fenced	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.17. Reflection on how to address water resources development w.r.t. demand management, water balance issues and ecological reserve	N	<p>The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			
2.2.18. Reflection of specific references to the status of all contracting and licensing issues	N	<p>The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			
2.2.19. Reflection of the status of water quality monitoring w.r.t. drinking water quality, water resources quality and WWTW releases	N Y	<p>The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.</p> <p>Refer page 115 to 119 of the attached blue green drop status report</p>			



Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<b>Sanitation:</b>  2.2.20. Indication of the number of the households without access at all and others with a standard access or with full access?	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.21. Indication of the types of sanitation systems which are available in the municipality and areas where they are found.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.22. Indication of areas or settlements without basic sanitation (e.g. no reticulation infrastructure, no bulk infrastructure etc).	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.23. Indication of areas or settlements with an unreliable service.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.24. Indication of areas or settlements with levels of services.	N  Y	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  Page 62			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.25. Indication of areas with intermediate levels of services.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.26. Indication of service levels for the municipality informed by the Spatial Development Framework (SDF).	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.27. Status of the sewer treatment plants and related bulk infrastructure.	N  Y	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  Indicated on the Blue green and drop status report attached			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.28. Status of the operations and maintenance plan.	N	<p>The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			
<p>2.2.29. Reflection of the knowledge, implementation, strategies and target programmes w.r.t.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Backlogs</li> <li>b) Basic services provision</li> <li>c) Free basic sanitation</li> <li>d) Higher levels of service requirements</li> <li>e) Associated services e.g. Schools and clinics</li> </ul>	N	<p>The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.30. Status of the WDSP multi - year projects to address the backlog	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.31. Indication of the sanitation implementation plan in place	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.32. Does the municipality manage waste water treatment? Is there a plan to manage untreated effluent? Are there plans / programmes / budgets to reuse treated effluent.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.33. Reflection of how the municipality manage (a) waste water treatment	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.34. Indication of a plan to manage untreated effluent? 2.2.35. Indication of the Municipality to determine the need / extent for basic services, (a) free basic and (b) higher level service?	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.36. Reflection of sanitation service financially viable and is there a budget that is ring fenced	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.37. Indication of licensing/contractual arrangement i.t.o of (a) WSA, (b) WSP, (c) WWTW working	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.38. Reflection of a plan and budget for Operations and Maintenance for sanitation services and infrastructure	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
<b>2.2.3. Water and Sanitation: Objectives</b>					

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
2.2.3.1. To improve access to water and sanitation services.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.3.2. To improve the quality of services in areas or settlements where the services are unreliable.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.3.3. To ensure infrastructure is well maintained.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
<b>2.2.3.1. Water and Sanitation Sector Plan</b>					
<b>Does the sector plan provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Water Services and Development Plan with regard to:</b>					
2.2.3.1.1. Improving access to water and sanitation services.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.3.1.2. Improving the quality of services in areas or settlements where the services are unreliable.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.3.1.3. Improving the maintenace of infrastructure.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have  The status quo remains the same.			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
<b>2.2.3.2. Water and Sanitation: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment water and sanitation priorities, objectives and targets:					
2.2.3.2.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve access to water and sanitation.	N  Y	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  Page 143			
2.2.3.2.2. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve quality of services in areas or settlements where the provision of services is unreliable	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.3.2.3. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve the maintenance of water and sanitation infrastructure.	N	The municipality needs to develop master plans that inform the IDP on level of services the municipality have.  The status quo remains the same			
<b>2.2.4 Enviromental: Air Quality Management</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Air Quality Management?</b>					
2.2.4.1. Status of Air Quality Management Plan					
2.1.7.1. Status of the municipality's licensing authority					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.1.7.2. Status of a budget ring fenced for operation and maintenance and new capital projects					
2.1.7.3. Indication of projects viable and sustainable					
<b>2.2.5.1. Energy and Electricity: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to energy and electricity?</b>					
2.2.5.1.1. Indicate the status of the energy plan.	N	<p>The municipality do not have the energy plan in place</p> <p>The status quo remains the same</p>			
2.2.5.1.2. Indicate areas that are without access to electricity and other forms of energy.	N	<p>The municipality do not have the energy plan in place</p> <p>The municipality do not have the energy and electricity master plan in place</p>			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.5.1.3. Indicate areas or settlements with access to electricity.	N Y	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  Page 60			
2.2.5.1.4. Indicate areas with or without access to public lighting.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.1.5. Indication on how the Municipality that determine the need / extent for basic services,(a)free basic and (b) higher level service	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.5.1.6. A budget reflection and a plan for providing grid and non-grid energy sources	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.1.7. Indication of the municipal investigated alternative sources and renewable energy	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.1.8. Reflection of budget ring fenced for operations and maintenance and new capital projects	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.5.1.9. Does the plan make provision for infrastructure reticulation and bulk infrastructure for electricity?	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.1.10. Indication of how provision has been made for upgrading facilities	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
<b>2.2.5.2. Energy and Electricity: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
2.2.5.2.1. To improve access to energy and electricity?	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.5.2.2. To improve the quality of services in areas where the service is not reliable.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.2.3. To ensure that the service infrastructure is well maintained.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.2.4 To ensure reliable public lighting.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
<b>2.2.5.3. Energy and Electricity: Sector Plans</b>					
<b>Does the sector plan provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Energy Plan with regard to:</b>					
2.2.5.3.1. Improving access to electricity and other forms of energy.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.5.3.2 Improving the quality of service in areas where the service is unreliable.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
2.2.5.3.3. Improving and ensuring the maintance of the infrastructure.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The status quo remains the same			
<b>2.2.5.3.4. Energy and Electricity: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment energy and electricity priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
2.2.5.3.4.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve access to electricity and other forms of energy.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The municipality do not have the energy and electricity master plan in place			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.5.3.4.2. Strategies, programmes and projects to ensure that the infrastructure for the service is well maintained.	N	The municipality do not have the energy plan in place  The municipality do not have the energy and electricity master plan in place			
<b>2.2.6.1. Roads and Transport: Status Quo Analysis- <span style="color: red;">RATING: LOW</span></b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to roads and transport?</b>					
2.2.6.1.1. Indicate the status of the Integrated Transport Plan?	<b>N</b>	PRT will assist	<b>PRT</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.6.1.2. Council approved service levels in relations to the SDF.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – <span style="color: red;">To be supplied</span>			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.6.1.2. Status of public transport, major economic roads and roads leading to social facilities (such as clinics, schools etc).	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – Page 76			
2.2.6.1.4. Arterial roads / internal roads.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 75			
2.2.6.1.5. Indicate areas that have access to the services in relation to the SDF.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 75(Info not in kms)			
2.2.6.1.6. Indicate areas without access (backlogs).	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 75(Info not in kms)			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.6.1.8. Roads operations and maintenance.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – Page 76			
2.2.6.1.9. Reflection of budget and plan for the operation and maintenance of all roads	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – Page 132			
2.2.6.1.10. Indication of a budget to operate and maintain roads and storm water	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – Page 132			
2.2.6.1.11. Reflection on how the Municipality determines the extent of the need i.t.o roads	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the SDF – Page 132			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.6.1.12. Indication of how the municipality has made provision for non-motorized transport	<b>N</b>	PRT TO ASSIST	PRT	2014/15	
2.2.6.1.13. Reflection of a budget and a plan for the operations and maintenance of all roads?	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 132			
2.2.6.1.14. Indication of a budget and plan for integrated roads and transport system (including non-mechanized,)?	<b>N</b>	PRT TO ASSIST	PRT	2014/15	
<b>2.2.6.2. Roads and Transport: Objectives</b>					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
2.2.6.2.1 To improve access to roads and transportation systems.	<b>N</b>	Information to be supplied			
2.2.6.2.2. To improve the quality of roads and transportation systems.	<b>N</b>	Information to be supplied			
2.2.6.2.3 To improve maintainance Proper operations and maintenance.	<b>N</b>	Information to be supplied			
<b>2.2.6.3.1. Roads and Transport: Sector Plan</b>					
<b>Does the sector plan provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Road and Transport Plan with regard to:</b>					
2.2.6.3.1. Improving access of roads and transport services.	<b>N</b>	PRT will assist	<b>PRT</b>	2014/2015	

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.6.3.2. Improving the quality of services in areas or settlements with unreliable services.	<b>N</b>	PRT will assist	<b>PRT</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.6.3.3. Improving the maintenance of service infrastructure.	<b>N</b>	PRT will assist	<b>PRT</b>	2014/2015	
<b>2.2.6.4.Roads and Transport: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment roads and transport priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
2.2.6.4.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve access and quality of roads and transport services.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 133			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.6.4.2. Strategies, programmes, and projects to ensure that the service infrastructure is well maintained.	<b>Y</b>	Reflected in the IDP – Page 132			
<b>2.2.7.1. Storm Water Drainage: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to storm water drainage?</b>					
2.2.7.1.2. Indicate areas or settlements with or without access to the service.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.7.1.3. Indicate approved service levels.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.7.1.4. Indicate the status of the maintenance plan.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
<b>2.2.7.2.1 Storm Water Drainage: Objectives</b>					



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
2.2.7.2.1.1. Improving access to the service areas or settlement without the service.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.7.2.1.2. Improving the quality of the service.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
2.2.7.2.1.3. Improving the maintenance of the service infrastructure.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
<b>2.2.7.3.1. Storm Water Drainage: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment Storm Water Drainage priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
2.2.7.3.1.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve access to the services.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.7.3.1.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve the quality of the service.	<b>N</b>	Develop Road and Storm Water Master Plan	<b>MISA</b>	2014/2015	
<b>2.2.7.4.1.Waste Management &amp; Waste Removal: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Waste Management and Waste Removal?</b>					
2.2.7.4.1.1. Indicate areas or settlements with or without access to the service.	N		LM		LM
2.2.7.4.1.2. Number of households without the service.	N		LM		LM
2.2.7.4.1.3. Status of the landfill sites.	Y		LM		LM

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.7.4.1.4. Indicate areas or settlements with unreliable access to the service.	N		LM		LM
2.2.7.4.1.5. Status of the Integrated Waste Management Plan.	Y				
2.2.7.4.1.6. Status of the municipality licensed landfill site	Y				
2.2.7.4.1.7. Indication of the waste or refuse removal services? Indicate level of service	Y				
2.2.7.4.1.8. Status of the municipality have a Trade Effluent Policy	N				

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
2.2.7.4.1.9. Reflection / Evidence of the implementation of sustainable environmental practices for recycling, is this service financially viable and is there a budget for Operations and maintenance ring fenced?	Y				
<b>2.2.7.5.1. Waste Management and Waste Removal: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
2.2.7.5.1.1. Improving access to areas or settlements without access.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.7.5.1.2. Improving the quality of service in areas or settlements with access.	Y				
2.2.7.5.1.3 Improving the maintenance of the service infrastructure (landfill sites, waste management fleet, etc).	Y				
<b>2.2.7.6.1.1 Waste Management and Waste Removal: Sector Plans</b>					
<b>Does the IDP provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Waste Management Plan with regard to:</b>					
2.2.7.6.1.1. Improving access of waste management and waste removal services.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.7.6.1.2. Improving the quality of the service (ensuring that the landfill sites comply with DWA requirements.	Y				
<b>2.2.7.7.1.1. Waste Management and Water Removal: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment Waste Management and Water Removal priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
2.2.7.7.1.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve access to the services.	Y				
2.2.7.7.1.2. Strategies, programmes and projects to improve the quality of the service.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
2.2.7.7.1.3. Strategies, programmes and projects to develop, manage and maintain land fill sites.	Y				
<b>3. Local Economic Development – Medium</b>					
3.1 Local Economic Development: Status Quo Analysis					
Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Local Economic Development?					
3.1.1. Status of the LED strategy.	Y	The document needs to be finalised and approved. THE IDP DOCUMENT IS NOT NUMBERED. Table of contents is not aligned to the document			
3.1.2. Linkages with LED strategy for DM.	Y				
3.1.3. Unemployment rate (disaggregate in terms of gender, age, ect).	Y	Also disaggregate in terms of gender			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
3.1.4. Level of current economic activity – dominant sectors and potential sectors.	Y	Also include it in a table format, including all the relevant sectors within the municipality. Agricultural stats is outdated			COGTA & Agric (For Outdated agric stats)
3.1.5. Job creation initiatives by the municipality (e.g. local procurement, Expanded Public Works Programme EPWP).	Y	Refer to page 106. Use 'cash for waste' instead of 'food for waste'. Look into policies for local procurement			
3.1.6. Linkage s with the national, provincial and district objectives, particularly in respect of infrastructure and skills development.	N	Refer to page 141. Align the given national and provincial information to your district and LOCAL (How will Ngwathe implement the national, provincial and district objectives to the municipality)  Status quo, refer to assessment of Office of Premier			



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
3.1.7. Adequate consideration of spatial issues relevant to the economic development.	N	Also include maps on the spatial areas in the Ngwathe area, clearly stipulating projects linked to each town – SDF (SDF must have a business site, for potential projects as well)			
3.1.8. Empirical and statistical evidence to support the main development thrust of the strategy/plan.	N	Include tables with relevant charts and graphs if necessary, with sources including for maps; for example, refer to page 102 on your economic drivers within Ngwathe. Acknowledgement of sources is imperative. Take note of the tables that run from one page to the next (page 102)			
3.1.9. Availability of budget for LED programmes and projects.	N	Note that you can't have LED projects budgeted for yet there is 'no' budget for LED programmes as a whole  Status quo			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
3.1.10.Management arrangements in place to facilitated implementation.	N	Status quo			
3.1.11.Do the sector plans take MDGs and 12 Outcomes targets into consideration? analysis of sector plan	Y	The document needs to be finalised and approved. THE IDP DOCUMENT IS NOT NUMBERED. Table of contents is not aligned to the document			
<b>3.2 Local Economic Development: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
3.2.1. To create an environment that promotes the development of the local economy .	Y	Page 101 – 102 (tabulate it and link to each town)			
3.2.2. To facilitate job creation.	Y				
<b>3.3 Local Economic Development: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment Storm Water Drainage priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
3.3.1. Strategies, programmes and projects that promote development of the local economy.	Y	Refer to page 153 (LED budget must be included)			
3.3.2. Strategies, programmes and projects that will contribute to economic growth and employment creation.	Y				
<b>4. Good Governance</b>					
<b>4.1 Good Governance: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Good Governance?</b>					
4.1.1. Community participation strategy and plan.	Y	P.14-20			
4.1.2. Internal Audit Committee.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
4.1.3. Oversight Committee.	Y	P.94			
4.1.4. Internal Audit Function.	Y	P.12			
4.1.5. Ward Committees.	Y				
4.1.6. Council Committees.	Y				
4.1.7. Supply Chain Committees	Y				
4.1.8. Complaints Management Systems.	N Y	Reflects that the system is in the process of development			
4.1.9. Fraud Prevention Plan	Y				
4.1.10. Does the population analysis describe population size, composition, distribution and change?	Y	P.24			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
4.1.11. Does the population analysis reflect population concerns of the Municipality	Y				
4.1.12. Are sectoral implications of population patterns and trends identified	Y				
<b>4.2. Good Governance: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
4.2.1. To promote a culture of participatory.	Y				
4.2.2. To promote culture of good governance.	Y				
<b>4.3. Good Governance: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
4.3.1 Strategies, programmes and projects that will promote effective governance and accountability.	Y				
4.3.2. Strategies, programmes and projects to be implemented to ensure – effective public participation and accountability and transparency.	Y	P.99			
<b>4.4 Special Groups: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Special Groups?</b>					
4.4.1. Evidence showing that there is mainstreaming of HIV/AIDS.	N <b>N</b>	Status quo remains			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
4.4.2. Special focus to promote people with disabilities, women and youth.	Y	P.219,142,158			
4.4.3. Gender equity promoted for access to economic opportunity.	Y				
4.4.4. Supporting initiatives to other special groups (disabled, youth).	Y				
4.4.5. Is there evidence of sectoral plans addressing population concerns?	Y				
<b>4.5. Special Group: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
4.5.1. To establish and implement programmes to promote people with disabilities, women and youth.	Y				
4.5.2. To ensure that gender equity is promoted.	Y				
<b>4.6 Special Groups: Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment special groups objectives and targets?					
4.6.1. Strategies, programmes and projects to create opportunities for people with disabilities, women and children.	Y				
<b>5. Financial Viability</b>					
<b>5.1 Financial Viability: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Financial Viability?</b>					



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
5.1.1. Existence of a financial plan.	Y				
5.1.2. Budget covering a minimum three year period.	Y				
5.1.3. Tariff policies.	Y				
5.1.4. Rates policies.	Y				
5.1.5. SCM policy.	Y	We could not confirm in the IDP			
5.1.6. Revenue Management and credit control.	Y	We could not confirm in the IDP			
5.1.7. Auditor General Findings – issues raised in the report if any.	Y				
5.1.8. Financial Management systems.	Y				
5.1.9. Indication of National and Provincial allocations and resources.	Y	The municipality does not receive Provincial allocations.			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
5.1.10. Evidence of billing system.	Y				
<b>5.2 Financial Management: Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
5.2.1. To improve overall financial management in the municipality.	N Y	The municipality must develop objectives to improve financial management.			
5.2.2. To develop and implement appropriate financial management policies, procedures and systems.	N Y	The municipality must develop procedures and systems to improve financial management.			
<b>5.2 Financial Management: Sector Plans</b>					
<b>Does the IDP provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Financial Plan with regard to:</b>					
5.2.1. Revenue collection and expenditure	N Y	The municipality must include strategic interventions in the financial plan.			
<b>5.3 Financial Management: Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment financial management priorities, objectives and targets?					
5.3.1 Strategies, programmes and projects to promote financial viability and management.	N  <b>Y</b>	The municipality must include strategies, programmes and projects to promote the financial viability of the municipality.			
<b>6. Institutional Arrangements</b>					
6.1 Institutional Arrangements: Status Quo Analysis					
Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to Institutional Arrangements?					
6.1.1. Status of Human Resources Strategy that responds to the long-term development plans of the municipality as reflected in the IDP.	N  <b>N</b>	<b>Municipality reflected that they do not have a strategy</b>			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
6.1.2. Approved organisational structure / organogram to support the IDP.	Y				
6.1.3. Workplace skills plan address scarce skills.	Y				
6.1.4. Information Technology (IT).	Y				
6.1.5. Availability of skilled staff.	N N				
6.1.6. Organisational Structure.	Y				
6.1.7. Vacancy rate.	Y				
6.1.8. Skill Development Plan.	Y				
6.1.9. Individual Performance and Organisational Management Systems.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
6.1.10. Monitoring, evaluation and reporting process and systems.	Y				
6.1.11. Evidence that the municipality has an employment equity plan.	N N				
6.1.12. Workplace skill plan respond to the capacity challenges of the municipality.	Y				
6.1.13. OPMS aligned with IDP – Annual Plan Indicators.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
6.1.14. Availability of IGR structures to facilitate integovernmental dialogue with relevant national and provincial sector department.	Y				
<b>6.1. Objectives</b>					
<b>Does the IDP clearly identify and define objectives to address the following:</b>					
6.2.1. To improve organizational cohesion and effectiveness.	Y				
<b>6.3 Development Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment institutional viability and cohesion?</b>					
6.3.1. Strategies that promotes viability and cohesion.	Y				

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
6.3.2. Programmes and projects implemented to achieve institutional viability and cohesion.	Y				
<b>7. Social Services</b>					
<b>7.1 Housing, Health Services, Education, Safety and Security: Status Quo Analysis</b>					
<b>Does the IDP status quo analysis reflect the following with regard to housing?</b>					
7.1.1. The existence of programmes and projects to address housing, health, education, safety and security.	<b>Y</b>	IDP – page 90 -95 (Housing) project List			
7.1.2. Backlogs relating to social services.	<b>Y</b>	IDP – page 90 -95 (Housing) project List			
7.1.3. General challenges relating to social services.	<b>Y</b>	IDP – page 90 -95 (Housing) project List			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
7.1.4. Has the municipality identified areas for densification higher development?	N	The Municipality to provide SDF			
7.1.5. Is the municipality able to address the housing demand challenges highlighted while taking into account the growth trends such as population, economy, etc?	Y	Housing Sector Plan			
7.1.6. Does IDP informal settlement section align to the Migration Plan of the municipality?	N	The Municipality to provide SDF			



<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
7.1.7. Have the housing demand aspects e.g. demand data base or waiting list information been determined by the municipality?	N	The Municipality to provide waiting list			
7.1.8. Indication of current and planned projects intended to address the demand and are ready for implementation over five years?	YES	IDP – page 90 -95 (Housing) project List			

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Y/N	Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added
7.1.9. Indication of the housing programmes used to address the housing demand in the Outcome 8 outputs: Informal settlements upgrading, acquisition of well located land, affordable rental housing, affordable housing finance and bulk infrastructure	YES	IDP – page 90 -95 (Housing) project List			
7.1.10. Is there budget provision for current and planned housing projects?	NO	The Province to provide			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
7.1.11.Has the municipality indicated the nature of service level on, existing settlements, and highlighted densification areas and informal settlement through CIP?	NO	The municipality to provide CIP			
7.1.12. Does the municipality have the approved Housing Chapter / Human Settlement Plan of the Municipal IDP?	YES	IDP page 3-5			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
7.1.13.Indication of spatial location of current and planned projects	NO	The Municipality to provide SDF			
7.1.14.Has the municipality indicated an ongoing process for suitable identification land for housing development?	NO	The Municipality to provide SDF			
7.1.15.Has the municipality indicated the nature of service levels on these land parcel through CIP?	NO	The Municipality to provide CIP			
7.1.16. Has the social viability of the settlements been determined / indicated?	NO	The Municipality to provide SDF			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
<b>7.2 Housing, Health, Education, Safety and Security: Sector Plans</b>					
<b>Does the IDP provide an overview of the strategic intervention contained in the Housing, Health, Education, Safety and security Plans with regard to:</b>					
7.2.1. Address backlogs.	YES	IDP page 90-95			
7.2.2. Addressing future demands.	YES	IDP page 90-95			
<b>7.3 Housing, Health, Education, Safety and Security: Strategies, Programmes and Projects</b>					
<b>Does the IDP contain and elaborate on development strategies, programmes and projects aimed at supporting the attainment of social services priorities, objectives and targets?</b>					
7.1.17.Strategies, programmes and projects to address the backlogs over a short, medium and long term.	YES	IDP page 3-5			
7.1.18. Strategies, programmes and projects to address future demands.	YES	IDP page 3-5			

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Responsible Agents Names of officials needs to be added</b>
7.1.19. Objectives and strategies aimed at achieving sustainable and integrated human settlement	YES	IDP page 3-5			

#### **Disaster Management**

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Applicable to</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Comments and Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added</b>
-----------------------------------	----------------------	------------	---	--	-----------------	--

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Applicable to</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Comments and Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added</b>
- Is there a project on the development of a Disaster Management plan for the municipality in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	Disaster management plan is not attached. The municipality has indicated their plan is still in draft form. The PDMC should present draft plan to the portfolio committee responsible for disaster management.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM  Head: Municipal Disaster Management
- Did the municipality develop the disaster preparedness programme for 2014-2015?	Local and District Municipality	N	The municipality has not identified disaster preparedness programmes. Emphasis should be on the finalisation and adoption of the DM plan.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM  Head: Municipal Disaster Management

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Applicable to</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Comments and Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added</b>
- Has the municipality identified disaster management institutional arrangement projects in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	No disaster management institutional arrangement projects. The province will advise municipality on the establishment of DM structures.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM  Head: Municipal Disaster Management



- Do you have disaster risk assessment projects in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	No disaster risk assessment projects in the IDP. The province will assist with the identification of assessment projects.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM
- Are there any disaster risk reduction projects in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	No disaster risk reduction projects. The Province will assist with the identification of risk reduction projects.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Applicable to	Y/N	Comments and Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Are there any disaster response and recovery projects in the IDP?</li> </ul>	Local and District Municipality	N	Disaster response and recovery projects have been identified but not costed. The province will advise with costing of projects.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Applicable to</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Comments and Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added</b>
- Are there disaster management information and communication projects in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	The district municipality has not identified disaster management information and communication projects in the IDP. Centre is of paramount importance in this regard. The establishment of the DThe province will assist with the identification of such projects.	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs</b>	<b>Applicable to</b>	<b>Y/N</b>	<b>Comments and Improvement Measure</b>	<b>Who will assist the Municipality?</b>	<b>By when?</b>	<b>Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added</b>
- Are disaster management education, public awareness, training and research projects in the IDP?	Local and District Municipality	N	Disaster management education, public awareness, training and research projects have not been identified. The province will advise with costing and inclusion of these projects during the implementation of Disaster Management Plans	Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre  Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM  SALGA	By the end of June 2014	Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM

Evidential Criteria / KPIs	Applicable to	Y/N	Comments and Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality?	By when?	Comments expected from Names of officials needs to be added
<p>- Do you have fire management projects in the IDP?</p> <p><b>NB</b></p>	Local and District Municipality	<p>N</p> <p><b>Y</b></p>	<p>No fire management projects. The PDMC will engage relevant role players to assist the municipality with the development of fire management plan and budget for fire services.</p> <p><b>The municipality has budgeted for fire training and fire fighting equipment</b></p>	<p>Me. Sekulisa – Head Provincial Disaster Management Centre</p> <p>Disaster Management Officer: Fezile Dabi DM Working on Fire DAFF SALGA</p>	By the end of June 2014	<p>Municipal Manager: Ngwathe LM</p> <p>Head: Municipal Disaster Management</p>



**tourism**

Department:  
Tourism  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



**the detea**

the department of economic  
development, tourism and  
environmental affairs  
FREE STATE PROVINCE

**Tourism Improvement Measure for Ngwathe Local Municipality for Consideration during IDP Review  
– 24<sup>th</sup> April 2014**

Improvement Measure	Who will assist the Municipality	By when?	Responsible Person	YES/NO
<b>Do you have capacity to plan for tourism projects and implement the National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)?</b>	DETEA	May 2014	Nkosi Mondli-Deputy Director: Tourism planning	No
<b>Do you prioritise tourism as a sector with potential to grow the economy?</b>				No
<b>Are tourism projects budgeted for and identified in the IDP?</b>				No
<b>Do you address tourism human capacity issues e.g. skills shortages, Create Tourism units, with qualified tourism officers or managers etc</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you provide and manage visitor related infrastructure e.g. signage, visitor information centres etc.</b>				No
<b>Do you take a lead role in destination marketing and management by forming partnerships with key stakeholders?</b>	FSTA			No
<b>Do you have Tourism Sector Plan that is aligned to NTSS and monitor effectiveness?</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No

<b>Do you know and tap into capacity building programmes offered by National, Province and other agencies e.g. TEP etc</b>				No
<b>Are you in partnership with province, to develop a community beneficiation model or framework?</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you embark on programmes aimed at stimulating domestic tourism e.g. facilitate school trips to municipal owned museums, parks, etc</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you create awareness on the importance of tourism and its benefits e.g. recognise and celebrate tourism month.</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you focus on rural tourism development?</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you have tourism forums e.g. accommodation establishment, tourist guide association etc</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Does the Municipality considered and mention financial contributions from National, Provincial Departments, development Finance Institutions such as IDC, NEF,DBSA,SRI etc.</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No
<b>Do you have tourism safety and security forum to address issues of visitor safety at tourist attractions?</b>	DETEA	May 2014		No

### **RECOMMENDATION**

Tourism Sector plan must be reviewed for alignment with National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)/ Provincial Tourism Master Plan.

There must be collaboration with DETEA for implementation of tourism awareness programmes:

- Responsible Tourism
- Service Excellence
- Quality Assurance and Standards

Collaboration between DETEA, MAP and NDT in respect to:

- implementation of Tourism Social Responsibility Initiatives

- Capacity Training Programmes

#### **Strategic Partnership**

- Participation in forums
- Formation of relevant structures

#### **Contact Details**

**(DETEA) - Department of Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs**

Contact Person: **Mr. Mondi Nkosi**

E-mail: [mondin@detea.fs.gov.za](mailto:mondin@detea.fs.gov.za)

Tel: 051 400 9406 / 071 678 5555

Fax: 086 260 5988

#### **Premier office comments**

#### **IDP Assessment Template: Ngwathe Local Municipality**

IDP	Remarks	Who will assist the Municipality?
<b>QUESTION 1: Foreword</b> To what extent is the foreword making reference on how the NDP/FSGDS will be addressed in the IDP.	There is no foreword. <b>The foreword by the Mayor indicates that the IDP will aligned to the NDP and FSGDS</b>	Department of the Premier
<b>QUESTION 2: Introduction/ Executive Summary</b> To what extent are the	In the introduction /executive summary there is no reference to the NDP/FSGDS	Department of the Premier



Introduction/ Executive Summary making reference on how the NDP/FSGDS will be addressed in the IDP.		
<b>QUESTION 3: Situational analyses</b> To what extent has the NDP/FSGDS been embedded into the situational analysis (Core functions of the municipalities from NDP/FSGDS, eg. Sanitation, renewable energy.)	<p>The situation analysis provides statistical analysis on the Employment, water, electricity, refuse removal, dwelling, sanitation, population, education, economic growth, household, health, safety and security</p> <p>However it lacks interpretation on the NDP/FSGDS actions such as the renewable energy, maintenance and refurbishment backlog and financing plan, balance between location of jobs and people, densification of towns, infrastructure for growing municipal areas, upgrading of informal settlement and socially integrated human settlement and improve the standard of drinking water and waste management.</p>	Department of the Premier
<b>QUESTION 4: Development strategies, programmes and projects</b> a) To what extent is the	<p>There are no clearly formulated strategies.</p> <p>There are different kinds of project and programmes (e.g Municipal owned project –KPA, MIG and sector</p>	Department of the Premier

NDP/FSGDS embedded in the development strategies, programmes and projects.	department projects)see page 141 - 161 however the municipality is not implementing some of the projects which are embedded in the NDP/FSGDS (e.g. Projects on renewable energy, energy efficiency, public transport)	
--	---	--